

81
Gayrat Tajibaev

NAMANGAN STATE UNIVERSITY

Course of English
for social faculty
students

CLASSROOM AND SELF-STUDY USE

Namangan - 2009

MINISTRY OF HIGHER AND SECONDARY SPECIALIZED EDUCATION
OF THE REPUBLIC OF UZBEKISTAN

Namangan State University

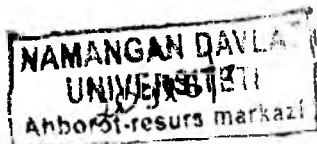
Course of English
for social faculty students

Namangan – 2011 y.

NAMANGAN DAVLAT UNIVERSITETI

Tajibaev Gayratjon Shovdorovich

**Taqrizchilar: f.f.d. professor S.Rahimov
p.f.n. S.Misirov**



*Mazkur o'quv qo'llanma NamDU o'quv-uslubiy kengashining 2009 yil
25 sentyabrdagi 2 sonli yig'ilish qarori bilan nashrga tavsiya etilgan.*

Kirish

O'zbekiston Respublikasi Prezidenti Islom Abdug'anievich Karimov Oliy Majlisning 9-sessiyasida so'zlagan nutqida oliy va o'rta maxsus ta'lim muassasalarini isloh qilishda asosiy vazifalardan biri xorijiy tillarni mukammal o'rganish zarurligini ta'kidlagandilar.

Ushbu o'quv qo'llanma oliy ta'lim muassasalarining nofilologik fakul'tetlarida tahsil olayotgan talabalar uchun mo'ljallangan. Kitobga kiritilgan mavzularning aksariyati ingliz tili darslarida sinovdan o'tkazilgan. Talabalarning og'zaki nutqlari, tinglab tushinish, o'qish va yozish savodxonliklarini rivojlantirishga qaratilgan materiallar ingliz tilida so'zlashuvchi xalqlar, ularning madaniyati, qadriyatlar va urf-odatlar haqidagi ma'lumotlar hamda hozirgi kunda O'zbekistonda ro'y berayotgan ijobiy o'zgarishlar, shiddat bilan rivojlanib borayotgan iqtisodiyot va ijtimoiy xayot haqidagi yangiliklardan iboratdir.

Ushbu qo'llanmada talabalarning istak va qiziqishlariga aloxida e'tibor qaratilgan. Darslarning har biri talabalarning turli mavzularda mustaqil fikrlashga, o'z muloxazalarini ingliz tilida ifodalashga, baxslashishga undaydigan hamda tanlangan mavzular yuzasidan o'z dunyoqarashlarini qat'iy ximoya qilishga rag'batlantiradi.

O'quv qo'llanma fonetka qism, 21 ta dars, co'z birikmalari va iboralarni o'zlashtirish mashqlari va 21 ta mustaqil ta'lim darslaridan iborat bo'lib, har bir dars gramatik savodxonlik, gramatik mashqlar, matn, mavzuga oid faol so'zlar va iboralar, dialoglar, mavzu yuzasidan amaliy mashqlar, baxsli savollar va rasmlar bilan boyitilgan.

Qo'llanmaning fonetika qismiga ingliz tilidagi xarflar va ularning o'qilish qoidalari haqida batafsil ma'lumotlar va har bir xarfning o'qilishi va talaffuzining to'liq o'zlashtirilishi uchun mashqlar to'plami kiritilgan.

Har bir dars mashg'ulotlarni bir biriga uyg'un tarzda olib borilishini ta'minlaydi. Gramatika bo'limida yoritilgan mavzu matnda ham aks ettirilgan ya'ni matn o'tilgan gramatik qoida asosida yozilgan. Mavzuga oid faol so'zlar,

birikmalar va iboralarni to'liq o'zlashtirilishi uchun berilgan mashqlar qam darsning tarkibidagi gramatik qoidalarni yanada mustaxkamlanishiga xizmat qiladi. Qo'llanmaning muhim xususiyatlaridan yana biri shundaki, unda berilgan mashqlar turli til malakalarini bir-biri bilan bog'lashga xizmat qiladi. Masalan talabalarning o'qish malakasini oshirishga mo'ljallangan mashqlar ularda og'zaki nutq malakalarini rivojlantirishga mo'ljallangan muhokamalarni va ushbu muxokamalar asnosida kelib chiqadgan fikrlarni yozishni taqazo qiladi va aksincha, nutq malakasini oshirish uchun berilgan mashqlar matnlarni o'qishni talab qiladi. Qo'llanmaga bunday yondoshilishi bugungi hayot talabidir. Chunki nutq jarayonida malakalar alohida ajralgan holatda shakillanmaydi, balki ular doimo bir-biri bilan bog'lanib rivojlanadi.

Darslar qo'shimcha fotosuratlar va turli mavzudagi tasvirlar bilan boyitilgan bo'lib talabalarga mavzu haqida yanada to'liq ma'lumot berishga xizmat qiladi. Ko'pchilik rasmlar avtor tomonidan chizilgan, ayrimlari Internet saytlaridan olingan.

Ushbu qo'llanmani yaratilishida o'z xissalarini qo'shgan Namangan davlat universiteti professor-o'qituvchilari va talabalari mazkur kitobdan foydalanuvchilarga muvofiqiyatlar tilab qoladi.

O`quv qo`llanmadan foydalanuvchilar uchun uslubiy ko`rsatmalar:

► Fonetika kursi bo`yicha mashg`ulotlarni boshlashdan avval talabalar nutq a`zolari uchun turli mashqlar bajarishlari lozim. Mashqlar tez aytishlar, talaffuzi qiyin bo`lgan har-xil tovushlar, til bilan oqiz bo`shliqidagi nutq a`zolarini uqalash, lab, tish mashqlari tarzida bo`lishi mumkin. Nutq a`zolari mashqlari toshoynaga qarab bajarilganda yaxshiroq samara beradi. Bunday mashqlarni har darsda bajarib turish maqsadga muvofiqdir.

► Asosiy darslarda berilgan gramatik qoidalarni tushintirishdan avval, o`sha qoida yuzasida talabalar bilimi aniqlab olinadi. Keyingi bosqichda o`tilishi lozim bo`lgan mavzu bo`yicha "Warming Up" mashqlari bajariladi, ya`ni talabaning o`sha mavzuni bilishga ishtiyoqi oshiriladi. Talabalar gramatik qoidani to`liq o`zlashtirib olganlaridan keyin gramatik mashqlar og`zaki bajariladi. Gramatik mashqlarni yozma bajarish uy vazifasi sifatida berilgani ma`qul. Uy vazifalari tekshirilayotganda daftarga me`yoridan ortiq ayniqsa qizil ruchkada belgilar qo`yish tavsiya etilmaydi, bu talabaga salbiy ta`sir qilishi mumkin.

► Talabalarning og`zaki nutqlarini rivojlantirishda matnlarni ovoz chiqarib o`qish muxim ahamiyat kasb etadi. Talaba matnni o`qiyotganda imkon qadar uni to`xtatmaslikka harakat qiling. Matin o`qib bo`linganidan keyin noto`g`ri o`qilgan yoki talaffuz qilingan so`zlarga e`tiborni qaratib qayta o`qib berish yo`li bilan xatolar tuzatiladi. Matnlar to`liq tarjimini talab qilmaydi. Matn taxlil qilinayotganda yangi so`zlar, so`z birikmalar va iboralar tarjima qilinadi.

► Matndan keyingi "VOCABULARY NOTES" va "TOPICAL VOCABULARY" dagi mavzuga oid faol so`zlar bilan tanishtirish matinni taxlil qilish jarayoni bilan birga olib boriladi. Faol so`zlar bilan matinni o`qishdan oldin tanishtirish qo`yilgan maqsadga erishishda muxim omil bo`lishi mumkin.

► Vocabulary Exercises mashqlarini bajarishda talabalarni kichik guruxlarga bo`lish lozim. "Corners" usulidan foydalanish taqsimlab berilgan mashqlarni to`laqonli bajarishda talabalarni o`zaro bir-birlari bilan aloqaga kirishishlariga undaydi.

PHONETIC SECTION

Phonetic review: *Vowels and consonants*

- Vowels: [i:], [ɪ], [e], [æ], [ɑ:], [o], [ɔ:], [u], [u:], [ʌ], [ə:], [ə], [eɪ], [aɪ],
[aʊ], [oɪ], [ou], [ɪə], [eə], [uə];
- Consonants: [p], [b], [t], [d], [k], [g], [f], [v], [θ], [ð], [s], [z], [ʃ], [ʒ], [tʃ],
[dʒ], [h], [j], [w], [l], [r], [m], [n], [ŋ].

1. Unli harflarning o'qish qoidalari

		a			
Ochiq	Yopiq				
bo'g'inda	bo'g'inda	a+r		a+re	
[eɪ]	[æ]	[ɑ:]		[eə]	
name	man	far		dare	
made	bad	park		mare	
take	bag	dark		rare	
face	lamp	farm		fare	
date	flat	hard		bare	
ai	ay	air	au	aw	al+consonants
[eɪ]	[eɪ]	[eə]	[aʊ]	[ɔ:]	[ɔ:]
wait	day	air	auto [ou]	law	hall
rain	may	hair	pause	saw	ball
mail	pay	lair	autumn	dawn	wall
bail	say	fair	auk	pawn	walk
main	way	pair	Paul	maw	talk

ass	ast	ask	asp, aft	ath
[ɑ:]	[ɑ:]	[ɑ:]	[ɑ:]	[ɑ:]
pass	fast	ask	grasp	path
brass	vast	mask	after	bath
grass	last	bask	draft	father
glass	past	task	craft	rather

e

ochiq bo'g'inda	yopiq bo'g'inda	e+r	e+re
[i:]	[e]	[ə:]	[iə]
be	pen	her	here
me	bed	herd	mere
he	ten	fern	
Pete	end	term	
mete	Bell	nerve	

e

ea	ee	ea+d	eigh	ew
[i:]	[i:]	[e]	[ei]	[ju:], [u:] +r,
tea	bee	head	eight	i, j
meat	meet	dead	weight	flew
dean	need	bread	freight	blew
leaf	feel	ready	height	grew
	deep	dread	weight	new
c+(ei)	ey	eer	ear	ear+unli
[(s)i:]	[ei]	[iə]	[iə]	[ə:]
receive	they	beer	ear	learn
deceive	grey	peer	dear	earn
ceiling	obey	deer	beard	pearl
perceive		leer	fear	heard
		veer	hear	

i

ochiq bo'g'inda	yopiq bo'g'inda	i+r	i+re
[ai]	[i]	[ə:]	[aiə]
nine	did	girl	tire
five	mill	first	fire
mine	lit	fir	hire
tie	pit	firm	wire
lie	If	bird	mire
ie	ia, oi	ild, ind	ihg
[i:]	[aiə]	[ai]	[ai]
piece	trail	mild	night
niece	liar	wild	might
chief	dial	mind	right
field	lion	find	high
	Via	kind	fight

o

ochiq bo'g'inda	yopiq bo'g'inda	o+r	o+re
[ou]	[ə]	[o:]	[o:]
no	not	port	bore
vote	hot	sport	more
rode	box	form	tore
hope	off	corn	before
note	stop	born	
oa	oi, oy	oo+k	oo+l,m,n
[ou]	[u]	[u]	[u:]
oak	toil	book	fool
boat	boil	look	doom
toast	oil	nook	moon
load	boy	took	too
toad	toy	rook	

o+ld	ou	ow+unli	ough+t
[ou]	[au]	[au]	[ɔ]
bold	out	town	ought
fold	about	down	fought
told	pound	brown	brought
old	Loud		thought
hold			

	o+m,n,th		our, ower
	[ʌ]		[auə]
some		other	our
come		mother	hour
son		brother	sour
front			tower
month			flower

u

Ochiq bo'g'inda	Yopiq bo'g'inda	u+r	u+re
[ju:]	[ʌ]	[ə:]	[(j)uə]
use	but	turn	cure
tune	cup	burn	pure
due	run	hurt	lure
mute	mud	fur	
	u+ll, sh		gu+jarangli unli
	[u]		[g]
pull	full	guide	guest
bull	push	guess	guard

Ochiq bo'g'inda	Yopiq bo'g'inda	y+r	y+re	[j]
[aɪ]	[i]	[ə:]	[aɪə]	yes
by	myth	Byrd	tyre	yet
fly	system			yard
try				yoke
type				

1 - fonetik mashq

a) Vowels (unlilar)

[i:] – [bi:, si:, ni:d, mi:t, li:v]

[ɪ] – [bit, sit, did, mis, it]

[e] – [bed, ted, pen, ten, end, men]

[æ] – [kæt, ræt, mæn, bæɡ, mæp, bæʔ]

[ɑ:] – [kɑ:t, bɑ:n, kɑ:, fɑ:, pɑ:k]

[o] – [hot, not, pot, stop, lot]

[o:] – [fo:m, ko:n, mo:, lo:d, spo:t]

[u] – [kuk, tuk, buk, luk, fut]

[u:], [ju:] – [tu:, su:n, nju:, fju:]

[ʌ] – [bʌs, kʌp, klʌb, kʌm]

[ə:] – [ɡə:l, bə:n, tən, fə:st]

[eɪ] – [dei, sei, neim, feis, leit, geit, deit]

[ou] – [ɡou, nou, oupn, bout, smouk]

[aɪ] – [mai, taim, faɪn, lain, nais, laif]

[aʊ] – [nau, hau, bau, taun, daun, ə'bauʔ]

[ɔɪ] – [boi, toi, noiz, vois, tʃoiz]

[ɪə] – [niə, mə, klɪə, diə]

[ɛə] – [beə, tʃɛə, keə, meə, deə]

[(j)uə] – [puə, ʃuə, kjuə, pjuə, fjuə]

[aɪə] – [faɪə, taɪə, taɪəd, kwaɪət]

[aʊə] – [sauə, flauə, pauə, tauə, ʃauə]

b) Consonants (undoshlar)

[r] – [ri:d, rait, rein, rum, 'veri, 'sori]

[ŋ] – [soŋ, loŋ, roŋ, 'mo:niŋ, 'i:vniŋ]

[h] – [hi:, hei, hæv, hæz, hed, hə:d,

hɑ:d]

[θ] – [θɪk, θɪn, θi:m, feiθ, miθ, smiθ]

[ð] – [ðen, ðæm, ðæt, ðis, ði:s, ðouz]

[w] – [wi:, wet, wen, weə, wei, witʃ]

2 - fonetik mashq

a) Vowels

[i:] — [ɪ]	[e] — [æ]	[ʌ] — [ɑ:]	[ɔ] — [ɔ:]	es — |es
sɪ:t — sɪt	bed — bæd	mʌtʃ — mɑ:tʃ	ʃɔ:t — ʃɔ:t	et — |et
fɪ:p — fɪp	set — sæt	dʌk — dɑ:k	spɔ:t — spɔ:t	a:t — |ɑ:d
lɪ:v — lɪv	men — mæn	hæt — hæ:t	kɔ:t — kɔ:t	ɪə — |jə
[u] — [u:]	[ɛ] — [ɛ:]	[ou] — [ɔ]	[ɪə] — [ɛə]	ouk — |ouk
fu:l — fu:l	hed — hæ:d	nout — nɔt	tʃɪə — tʃɛə	
pu:l — pu:l	bed — bæ:d	kout — kɔt	bɪə — beə	
buk — bu:t	ten — tɛ:n	gout — gɔt	dɪə — dəə	

b) Consonants

[w] — [v]	[θ] — [s]	[ð] — [z]	[ŋ] — [n]	[θ] — [ð]
west — vest	θɪk — sɪk	beɪð — beɪz	θɪŋ — θɪn	θaɪ — ðaɪ
wain — vaɪn	θaɪ — saɪ	saɪð — saɪz	wɪŋ — wɪn	mɪθ — wɪð
wein — veɪn	feɪθ — feɪs	klouð — klouz	sʌŋ — sʌn	θɪn — ðɪn

3 - fonetik mashq

did	sit	‘sɪtɪ	ɪt	sɪd - sɪd
dɪg	nɪt	‘kɪtɪ	ɪz	dɪk - dɪg
kɪd	sɪk	‘tɪktɪ	ɪn	tɪk - tɪg
sɪn	kɪs	‘dɪgɪ		

4 fonetik mashq

θθθ — ððð	θθθ — θɪn	sɪn - θɪn - tɪn
sss — θθθ	θθθ — θɪk	sɪk — θɪk - tɪk
zzz — ððð	ððð — ðɪs	

5 fonetik mashq

ten	get	det — ded	sɪt — set	bɪzɪ — bɛnɪ	gets
pen	pet	bet — bed	bɪt — bet	pɪtɪ — bɛtɪ	pets
men	net	set — sed	dɪg — beg	mɪnɪ — mɛnɪ	bedz
			dɪd - ded		kidz

6 – fonetik mashq

bi: - bi:n - bi:t	di:d - di:d	ka: - k a:m - k a:t	pul - pu:l	ə → gud buk
di: - di:d - di:p	li:d - li:d	f a: - f a:m - p a:k	ful - fu:l	ə → gud kuk
ni: - ni:d - ni:t	li:v - li:v	b a: - b a:d - b a:k	fut - fu:d	→ luk ət ðə buk
si: - si:d - si:t	fi:l - fi:l	ə → f a: st a:	put - bu:t	
li: - li:g - li:k	si:n - si:n	→ a:sk f a:ðə		

7-fonetik mashq

sə: - sə:v - sə:f	ə:n	fə:m / fəum	got - gəut	ten / tən / to:n
fə: - lə:n - nə:s	ə:li	pə:l / pəul	kot - kəut	hed / hə:d / ho:n
bə: - bə:d - bə:θ	ə:θ	gə:l / gəul	sok - səuk	ben / bən / bo:d
				bed / bəd / bo:d

8-fonetik mashq

læb - læp	æd	di:d - ded - dæd	lei - leid - leit	ei	sai - sait - said
kæb - kæp	æm	hit - hed - hæd	mei - meid - meit	eid	lai - laid - lait
næd - næt	æt	sit - set - sæt	sei - seiv - seif	eit	tai - taid - tait

9-fonetk mashq

fi:	fæɪ	fiː ɪz	hiː ɪz	aɪ ɪm
fɪʃ	'fɪnɪʃ	fiː ɪznt	hiː ɪznt	aɪ (ə)m ɪnət
'meɪʒə	'pleɪʒə	fiː ɪz ɪnət	hiː ɪz ɪnət	ɪm aɪ
dɪ'vɪʒn	dɪ'sɪʒn	ɪz fiː	ɪz hiː	

10 – fonetik mashq (So'zlarni to'g'ri o'qing)

sit, lame, back, miss, sack, gave, tip, tide, tap, late, mad, made, nine, fill, cake, thick, bat, pin, pine, hate, act, ice, plot, face, hid, fate, stamp, spot, pile, land, mist, mole, mark, gold, cap, nose, fix, harm, merry, horn, start, form, exact, examination, exist, sixty, appendix, expend, exotic, except, exile

11 – fonetik mashq (Soʻzlarni toʻgʻri oʻqing)

speed, loaf, loom, reach, rose, fill, coal, aim, cube, weave, faint, steam, tool, freeze, mutton, crystal, tense, shoot, trainer, coast, raze, float, beach, least, boot, fee, rein, author, veil, weight, lain, coin, neighbor, neutral, grew, pie, pool, took, toy, autumn, how, know, narrow, true, group, bread, peace, believe, feel, wheel, sore, ore, nasty, salt, lure, sure, jerk, jaw, fruit, toe, paw, hair, dear, chair, peer, learn, car, moor ;

a merry song; a big boat; a simple riddle; a little star; a black bag; an old goat; a good cook; a fat cock; a good accent; an old oak; a good tool; a white bear; a poor fellow; a new dish; a low couch; a big mouth; a narrow path; a broken chair; an old gypsy; chilly weather; brown bread; good maize; bitter beer, fresh air; red hair; bad flour; repeat each word; correct these mistakes; close the window; take the pill.

12 - fonetik mashq (Soʻzlarning oʻqilishini [transkripsiyasini] yozing)

a) can, crane, car, care, pot, poke, pork, pore, hen, she, her, here, fish, fine, firm, fire, my, myth, Byrd, tyre, cup, cube, curly, cure.

b) five, tip, bed, pipe, land, fry, rule, ton, tone, pupil, love, cut, shade, brother, shall, bus, snack, blame, poke, found, aloud, green, town, toy, farm, yellow, glove, warm, some, won, worse, nothing, who, what, where, whose, mild, world, month, worth, company, worship, none, find, wild, ought, above, brought, share, store, here, cure, fur, term, more, firm, spare, wire, mere.

Sound 1 [i:]

1. A friend in need is a friend indeed.
2. A sailor went to sea
To sea what he could see
But all he could see
Was sea, sea, sea
3. If all the seas were one sea, what a great sea that would be
4. The great Greek growers grow great Greek grapes

Sound 2 [ɪ]

1. It's a pity that little Kitty lives in a big city.
2. Six little kittens lost their mittens.
It is a pity, they were so pretty
3. She sells sea shells on the sea shore.
4. Six sick hicks nick six slick bricks with picks and sticks

Sound 3 [e]

1. Get ten eggs ready for breakfast.
2. East or West, home is best.
3. If many men knew what many men know.
If many men went where many men go.
If many men did what many men do.
The world would be better.
I think so, don't you?

Sound 4 [æ]

1. Clean clans creamed in clean cans.
2. Where are you going to, my little cat?
I am going to town to buy a hat!
What!? A hat for a cat? A cat in a hat?
Who ever saw a cat in a hat?

3. Three little cats, went out one day
Not for a walk and not to play.
They wanted to find some milk to drink.
Yes, they found some, where do you think?
By every door, a jar they found.
They drank the milk, without a sound.

4. Once there lived a Lad who was always very sad.
For he hadn't any mother and he hadn't any dad.

Sound 5 [ɑ:]

1. Friends a hundred miles a part.
Sit and chatter heart to heart.
Boys and girls from school a far
Speak to Mother ask Papa
2. He laughs best, who laughs last.
3. Who will run faster?
You or I?
Who'll laugh louder?
Let's try.
4. From a far Side cartoon by Gary Larson.

Sound 6 [ɔ:]

1. Lots and lots of clocks and watches have gone wrong.
2. As I was going along, along.
And singing a comical song, song.
The lane I went was long, long.
And so I went singing along.
3. Honesty is the best policy.

Sound 7 [ɔ]

1. George was born in August.
2. I saw more then forty horses.
3. Of all the saws I ever was a saw
I never saw a saw as that saw saws.
4. Draw in your claws. (O'zingni bos.)

Sound 8 [u]

1. A cook took a good look at the cookery book.
2. It is good he could go on foot.
3. There was a crooked man.
And he went a crooked a mile.
And he found a crooked sixpence.
Under a crooked stile.
He bought a crooked cat,
Which caught a crooked mouse.
And they all lived together,
In a little crooked house.

Sound 9 [u:]

1. No news is good news.
2. Soon learnt soon forgotten.
3. Ruth can't say "boo" to a goose.
4. One day I went to the zoo.
For I wanted to see the old Gnu.
But the old Gnu was dead.
They had a new Gnu instead.
And that Gnu,
Well, he knew he was new.

Sound 10 [ʌ]

1. Every country has its customs.
2. For every evil under the sun
 There is a remedy or there is none.
 If there is one, try to find it.
 If there is none, never mind it.
3. Never trouble trouble till trouble troubles you.
 It only doubles trouble and troubles others too.

Sound 11 [ə:]

1. It is an early bird that catches the worm.
2. As is the workman so is the work.
3. Early to bed and early to rise.
 Makes the man healthy and wise.

Sound 12 [ə]

1. You can think better after a night's sleep.
2. Take us as you find us.
3. Every day in every way the weather is getting better and better.

Sound 13 [ei]

1. Rain, rain, April rain.
 You are feeding seeds and grain.
 You are raising plants and crops.
 With your gally sparkling drops.
2. Rain, rain, go away.
 Come again another day.
 Little June wants to play.
3. Save your pains. (O'pkangni bos.)

Sound 14 [ou]

1. Soames never boasts of what he knows.
But Rose never knows of what she boasts.
2. Little Nancy Etticote
In a white petticoat
With a red nose.
The longer she stands,
The shorter she grows.
3. It is a cold coal to bowl at.
4. As you sow you shall mow.

Sound 15 [ai]

1. Out of sight out of mind.
2. Better die standing than live kneeling.
3. My kite is white.
My kite is light.
My kite is in the sky.
Fly, my kite, fly, white kite.
Fly high in the sky.

Sound 16 [au]

1. What have you found out about it?
2. Count me out.
3. Without your tongue you can not talk,
Without your feet you can not walk,
Without your eyes you can not see,
Without your heart you can not be.

Sound 17 [oi]

1. The voice of one man is the voice of no one.
2. Joys shared with others are more enjoyed.
3. What is the boiling point of oil?

Sound 18 [ɪə]

1. The frost is here

The fuel is dear

And wood is dear

And frost is here

And has bitten the heel of the going year.

2. Steer clear of him.

Sound 19 [eə]

1. Take care of the minutes and the hours will take care of themselves.

2. Mary wears her hair long.

3. It is late to tear your hair. (To'ydan keyin nog'ora chalma.)

Sound 20 [juə]

1. What can't be cured must be endured.

2. I'll surely speak more fluently after a tour to a Europe.

3. Curiosity is incurable.

4. He is a doer, for sure. (U aytganini qiladiganlardan.)

BASIC COURSE

Lesson One

Grammar: *Noun (singular and plural forms of nouns, possessive case of nouns, the verb TO BE, the Article)*

Text: *Happy Birth Day! (My Family)*

STUDY THE FOLLOWING RULES

☀ Nouns that can be counted have two numbers: singular and plural.

The plural is usually formed by adding **-s** or **-es** (after **o** or **ss**, **x**, **sh**, **ch**)

hand - hands

class - classes

shoe - shoes

box - boxes

year - years

dish - dishes

map - maps

Some borrowed words ending in **-o** take only **-s**: E.g.: *piano-pianos*

There are however, many peculiarities:

1. Twelve nouns ending in **-f** or **-fe** drop **-f** or **-fe** and take **-ves**. These nouns are: *wife*, *life*, *knife*, *self*, *calf*, *shelf*, *leaf*, *loaf*, *thief*, *half*. E.g.: *wife-wives*; *thief-thieves*; *half-halves*.

Other nouns ending in **-f** or **-fe** add **-s** in the plural in the ordinary way. E.g.: *cliff-cliffs*; *handkerchief-handkerchiefs*.

2. Nouns ending in **-y** preceded by a consonant change **-y** into **-ies**. E.g.: *hobby-hobbies*, *fly-flies*, (*but, boy-boys*).

3. Some nouns still take the old English **-en** or **-ren** for their plurals. E.g.: *ox-oxen*; *child-children*.

4. Seven nouns form their plurals by a change of root vowels: *man-men*, *woman-women*, *tooth-teeth*, *foot-feet*, *goose-geese*, *louse-lice*, *mouse-mice*.

5. Some nouns do not change in the plural: *fish-fish*, *sheep-sheep*, and *deer-deer*.

6. Some nouns are used with a verb only in the plural: *wages, goods, clothes, riches, proceeds, scissors, trousers, spectacles, and scales.*

☞ Cases

English nouns have two cases: the Common Case and the Possessive Case.

The Possessive case is formed by adding *-’s* to the singular nouns and only *’* (apostrophe) to the *-s* ending nouns. E.g.: the girl’s hat - the girls’ hats; student’s book – students’ books.

But, man’s shirt – men’s shirts

The Possessive case is used:

1) In speaking of persons and sometimes of animals. E.g.: the engineer’s tool, the cat’s food, men’s wear.

2) With certain phrases denoting *time, space, quantity*. E.g.: A day’s wait, two weeks’ holiday, a needle’s point, a stone’s throw.

3) With nouns, denoting countries, towns, and ships. E.g.: The Istiqlol palace is Uzbekistan’s best concert hall. I like to go to Tashkent’s art gallery.

4) In such cases as: I go to the baker’s. We spend our holiday at our uncle’s.

☞ There are two articles in the English language: the indefinite article **a (an)** and the definite article **the**.

The Indefinite article is used:

1) before a countable noun in the singular when it is mentioned for the first time.

E.g.: I have a dog.

A house has a roof. I see a man. It is an eagle. She has an apple.

2) before a countable noun in the singular when this noun is used as an individual representative of a class of things or beings. E.g.: A cat is a domestic animal. A crocodile is a wild animal.

3) with nouns denoting professions. E.g.: I am a teacher. She is a nurse.

The definite article is used:

- 1) when we answer to the questions “which?”, “what?” or “whose?” E.g.: Where is the key? Which key? The key which I gave you yesterday?
- 2) before a noun which is mentioned a second time. E.g.: I saw an old man. The man was looking for you.
- 3) before such nouns as: the sun, the earth, the moon, the world, the universe, the North Pole
- 4) with a noun in the singular, if this noun refers to the whole class. E.g.: The radio was invented in Russia.

No article is used:

- 1) with a noun which comes after pronouns. E.g.: My sister is at home. Her brother is married. This book is too difficult.
- 2) with a noun which comes before a number. E.g.: Open your book at page 10. He is in form 7. Do exercises 12 at home.

The Verb TO BE

I. To be as a notional verb is used to express:

1. **information** about persons or things; E.g.: He is a student. She is at home.
2. **mental or physical condition**; E.g.: I am ill. He is cheerful. She is clever.
3. **age**; E.g.: She is 18. I am 20. (I am twenty years old.)
4. **price, time, date, distance, size, and etc.** E.g.: It is late. This shirt is too expensive. It is 20 km from here.

To be is used in **there is, there are** – constructions. E.g.: Under the window there is a radiator. There is not any milk in the jug.¹

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Give the plural of the following nouns and use them in your own sentences: Tomato, piano, metro, hero, photo, thief, manifesto, glass, valley, wolf, wife, mosquito, match, knife, safe, handkerchief, lady, box, leaf, chief, loaf, grief, man, child, sheep, axe, mouse, proof, hoof, echo, automation, scarf, foot, shelf, deer.

¹ The sentence *There is a table in the room* is more often used than *The table is in the room*.

Ex. 2. Put the noun with the preposition "of" into the Possessive Case, where it is possible. Model: *the house of Mr. Black* → *Mr. Black's house*.

1. The poem of Erkin Vokhidov. 2. The opinion of the lawyer. 3. The decision of the attorney. 4. The Dean of our faculty. The sister of my mother is my aunt. 5. The brother of my father is my uncle. 6. The father of my grand father is my great grand father. 7. The son of my brother is my nephew. 8. The daughter of my brother is my niece. 9. The spouse of my brother is my sister-in-law. 10. The children of my uncle are my cousins. 11. A journey of a week. 12. An interval of two months.

Ex. 3. Answer the following questions. Use the Possessive Case of the Nouns for your answer. Chose the appropriate nouns given below.

(baker's, butcher's, florist's, watchmaker's, tailor's, chemist's, greengrocer's, hairdresser's, barber's, milkman's, dressmaker's)

1. Where do you buy bread, milk, and meat? 2. Where can you have your watch repaired? 3. Where can you have your dress made? 4. Where can you order a new suit? 5. Where can you buy flowers? 6. Where do you go to buy medicine? 7. Where can you have your hair cut and made? 8. Where do you go to have your beard shaved?

Ex. 4. Make the following sentences negative and interrogative:

1. There is an airplane in the sky. 2. There are two beds in the bedroom. 3. There is a big mountain in the picture. 4. There is a wireless set in the room. 5. There are several students in the classroom. 6. There is a bank just over there. 7. There are many stores in this district. 8. There are many students in the auditorium. 9. There is a post office near my house. 10. There is a new play at the theatre tonight. 11. There are a lot of children in the yard. 12. There are many criminals in this town.

Ex. 5. Ask questions according to the model.

Model: *There is a lawn in front of the building.*

Teacher: Ask A. if there is a lawn in front of the building.

Student: Is there a lawn in front of the building?

1. There is a student at the blackboard. 2. There are a lot of fruit-trees in the garden. 3. There is a sofa in our sitting-room. 4. There is an armchair near the fireplace. 5. There is an interesting film on TV tonight. 6. There is a new cinema in this district. 7. There is an ash-tray on the table. 8. There is a clock on the wall. 9. There are two small chairs in the room. 10. There are many students in the lobby.

HAPPY BIRTH DAY!

I am Frank Haywood. I am forty-two. I am a **district attorney** and I am **fond of** taking photos. This is my family. The people in the photo are my nearest and dearest. This **elderly** man is my father. He is a lawyer **by profession**, but he does not work. He is a pensioner and now he has a lot of time **to go in for sports**. He is very kind and **jolly**. And this old lady is my mother. She is a perfect **tailor** and still makes smart clothes. I **am proud of** my parents.



Today is the best day. We **celebrate** our father's birthday every year. Look, there are many **candles** on the cake. My wife Patricia likes to **bake** cakes. She likes to decorate birthday cakes with cream. She has a part time job at **nursing home**. She does not want to be a full-time homemaker.

We **share** money-making and housekeeping **responsibilities**. Patricia has larger share of the housework, cooking and childcare, but she gets some help from her mother-in law.

We have **twins**. They are Beatrice and Alfred. Sometimes they are **naughty**. They are both **fond of** birds and animals. Now they **are eager** to have a puppy. **But** their granny **is against** it. She **is afraid of** animals. And we have no **peace** because of our children's pets.

VOCABULARY NOTES

I am forty-two. Men 42 yoshdaman. How old are you? I am nineteen (years old).

attorney – advokat, yurist, prokuror Attorney General - bosh prokuror; adliya vaziri (AQSH da)

district attorney — tuman prokurori

Syn: lawyer

to be fond of – yoqtirmoq, xush ko'rmoq; She is very fond of horses. My brother is fond of pointing out my mistakes.

elderly *adj.* ['eldəli] - keksa

by profession – mutaxassisligi bo'yicha; She is a lawyer by profession.

to go in for sports – sport bilan shug'illanmoq

pensioner *n.* ['penʃənə] – nafaqaxo'r

to be proud of – faxrlanmoq, g'ururlanmoq; I am proud of my father.

Jolly *adj.* ['dʒoli] – quvnoq

tallor *n.* ['teilə] – tikuvchi, chevar

celebrate *v.* ['selibreit] – nishonlamoq; We celebrate Independence Day on September 1.

candle *n.* ['kændl] – sham (shag'am)

bake *v.* ['beik] – yopmoq, Syn: grill, baker – nonvoy, to bake bread – non yopmoq, quyoshda toblanmoq

twin *n.* [twin] - egizak; triplet – uchzak; Every time she gives a birth she has twins or triplets.

naughty *adj.* ['no:ti] – quloqsiz, to'polonchi

to be eager – istamoq, hoxlamoq; juda qattiq hoxshi bo'lmoq. He is eager to learn foreign languages.

to be against – qarsh bo'lmoq, qarshi chiqmoq

to be afraid of - qo'rqmoq, cho'chimoq; to be afraid of smth. — biror narsadan qo'rqmoq. to make afraid — qo'rqitmoq Who is afraid? I am afraid to wake him.

Syn: ughast, alarmed, anxious, apprehensive, fearful, frightened, scared, terror-stricken

Ant: audacious, brave, calm, confident, unafraid

peace *n.* [pi:s] – tinchlik, in peace, to live in peace, to achieve peace, to bring about peace – tinchlikka erishmoq to break, disturb, shatter the peace – tinchlikka dahil qilmoq, to keep the peace – tinchlikni saqlamoq
to negotiate (a) peace with – tinchlik uchun muzokara qilmoq, durable, lasting peace, fragile peace, peace campaigner, peace reigns, peace establishment, peace movement

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

bride, groom, fiancée, to be married, to be engaged, to propose a marriage, to adopt a child, orphan, stressful, divorce, divorce decree, divorce rate, no-fault divorce, widow, bread earner, home sitter...

Relations by birth: parents, father, mother, sister, brother, son, daughter, grandmother, grandfather, grandson, grand-daughter, grandchildren, grandparents, great-grandfather, great-grandmother, great-grandchildren, uncle, aunt, cousin, nephew, niece

Relations by marriage: husband, wife, spouse, father-in-law, mother-in-law, son-in-law, daughter-in-law, brother-in-law, sister-in-law, stepmother, stepfather, step (sister, brother, son, daughter)

People's age:

What is your age? (How old are you?)

I am seventeen. I am seventeen years old. I am under seventeen.

I am over seventeen. I am nearly eighteen.

I am under age yet. = I am not yet eighteen.

In three month's time I'll come of age.

She is still in her teens (13-19). She is a teenager.

She is in her (early, late) thirties (i.e. between 29 and 40).

She is a middle aged person.

She is an elderly person.

to live to (reach) an age — ma'lum yoshga etmoq

people of all ages — hamma yoshdagi odamlar

the voting age is 18 — ovoz berish 18 yoshdan

a boy 10 years of age — o'n yashar bola

act one's age — o'zni yoshiga munosib tutmoq

advanced age - age group - age of discretion - age of stand - age of teething -

awkward age - early age - legal age - childbearing age - old age - retirement age -

retiring age - ripe old age - tender age - young age - at an early age - at a very

young age

to bear one's age well — She bears her age well. U yoshiga nisbatan ko'rkam

ko'rinadi.

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Change the given groups of words as in the model.

Model: the room of my sister – my sister's room

The friend of my sister – my sister's friend

1. the brother of my father; 2. the sister of my father; 3. the husband of his daughter; 4. the wife of my brother; 5. the son of my sister; 6. the daughter of my brother; 7. the mother of my spouse; 8. the mother of my sister; 9. the son of my uncle; 10. the daughter of her aunt.

Ex. 2. Fill in suitable words.

1. My aunt's son is my 2. Your father's father is your 3. His sister's daughter is 4. Her brother's son is 5. My mother's brother is my 6. Your sister's spouse is your 7. His brother's wife is his 8. Your uncle's daughter is your 9. My spouse is my mother's 10. His son's child is his 11. Her son's children are her 12. My uncle's sister is my 13. Her parents' parents are her 14. My father's grand son is my

Ex. 3. Translate these sentences into English.

1. Yoshing nechada? – Men 32 yoshdaman. – Turmush qurganmisiz? – Xa. – Ikki nafar farzandim bor. 2. Annaning turmush o'rtog'i yurist. Ularning uch nafar o'g'li bor. 3. Ota-onalarimiz turmush qurishimizga qarshi. 4. Jiyanim uy hayvonlarini yoqtiradi. Uning kuchugi va mushugi bor. 5. Tog'amning o'g'li unashtirilgan. Uning qalig'i 22 yoshda. 6. Ularning ota-onalari ajrashgan. 7. Xolamning qizi turmushga chiqqan. U juda quvnoq ayol. 8. Men bo'ridan qo'rqaman. 9. Ular hayvonlarni yoqtirishadi. 10. Amakimning qizi mening amakivachcham. 11. Opamning o'g'li o'spirin. 12. Akamning turmush o'rtog'i uy bekasi. 13. Bobom nafaqada. Uning nabiralari juda ko'p. 14. Merining qaynonasi kekxa. U Meriga uy ishlarida ko'maklashadi. 15. Men ota-onam bilan fahrlanaman. 16. Merining jiyanlari juda sho'x.

Ex. 4. Translate the passages into your mother tongue chose one and try to retell it.

1. Family Night

The Hollins family likes to sing. The whole family is very musical. The children play musical instruments. Ann, who is 15, plays the piano and the guitar. Shirley, who is 13, plays the guitar and the flute, and Steven, who is 9, is learning to play the trumpet. Both, Mr. & Mrs. Hollins play the organ, piano, and clarinet. Mr. Hollines is a businessman. Saturday night is family night for the Hollins. That night they reserve for family activities together. One of their favorite activities is singing while dad plays the organ. Occasionally, the family sings as a group at churches or clubs. Once, they sang on television.

2. Family Outing

Frank Haywood and his family enjoy going camping. It is the way that they spend their weekends together when the weather is nice. The children, Peggy, who is 12, and Brain, 11, are expert campers. They like to fish with their father and swim or go canoeing on the lake. Mrs. Haywood is very fond of long walks through the woods. The Haywoods have a recreational vehicle (R.V.) which is a

home on wheels. It has bunk beds for four people, a sitting area, kitchen, and bathroom. The R.V. makes camping much easier, which pleased Mrs. Haywood, who calls the R.V. "Our home away our home".

Ex. 5. Debate these issues in small groups. Then chose one and write about it.

1. What are the main reasons so many children live with only one parent?
2. For mothers, what are two advantages of working? What are two disadvantages?
3. Social scientists believe that mothers and fathers love their children in different ways. A mother's love is unconditional. She loves her child because the child is hers, and father's love is to be earned. Do you think this is true? How does a child "earn" love?
4. Some women decide to become pregnant by artificial insemination. Is this a good idea? If the father is an unidentified donor, the child will never know who he was. Is this fair to the child?
5. Some states and communities have parental-responsibility laws. If children commit crimes, their parents can be sued, fined, or even jailed. Is this a good idea? What if the parents contribute to the crime (for example, by carelessly leaving guns unlocked)?

Grammar: Present continues Tense, Prepositions of Place, There is (are) construction

Text: My Apartment

STUDY THE FOLLOWING RULES

To be as auxiliary verb is used to form the Present Continuous (progressive) Tenses:

I am working.	We are working.
You are working.	You are working.
He (she, it) is working.	They are working.

Am I working?	Are we working?
Are you working?	Are you working?
Is he (she, it) working?	Are thee working?

I am not working.	We are not working.
You are not working.	You are not working.
He (she, it) is not working.	They are not working.

The Present Continuous Tense is used:

1. To denote an action in progress, duration at the definite present moment.

E. g.: What are you doing now? I am writing a report.

The Present Continuous Tense occurs in speech more often than the Present Indefinite Tense. *E. g.: Do you read this book? is used less frequently than Are you reading a book?*

Certain verbs are usually not used in the Continuous Tenses. They are: be, have, appear, believe, become, expect, feel, forget, forgive, like, hate, hear, know, see,

seem, think.. Sometimes they are found in the Continuous Tenses, if they have certain color in meaning. E. g.: How are you feeling? (in the medical sense). How are you liking it? (in the meaning of "enjoy") I'm seeing you tomorrow. (=I shall visit you tomorrow.) He is expecting the news today (in the meaning of "await"). Are you hearing from him (in the meaning of "having the news"). I am thinking it over (someone asks about my opinion).

2. To denote one's plans in the nearest future (the time of action must always be mentioned). E. g.: Are you doing anything special tonight? Yes, I am going to the Student's Club. (More about it see in the chapter on the Future Tense)

3. Instead of a future action in duration in adverbial clauses of condition and time.

l. e. g.: If he is smoking when I am absent, I shall blame him.²

Prepositions can be simple (at, in, on, etc.), compound (into, out of, upon, etc.), and phrase prepositions (in front of, by means of, etc.)

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Answer the following questions.

Model: Is he reading a story? (a novel?) → He is reading a novel.

1. Am I opening the book? (the copy-book? the bag?) 2. Are they shutting the door? (the window? the box?) 3. Are you standing in the lobby? (in the corner of the room? in the middle in the classroom?) 4. Is he taking the pencil off the bag? (the copy-book off the drawer? the pen off the box?) 5. Am I telling the time? (the date? the name? the truth?) 6. Are they going to school? (to the University? to the cinema?) 7. Is he writing a dictation? (a test? an exercise?) 8. Is she working at the report? (the article? the book?)

Ex.2. Answer the following questions.

Model: Is she sitting at the table or by the window? (on the sofa or on the chair?)

→ *She is sitting by the window. She is sitting on the sofa.*

² The Present Continuous Tense is never used with the question word when, except when the immediate future is to be expressed.

1. Is she opening the door or the window? (the gate or the front door? the book or the copy-book?) 2. Is he talking with the student or with the instructor? (to Comrade X. or to Comrade A?) 3. Are they writing exercises or a test? (letters or articles?, theses or compositions?) 4. Is he working at his article or his book? (his dissertation or his essay?) 5. Is she standing at the blackboard or at the window? (in the middle of the classroom or at the door? at the gate or on the sidewalk?) 6. Are you practicing in class or at home? (in the morning or in the evening? with the teacher or alone?)

Ex. 3. Insert the missing prepositions.

1. ... summer Englishmen like to play football and golf. 2. There are many students ... the hall. 3. There are many bridges ... the river. 4. The students are standing ... the door and waiting ... their teacher. 5. We have a small garden ... our house. 6. The train arrives ... the station ... 5 p.m... 7. My flat is ... the fifth floor. 8. He is fond ... gardening, and has many unusual flowers ... his farm. 9. I come ... home and lay my bed ... once. 10. ... the evenings we sit the TV and watch football matches. 11. My granny is sitting ... her armchair and knitting a sweater ... me. 12. There are many pictures ... the walls ... the room.

Ex. 4. Look at the picture. Complete the sentences by putting the correct prepositions in the blanks.

LIST OF SOME PREPOSITIONS

along	at	below	beside	into	in	on
around	behind	beneath	in front of	between	over	under

The house has five windows. The door is _____ two windows. One window is _____ three windows. There are curtains _____ the windows. There is a chimney _____ the roof. There are flowers _____ the house and a large tree _____ the house. There is also a fence _____ the house.



MY APARTMENT

My apartment building is not very **tall**. It has eight floors. My apartment is on the sixth floor. It is a nice apartment, but it is small. There is only one bedroom, one bathroom, a kitchen and a sitting room in my apartment. But, I like it because it is **close** to my job and there is a park behind my apartment building. I pay only \$100 a month for my apartment. That's very reasonable.

This is my sitting room. There is a large window with beautiful **curtains** on it.

There is a TV and **VCR** on the **chest of drawers** to the left of the fireplace. In the middle of the room there is a woolen carpet, I prefer to do my homework on it. There are also two armchairs, standard lamp, and **built-in furniture** in the room.



There are several magazines and a plate of apples on the table. The room is **large enough** to **install** a round table. But I do not like to have much furniture in my room. There are all **modern conveniences**; central heating, hot and cold running water, gas, electricity, and **refuse chute** to carry **rubbish** down in my flat.

Now I am **repairing** my bathroom. To **save money** I am doing a lot of work myself. Today I am putting new **tiles** on the floor because the old ones are

cracked and worn. I have enough tiles, tile **adhesive**, or **mastic** as it is called, and **tools** to **spread** mastic and cut tile. Now, working hard I am nearly finishing the job. My friend Alan is helping me. He is spreading the mastic and I am placing the tiles. I figure that, I save over \$500! And besides, it is fun!

VOCABULARY NOTES

tall *adj.* [to:l] – a) novcha, baland bo'yli a tall man, a tall woman, He is taller than you are. How tall are you?

b) baland (daraxt, tog') tall trees, a tall chimney, a tall column, a tall mast, tall grass Syn: high

close *adj.* [kləʊs] – a) yaqin, yaqin atrofda, The house is close to the park. The migration of the ducks southward shows that winter is close.

b) berk ko'cha (tupik) Longwood Close

c) yopiq, berkitilgan, yashirin, kamgap - to keep a thing close - He was too close to name his circumstances to me.

d) mahkam, qattiq, qizg'anchiq He's as close with his money as Scrooge. The fabric was of a close weave.

Syn: near, neighbouring, approximate, imminent, impending, forthcoming, nigh

The color is close to what I want, but the style is wrong.

curtain *n.* ['kə:tn] – parda, parda osmoq

VCR – video cassette recorder

chest of drawers – tortma, tahmonli jihoz

built-in furniture – devor ichiga qurilgan jihoz, qo'lbola mebel

enough *adj.* [i'nʌf] – yetarli, to have enough time — yetarlicha vaqti bo'lmoq E.g. He has enough and to spare — Unda keragidan ham ortiq bor; I've had enough of him — U meni jonimga tegdi; you know well enough — siz a'loga bilasiz; he is strong enough to tolerate; she is clever enough to....

Install *v.* [in'sto:l] – joylashtirmoq, o'rnatmoq, lavozimga (mansabga) tayinlamoq (in; as) to install smb. as president — biror kishini prezidentlikka tayinlamoq; o'rnashmoq, o'rnashib olmoq - to install oneself around the piano

modern convenience [ˈmo:d(ə)n kənˈvi:njəns] – zamonaviy qulaylik

refuse chute *n.* [riˈfju:z tʃju:t] – ahlat tashlanadigan quvr

rubbish *n.* [ˈrʌbɪʃ] – chiqindi, ahlat

repair *v.* [riˈpeə] – tamirlamoq, tuzatmoq

save money [seiv ˈmʌni] – pul tejamoq

tile *n.* [taɪl] – chinni yoki sopol qoplama (kafel)

cracked *adj.* [krækt] – (crack – sinmoq, sindirmoq) yorilgan, channagan

worn *adj.* [wo:n] – eskirgan, ohori toʻkilgan, wear (wore – worn) - kiymoq

adhesive *adj.* [ədˈhi:sɪv] – yopishadigan, yopishib qoladigan

mastic *n.* [mæstɪk] – germetik kley

tool *n.* [tu:l] – asbob-anjoma (mehnat qurollar) bench tool — chilangarlik

usboblari; vosita, mehanizm, vosita Money is a pure tool - nothing more. — Pul

shunchaki vosita, boshqa hech narsa emas. Syn: instrument

fiscal tools — soliq siyosati tadbirlari, policy tool — siyosat yuritish mehanizmi

Syn: pickpocket – choʻntak kesar, oʻgʻiri

spread *v.* [ˈspred] – surtmoq, yoymoq, yoyilmoq, tarqamoq, rancho

Syn: extent, expanse e.g. The spread between the local and the foreign money

rates. — Milliy va xorijiy valyuta kurslari orasidagi farq. The peacock spreads its

tail. The river here spreads to a width of half a mile. The bird spread its wings for

flight. His studies at the University spread over five years.

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

Room: sitting room, bed room, living room, study, bath room, recreation room, corridor, hall, balcony, cellar, roof, ceiling, entry, lobby, nursery, dining-room, pantry, kitchen

Articles of furniture: bed, sofa, divan-bed, chair, armchair, dressing stool, dressing-table, table, bookcase, cupboard, wardrobe, mirror, lamp, standard-lamp, stool, unit(s), cabinet, bedside cabinet, wall-furniture, suite

Modern conveniences: electricity, gas, running-water, central heating, telephone, toilet, a rubbish chute, tiled walls, lift, air chute, illuminator

Electric and other equipments: refrigerator (fridge), vacuum-cleaner, stove, sink, dishwasher, washing machine, air conditioner, TV-set, tape recorder, music-center, VCR

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Chose the suitable word and fill in the sentences.

1. I have to clean the carpet. 2. She doesn't spend much time on washing the laundry. She has 3. We put fruits and vegetables in to keep them fresh and cool. 4. There is to carry rubbish down. 5. Mother is cooking dinner in 6. She is eager to buy because, she likes to watch serials. 7. There are different clothes in the and you may put on whatever you like. 8. We see our reflection on the 9. They are having dinner in the 10. Bob, go to the and bring me some potatoes.

Ex. 2. Study the table and pay attention the usage of the word "close"

close about	o'rab olmoq, qamrab olmoq	close in (on)	yaqinlashmoq, yaqin kelmoq, qisqartmoq, jarohat etkazmoq
close down	yo'pmoq (korxonani); to'xtatmoq (ishni, faoliyatni)	close off	to'smoq (yp'lni)
close out	narxlarni qisqartmoq	close round	окружать
close up	yo'pmoq, unitmoq, unutmog, yo'q qilmoq, bitmoq (jarohat), ezmoq, urmoq (basharasini bejab qo'ymoq)	close upon	kelishmoq, qurshab olmoq (doimiy)
close with	janga kirishmoq, taklif qabul qilmoq, bitim tuzmoq, kelishmoq	be closed with	tez-tez uchrashib turmoq, aloqada bo'lib turmoq

1. As darkness **closed about** them, they decided to return home. 2. The shop will **be closing down** for good on Saturday, so everything is half price. 3. The owner has to **close the shop down**. 4. This station is now **closing down** and we wish you all goodnight. 5. Darkness **closed down** on the city. 6. The days are **closing in** now that it is September. 7. The youth threatened to **close the old man's face in**. 8. The enemy is **closing in** on the city. 9. The lion **closed in** on the family of deer. 10. The police have **closed off** the streets so that the President can drive through the city free of traffic. 11. The store is **closing out** on Saturday. 12. We must **close up** the old well, it's dangerous. 13. The road has been **closed up** for repairs. 14. I'm glad to see that the wound is **closing up** nicely. 15. The captain ordered his men to **close up**. 16. As soon as I mentioned the new appointment, the chairman **closed up** and refused to talk about the matter. 17. After hours of talking about the price, the shopkeeper at last **closed with** the salesman's offer. 18. The two ministers didn't **close with** each other until near the end of the meeting. 19. I'm sorry, you can't go in that room, the chairman is **closed with** the director for an urgent meeting.

Ex. 3. Translate into English

1. Bob oshxonada oyisiga yordamlashapti. 2. Mening kvartiram uchinchi qavatda. 3. Balkonda shkaf bor. 4. Bizning kvartiramizda hamma qulayliklar bor. 5. Anna pulini tejashni xohlaydi. U darsxonasini remont qilyapti. 6. Zalda talabalar ko'p. 7. Mening tog'am novcha kishi. 8. Dadam vannada kafel teryapti. 9. Ularni remont uchun yetarli pullari bor, lekin ular tejashmoqchi. 10. Kamen qarshisida ikkita oromkursi bor. 11. Opamning kvartirasi juda qulay. 12. Televizoringiz bormi? – Xa. – Changyutgichchi? 13. Menga sizning mebefingiz juda yoqadi. U yangi va zamonaviy. 14. Biz yangi uyda yashaymiz. U yerda barcha zamonaviy qulayliklar bor: elektr toki, gaz, isitish tarmog'i, issiq-sovuq suv va chiqindi quviri. 15. Bizda remont uchun barcha uskunalar bor. 16. Ularda uyni ta'mirlash uchun barcha vositalar bor.

Ex. 4. Translate the text into your native language and try to retell it.

Do-It-Yourself

The Martins, Hal and Linda wanted to redecorate the recreation room of their house. To save money they decided to do a lot of the work themselves. They decided to put new tiles on the floor because the old ones were cracked and worn. So, they went to a hardware store and bought tiles, tile adhesive, or mastic as it is called, and tools to spread mastic and cut tile. Now, working together they have nearly finished the job. Hal spread the mastic and Linda placed the tiles. By doing the work themselves, the Martins figure that, they saved over \$200! And besides, it was fun!

Ex. 5. Describe this or any other picture of the room.



Lesson Three

Grammar: *Present Indefinite (Simple) Tense, Pronouns*

Text: *My Day*

THE PRESENT TENSE

I go.	Do I go?	I do not go.
You go.	Do you go?	You do not go.
He (she, it) goes.	Does he (she, it) go?	He (she, it) does not go.
They go.	Do they go?	They do not go.

- I. The Present Indefinite Tense is formed from the infinitive without **to**. In the third person singular **-s** or **-es** is added. E.g.: He plays [s], he writes [s], she learns [z], he teaches [iz], he goes [z].
- II. The interrogative and negative forms of the Present Indefinite Tense are formed with the verb **do**. E.g.: **Do** you study English? Yes, I **do**. No, I do not (**don't**). **Does** he study English? Yes, he does. No, he does not (**doesn't**).
- III. The Present Indefinite Tense is used:
 1. To denote the action which is permanent or habitual. E.g.: *Nick goes to school every day. I usually get up early.* In this case the adverbials **always, often, usually, sometimes, over, normally, occasionally, on Monday, and so on, every day, every week, every spring, each year**, can be used.
 2. To denote general truths. E.g.: *The Earth goes around the Sun. The sun sets in the West.*
 3. Instead of the Present Continuous Tense with the verbs which are not used in the Continuous form.³ E.g.: *I see students in this picture.*

³ Certain verbs usually are not used in the Continuous Tense. They are: be, have, appear, believe, become, expect, feel, forget, forgive, like, hate, hear, know, see, seem, and think.

4. a) Instead of future action in adverbial clause of time. E.g.: If he comes, we shall go to the cinema. (For more details see in the chapter on the Future Tenses)
- b) With the verbs of motion with regard to the nearest future. E.g.: They come at 5 tomorrow. We go to the theatre in the evening.

PRONOUNS

Personal Pronouns		Possessive Pronouns		Reflective Pronouns
Nominative case	Objective case	Conjoint form	Absolute form	
I	me	my	mine	myself
you	you	your	yours	yourself
he	him	his	his	himself
she	her	her	hers	herself
it	it	its	its	itself
we	us	our	ours	ourselves
you	you	your	yours	yourselves
they	them	their	theirs	themselves

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Practice the following in the singular, making the necessary changes in the sentences. *Mod el: They speak German well. → He speaks German well.*

- They do their shopping every day.
- My friends spend their holiday in the Crimea every year.
- They eat porridge every morning.
- My neighbors work in Moscow; they go there by train.
- The children play all day long.
- They wash their hands and faces and dry them on a towel.
- My sisters like grapes but do not like plums.
- The students write their reports and make them orally in class.
- Both friends generally go- to the theatre twice a month.
- The postmen deliver the newspapers and letters every day.
- They have breakfast at 7 o'clock and eat essentially.
- They attend the students' club every week.

Ex. 2. Practice the following in the singular.

- They tell me that when they go out into the country on their motorcycle, they put it by the tree near a river and swim in the water if the day is hot.
- These students go to the University by metro. They don't waste time. They read newspapers,

books and talk. 3. When the children come back from school, they put their bags in the hall, eat their dinner and run out; they play football and enjoy themselves immensely. 4. The students study the language twice a week. They read the texts; answer the questions and write exercises. 5. The students go to class every day. The classes begin at 9 o'clock. The students stay at the University till 5 o'clock. After that they go home. 6. Every morning at breakfast the boys sit facing each other, they have their ham-and-eggs and cheese, they drink coffee and listen to the 8 o'clock news. 7. Our friends leave for Leningrad today and arrive there late in the evening. They spend several days there every year, visit museums, theatres and walk round this beautiful city. 8. They tell me that at night when it gets dark they switch on the TV or the wireless and listen to a good piece of music or watch what's on.

Ex. 3. Practice the following sentences in the negative form.

Model: 1. My office is far from my house. → My office isn't far from my house.

2. He wakes up early. → He doesn't wake up early.

1. We eat our breakfast in a hurry. 2. He spends his week-end at his parent's. 3. Bob likes to listen to the radio news in the evening. 4. She uses her glasses for reading. 5. My home is near the corner. 6. I live two blocks from here. 7. He wants to see our new house. 8. They open all the windows when they go away. 9. These students play tennis well. 10. She understands French and Italian well. 11. The weather is generally good at this time of the year. 12. He puts the chairs round the table. 13. Mary gives each person a souvenir. 14. He gets up early on Sundays. 15. She attends lectures regularly. 16. They go to Tashkent every week. 16. They walk around the campus every evening. 17. She gets acquainted with the new friends very easily. 18. He keeps his car in the garage at the side of his house. 19. I want to buy some canned goods. 20. They play football in covered courts. 21. She wants to go to the pictures. 22. He knows how to do it. 23. She likes a red lampshade. 24. She plays the piano very well.

Ex. 4. Fill in the blanks with personal pronouns and read the sentences aloud

*Model: I see a boy, I see **him**.*

1. I see a student, I see 2. I like the picture, I like 3. I know the girl, I know 4. Jim can play tennis, he can play 5. Give me these books, give me 6. Ask your teacher about it, ask 7. I don't like the grammar, I don't like 8. This task is for me and you, it is for

Ex. 5. Change the sentences as in the model.

Model: This book belongs to me. → This is my book. → This book is mine.

1. This watch belongs to you. 2. This new flat belongs to them. 3. This umbrella belongs to her. 4. These books belong to us. 5. The car belongs to him. 6. Those clothes belong to me.

Ex. 6. Fill in the blanks with missing pronouns.

Two boys, Miguel and Jose, are friends. They both have baby sisters. One day, Maguel's mother asked him to take his baby sister for a walk. And Jose's mother asked him to take his baby sister for a walk, too. The two boys met at the football field. They put their sisters under the tree and played football. When they finished playing football they came back to the tree. But they couldn't tell the difference between the baby girls. "Which one is my sister?" cried Miguel. "Which one is mine?" "Which one is my sister?" cried Jose. "I think this little one is yours," said Miguel. "Then this big one must be yours," said Jose. "Oh no," said a passing man. "This little one looks like Miguel. It must be his. And the big one looks like Jose. She must be his baby sister." Miguel took the little baby girl back to his mother. His mother screamed and said to Miguel's father, "This is not our baby. Where is ours?" Jose took the big baby girl back to his mother. His mother screamed, too, and said to Jose's father, "This is not our baby. Where's ours?" Miguel ran to Jose. "Quickly," he cried, "My mother says this little baby isn't her baby. And she wants hers back." Jose said, "My mother says this big baby isn't hers. She wants her little baby back." Later, Miguel and Jose sat and talked.

“Mothers and fathers are very clever,” said Jose. “They knew which baby **wan** theirs. They only wanted their baby.”

MY DAY

Hello!

I am Yunusbek Shovdarov. I am a student. I study at Law Faculty of Namangan State University. So, I **am going to** speak about my everyday life.

Every morning I get up at seven o'clock, and open the window to **air** the room. I **turn on** the radio and **do morning exercises to the music**. Then I go to the bathroom and **wash** my face and hands, clean my teeth, **shave** and **dry** myself **on the towel**. I sit before the looking-glass and **comb** my hair. Sometimes my sister **brushes** my clothes and shoes before she prepares breakfast.

At half past seven we all sit around the table **to have breakfast**. My father is always **in a hurry**. He just has a cup of tea and bread with some butter and sausage. After breakfast my sister **sweeps** the floor while my mother is **washing up**.

Our classes begin at half past eight and **end** at half past one. Usually we have three or four lessons. We **have ten minutes interval** after each lesson and **break for lunch** after the second lesson. As we are short of time we just **buy** something like hamburger or hotdog. After classes I go to the library. There I **stay** till four or five o'clock. Sometimes I go to the park with my friends or to the university **hostel**. I like to **participate** at different **extracurricular activities**. Student life is very interesting and also **stressful**, especially at the end of the **academic year**.

I come home at about seven o'clock and **immediately change** my clothes. If my favorite TV program is on I try to come home early and **help** my mother **about the house**. **Otherwise** my mother **makes** me do housework. I go to the **bakery** and **grocery's** to **do shopping**. **It takes me** 20 minutes. My sister **lays the table** and we all sit around for supper. After supper I do my homework, my sister begins to

dial to her friends and spends a lot of time for **nonsense**. Father watches TV and does not **pay attention** to our **arguments**. Mother **irons the laundry**.

VOCABULARY NOTES

be + going to + infinitive – kelasi zamonda biror ishni bajarmoqchi bo'lmoq – I am going to buy a new car. He is going to study law. But: "He is coming here" Not "He is going to come". "He is arriving in Namangan". Not "He is going to arrive in Namangan"

Syn: be + about to + infinitive He is about to jump in the pool himself. U basseynga sakramoqch bo'lib turubdi.

Syn: be + on the point of +ing .She is on the point of screaming. U hozir yig'lab yuboradi.

brush [brʌʃ]- 1) cho'tka, cho'kalamoq, biror buyumni ch'otka bilan tozalamoq: brush against - brush aside - brush away - brush by - brush down - brush off - brush over - brush past - brush up - brush up against

to have breakfast (lunch, dinner, supper) – nonushta (o'nbirlik, obed, tushlik)qilmoq

be in a hurry – shoshimoq – He is always in a hurry.

wash v. [wɒʃ]- yuvmoq - wash away - wash down - wash of - wash off - wash out - wash over - wash up

end v. [end]- tugamoq, tugatmoq, nihoyasiga etmoq, at the end of – to the end of, Put the platter at the end of the table. The school is at the south end of town. World's end — Dunyoning ohiri

Syn: extremity, terminus, edge, limit, boundary, border

interval n. ['ɪntəv(ə)] - tanaffus, antrakt, bo'shliq

Syn: distance, space, break, intermission, pause

break n. / v. [breɪk] – tanaffus, break (broke, broken) - sindirmoq, buzmoq., Let's have a short break for lunch.

break away - break back - break down - break in - break in on - break in upon -
break into - break loose - break of - break off - break out - break up

stay *n. / v.* [steɪ]– qolish, vaqtincha yashab turish, qolmoq E.g.: During my **stay** at this hotel ... I don't think Park Street is the place for you to **stay**. **stay away - stay down - stay for - stay off - stay over - stay with**

hostel *n.* ['hɒst(ə)l]– talabalar turar joyi E.g.: You can stay at our University hostel. Syn: dormitory, inn

participate *v.* [pɑ:'tɪsɪpeɪt]– ishtirok etmoq, qatnashmoq, sherik bo'lmoq (kimningdir qaug'usiga) E.g.: I participate in their sufferings. Syn: to take part
extracurricular activity – [ekstrəkəulə æk'tɪvɪtɪ] fakultativ mashg'ulot, darsdan tashqari mashg'ulot

stressful *adj.* [stresfʊl] – asabiy, bosimli, sertashvish

academic year [ækə'demɪk jɜ:]– o'quv yili

immediately *adj.* [ɪ'mi:djətli] – darhol, to'g'ridan to'g'ri

Syn: directly, straightway, instantly, as soon as

help someone about the house – uy yumishlarida ko'maklashmoq

otherwise *adv.* ['ʌðəwaɪz]– aks holda, boshqacha E.g.: Do what I tell you, otherwise you'll be sorry. - Aytganimni qil, yo'qsa afsuslanasan.

grocery – baqqollik do'koni

do shopping – xarid qilmoq bozor o'char qilmoq

it takes me (half an hour) – yarim soat vaqt ketadi..., e.g. It does not take him long to do shopping. How long does it take you to wash up?

lay the table – stol hozirlamoq

dial *v.* ['daɪ(ə)l] – telefonda raqam termoq, sozlamoq You may dial your favorite program. – Yoqtirgan dasturinga sozlayver.

nonsense *n.* ['nɒns(ə)ns]– befoyda narsa, hech narsa, ahamiyatsiz narsa e.g: Do not waste your time for nonsense.

pay attention to smb. *v.* [peɪ ə'tenʃ(ə)n] – ahamiyat bermoq, e'tibor bermoq

argument *n.* ['ɑ:gjumənt] – janjal, tortishuv..., to argue – tortishmoq

iron *n. / v.* [aɪən]– dazmol, dazmollamoq

laundry v. [lo:ndri]– (yuviladigan yoki yuvilgan) kiyim kechak

to do a lesson (housework, an exercises, the room, the flat, the house, one's hair, sopping, ironing, washing, good, harm, etc.)

to make smb. do smth. – majbur qilmoq / to make a mistake (a report, a dress, tea, a fire, a present, money, friends, enemies, bed, a fortune, a living, etc.)

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

to be in (on) time, to be late, to keep late hours, to be short of time = to be pressed for time; spare time; on the way home, on the way to..., in town, out of town, to be through with smth; to look through smth, (newspaper, article, text); to look forward to smth. (doing smth.); to manage to do smth, to look in; to listen in; to watch a TV programme, to go to the laundry (dry cleaning); the hairdresser, the barber, the cleaner's, the baker's, tailor's, butcher's, shoemaker's, watchmaker's; to put on (off); switch on (off); turn on (off) to have smth done..., e.g.: I have my watch repaired. He has his clothes cleaned. She is having manicure.

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Study the sentences and pay attention the usage of the word “break”

1. The criminal broke away from the policemen who were holding him.
2. The police broke the door down.
3. The thieves waited until it was dark enough to break in.
4. Jane, don't break in, please.
5. When horses are about six months old, they break them in.
6. Two weeks in the new office should be enough to break you in.
7. I'm sorry to break in on your private thoughts, but we should work.
8. The loud bell on the clock broke in upon his dreams.
9. My aunt's regular visits break into my weekend.
10. The men broke into a run. I shall have to break into my savings to pay for the holiday.
11. Three prisoners broke loose as they were being taken to another prison this morning.
12. Doctors keep trying to break him of his dependence on the drug.
13. The wing of the plane broke off in mid-air and the plane crashed.
14. We had to break the door out to escape from the fire.
15. Fire

broke out in the hospital last night. 16. Three men broke out of prison yesterday. 17. I should like to break out of this dull way of life. 18. As the Queen stepped on the shore, the ship broke out the royal flag. 19. In spring the ice on the Great Lakes breaks up. 20. The men in the garage will break up the old cars for their parts. 21. The police broke up the fight. 22. The party broke up when the police arrived. 23. When does your school break up? 24. I hear that Joan and Steve are breaking up. 25. She says, her sister is going to be married and that she fears it will break her up. 26. The camera had only to turn to Tommy Cooper for the audience to break up with laughter. 27. The job can be broken up into several activities, which provides some variety.

Ex. 2. Study the sentences and pay attention the usage of the word “stay”

1. The doctor advised Jim to stay away from fattening foods. 2. Jane is sick again: nothing she eats will stay down. 3. The miners are determined to stay down until their pay demands are met, in spite of the discomfort. 4. Jane was afraid that if she failed her examinations again she would have to stay down, repeat the work, and miss her friends. 5. I didn't think the boy would stay for two whole weeks without an invitation. 6. The doctor advised Jim to stay off fattening foods. 7. Jane should stay off school until her stomach trouble is really better. 8. We need two days for the journey, staying over at a small town on the way. 9. Jim was able to stay with the leading runner for most of the race until he weakened and had to drop back. 10. Let's stay with the present arrangements until a better plan is thought of. 11. Stay with me for a few more minutes and you'll see the point of the story.

Ex. 3. Fill in prepositions.

1. My boss is always ... a hurry. He is usually short ... time ... weekdays. 2. The flood washed ... the river banks. The villagers must be warned of the danger! 3. How many plates are there to wash ...? 4. There's a bathroom on this floor if you would like to wash ... before dinner. 5. You look all washed ..., what's the matter? 6. It seems that I can't wash ... that ink that got onto the tablecloth. 7. Heavy rain

washed ... three important roads overnight. 8. You seem all washed ..., what's the matter? 9. How many pilots in training were washed ... in the last examination? 10. We are going to discuss this problem ... the end of the lesson. 11. Put your textbooks ... the end of the desks. 12. The audience broke ... applause. 13. The branches of the dead tree are breaking 14. The criminal had broken ... until the police came. 15. Please, stay ... us for the weekend. 16. He is always ... time for the lessons. 17. I will look ... for your arrival. 18. As soon as I look ... this mail I'll help you. 19. Jane, will you please look ... my baby while I wash 20. I am going to watch ... this football match tonight. 21. I meet my relatives ... the way ... the university. 22. Put ... your coat. It is not cold here. 23. Switch ... the light. It is dark here.

Ex. 4. Fill in suitable words.

1. I am sorry; I can not help you now. I am 2. Let's look ... these articles. 3. Bob is a very active student. He always ... in different activities. 4. How long does ... you to lay the table? 5. You will make a lot of friends if you ... in the university hostel. 6. I have a problem with my stomach. Nothing is 7. The weekdays are more ... for working mothers. 8. Students can participate in various ... if they live in the hostel. 9. I must go to My watch is not in order. 10. She likes to go to the ... to have her hair done. 11. These clothes are not washable. You should send them to 12. I must not make any mistake she will be angry with me. 13. This tailor always ... for her clients on time. 14. We have run out of food. Dad is going to the market 15. It is dark here. Please, ... the light. 16. Very quickly, she ... a number. She wanted to speak to him on the phone. 17. This boy is very naughty. If you do not ... to him you may have much trouble. 18. This fabric is very expensive. You would better give it to

Ex.5. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Men har tong badantarbiya qilaman. 2. Siz odatda uyda nonushta qilasizmi? 3. Uyquga ketishdan oldin xonani shamollatamiz. 4. Ona o'g'lini polni latta bilan

artishga undadi. 5. Odatda dadam xaridga boradi. 6. Dars tayyorlash uchun qancha vaqtning ketadi? – Ikki soat. 7. Sochlarimni tarab kiyinishim uchun yarim soat ketadi. 8. Soat sakkizda dadam paltosini va shapkasini kiyadida ishga ketadi. 9. Anna nonushtadan oldin dadasining oyoq kiyimlarini cho'tkalab qoyadi. 10. Nima qilmoqchisan? – Vanna qabul qilmoqchiman. 11. Ko'ylak tikasizmi? – Xa, lekin hozir vaqtim juda kam. 12. Singlim oyimga dasturxon tuzashga ko'maklashadi, men idishlarni yuvaman. Biz ota-onalarimizga yu ishlarida yordamlashamiz. 13. Nima qilyapsan? – Dars qilyapman. – Keyin nima qilmoqchisan? – Kir yuvmoqchiman. 14. Kiyimlaringizni o'zingiz dazmollaysizmi? – Xa, bazan shimimni singlimga dazmollataman. 15. Ularni mojarolariga aralashmang. Ualr tez-tez tortishib turishadi.

Ex. 6. Insert prepositions or post-verbal adverbs.

1. I wake seven o'clock and then it is time for me to get I like a cold bath every morning, so I put ... my dressing gown and slippers and go ... the bathroom. The water feels cold ... winter mornings, but I rub myself hard with a towel and soon I feel quite warm. 2. I brush my teeth and wash my face and go back ... the bedroom to dress. I brush my hair, take a clean handkerchief ... the drawer and go ... the dining room ... breakfast. 3. ... twelve-thirty I have a break ... lunch. I usually have it ... our refectory. Sometimes I go ... lunch and have it at the cafeteria just ... the corner. 4. Sometimes ... week-days we go ... the cinema or the theatre. But very often we just have a quiet evening ... home. We sit and talk, listen ... or watch TV. 5. Don't come ... my place tonight. I am going to tidy ... my flat. My mother-in-law is arriving ... Namangan tomorrow. She lives ... town and ... winter she comes to see us and usually stays ... us ... a fortnight. Everything must be ready ... her arrival. 6. I'm short ... time. ... my way ... the University I must buy tickets ... the cinema and call on a friend ... mine. He is leaving ... Tashkent tomorrow. 7. when you are ... your work, go to the shop and buy something ... supper. 8. Don't turn ... the radio. Father is working and we are playing ... chess. 9. My brother likes to walk ... his office ... any weather. ...

summer he likes to take ... his bike ... a run ... the country. 10. let's go ... our refectory ...the interval. 11. Do you help your mother ... the house? – Of course, I always wash ... meals and sometimes do the shopping ... week-days. 12. Don't hurry. We have an hour and a half ... concert. We have enough time to put everything ... its place.

Ex. 7. Chose the right verb: to do / to make / to have

1. I always ... my homework in the evening. 2. Where are going to? I am going to the groucer ... the sopping. 3. Don't ... any mistake this time. 4. Let's ... a rest. Mother is ... tea. 5. Everyday I get up at 6 and ... my bed at once.

Ex. 8. Answer the following questions:

1. When do you usually get up? 2. Do you always do morning exercises? 3. How long does it take you to take a shower? 4. What do you have for breakfast? 5. At what time do you go to the university? 6. How many lessons do you have at the university? 7. Do you go shopping regularly? 8. What do you usually do after supper?

Lesson Four

Grammar: Past Indefinite (Simple) Tense, Indefinite Pronouns, Articles with the names of meals

Text: Navruz at the Hostel (Meals)

STUDY THE FOLLOWING

THE PAST TENSE

I worked.	Did I work?	I did not work.
You worked.	Did you work?	You did not work.
He (she, it) worked.	Did he (she, it) work?	He (she, it) did not work.
They worked.	Did they work?	They did not work.

☼ The Past Indefinite denoted an action performed within a period of time which is already over. The time of the action may be indicated by adverbials of past time: *yesterday, the day before yesterday, a week (two months, three years...,) ago, last year (month, week...,) etc.*

The Past Indefinite Tense of the regular verbs is formed by adding **-ed** or **-d** to the Infinitive without **to**. E.g.: to open – opened, to ask – asked, to play – played, help – helped, to wash – washed.

Mind: The formation of the Past Indefinite Tense of some verbs is as follow:

1. If a verb ends in a consonant by a short stressed vowel, the consonant is doubled: to stop – **stopped**;
2. final **y** is changed into **i**: study – studied, worry – worried;
3. final **r** is doubled if it is preceded by a stressed vowel: refer – referred
4. The Past Indefinite Tense of the irregular verbs is formed by a vowel **change**, some irregular verbs remain unchanged: come – came, spend – spent, shut – shut, put – put, cut – cut

Note. – Repeated actions are often expressed by *used to + Infinitive and would + Infinitive*. *Used to* is more colloquial and *would* is more literary. E.g.: *Every summer we used to go to the country. She was rich, and used to spend a lot of money on luxury. Every year on New Year night mother would bake a cake, and father would roast a big turkey. When he was heart-broken, he would spend all days locked in his room.*

☀ Indefinite Pronouns

1) Much and little are used with uncountable nouns and demand the verb in the singular. E.g.: I have much time. He has much work.

2) Many and few are used with countable nouns and demand the verb in the plural. E.g.: I have many English books. They have many relatives.

3) **Some** is used in affirmative sentences with the meaning “birqancha”, “birnecha”, “qanchadir” and “bazi”.

Any is used in negative and interrogative sentences. E.g.: Do you have any question? Yes, I have some.

Any may be used in affirmative sentences with the meaning of “every”. E.g.: You may take any book you like. You may ask anybody you want.

Somebody, someone, something, somewhere, somehow, everywhere, everybody are used in affirmative sentences.

Anybody, anyone, anything, anywhere, anyhow are used in negative and interrogative sentences.

Nobody, nothing, no one, nowhere, and none are used in negative sentences.

E.g.: I have some photos to show you. - Do you have any photos? - I do not have any photo. - I have no photo. There is some milk in the jug. – Is there any milk in the jug? – There is not any milk in the jug. – There is no milk in the jug.

☀ Articles with the names of meals

I. No article is used before the names of meals – breakfast, lunch, dinner, supper – if these are ordinary meals of the day. E.g.: What time do you usually have dinner (breakfast, lunch, supper, tea, bread, butter, milk...)

2) If the Particular meals are meant, they usually have **the**. E.g.: The dinner we had in the party was fantastic.

3) The names of meals are used with the indefinite article if there is an **adjective** before them. E.g.: She cooked **a** very delicious supper.

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Practice the following sentences with regular and irregular verbs.

Model: She likes to dance. She liked to dance. She did not like to dance. Did she like to dance?

a) With regular verbs:

1. He lives in London. 2. The cake tastes nice. 3. She cooks supper. 4. He bakes tasty cakes. 5. Tom boils eggs. 6. Linda prepares supper. 7. Father fries fish. 8. Mother roasts potatoes. 9. Alex broils maize for us. 10. Barbara peels bananas. 11. Eliza milks the cows. 12. Brian likes his coffee rather sweet. 13. I indulge in chocolate. 14. We prefer mutton to beef. 15. Marry stews porridge. 16. She invites her friends for her birthday party. 17. Mrs. Linda cooks delicious meals.

b) With irregular verbs:

1. She comes on time. 2. Tommy eats ice-cream. 3. He drinks alcohol. 4. Bob makes perfect beer. 5. We have breakfast at home. 6. They grow vegetables. 7. The cheese smells wonderful. 8. The cook cut carrots with knife. 9. She wears lovely dress. 10. These children always go hungry. 11. He is hungry. 12. I am thirsty. 13. They buy pork. 14. Henry stews in his own gravy. 15. She reads much. 16. He leaves the message on the table. 17. The students eat hotdog or hamburgers during the interval.

Ex.2. Put the verbs in brackets into the Past Indefinite, the Present Indefinite or Present Continuous Tense.

Model: 1. We (see) them two hours ago. → We saw them two hours ago.

2. She usually (drink) milk with sugar. → She usually drinks milk with sugar.

1. Mr. Brown (go) to New York last year. 2. Her son (like) candy. 3. Mrs. Green (bake) tasty cake for the party yesterday. 4. My granny (drink) much tea for breakfast. 5. Mr. White (like) his tea rather strong. 6. My father-in-law (prefer) over fried steak. 7. Last weekend my uncle (broil) a few steaks for us. 8. She is on a diet now. She (not eat) much bread. 9. I (be hungry) to death. Do you have anything to eat, Mom? 10. Let's (roast) for dinner. Father likes roast turkey. 11. Droopy (indulge) in fish. 12. I have a terrible headache. I (drink) much vodka at the party yesterday. 13. My mother lays the table, and sister (cook) soup. 14. Turn off the gas, the milk (bail) over. 15. Where is Margaret? – She (stew) porridge in the kitchen. 16. Let's drink something. I (be thirsty). 17. We (have) dinner at the restaurant yesterday.

Ex. 3. Fill in the blanks with the correct pronouns: *somebody, someone, something, somewhere, somehow, somewhere, everywhere, anybody, anyone, anything, anywhere, anyhow, nobody, nothing, no one, nowhere, and none*

1. I have ... for Mr. Brown. 2. There not ... in that room. 3. Does ... come here on Sundays? 4. Oh! It smells good. Is cooking meat soup in the kitchen? 5. I ma hungry. Please fetch me ... to eat. 6. He was ill and ate ... for supper. 7. Jane is sick again: ... she eats will stay down. 8. Did you eat ... ? – No, I ate – Let's go ... to dine. 9. Have a look, is there ... in the fridge to drink? - Oh, there is here. I think ... has drunk dry. 10. Is ... coming today? – Yes, I am going to have a birthday party. 11. Don't go ... tonight. We are having ... guests. 12. I invited my friends to diner, but ... came. 13. Please, help me ... ,I do not know what to do. 14. Pass me ... bread, please. 15. You may eat ... you want. 16. Look, ... is coming. Do you know him? I am sorry I do not know ... here. I am a newcomer. 17. Let's go ... for the weekend. 18. Jane I don't see my pipe. I looked ... , but couldn't find. - It must be ... here. Oh, here it is. 19. Are you eating in tonight or going ...? - No, we have ...to eat at home today. We are going ... to eat out. 20. There is ... wrong with my car. It won't start. - Let's call ... to drive us to the hotel.

Ex. 4. Translate into English.

1. Biz odatda uyda nonushta qilamiz. 2. Jeyning xolasi mazali tort plshirdi. 3. Keling biror yerga boramiz. 4. Bobning turmush o'rtog'i pazanda. 5. Xolam acchliq choyni ma'qul ko'radi. 6. O'tgan yakshanba buvimnikiga bordik. Dadam kurka dudladi. Oyim somsa (pie) yopdi. 7. Kimdir oshxonada baliq qovuryapti. 8. Kecha opam sabzavotli sho'rva pishirdi. Men kartoshka archidim. 9. Chanqadingizmi? – Ha, albatta. – Choy ichasizmi? – Yo'q, menga so'dali ichimlik ma'qul. 10. Biror nima yeysizmi? Yoq, rahmat qornim to'q. 11. Kecha hamma qarindoshlar biznikiga kelishdi. Turmush o'rtog'im non yopdi. Men xo'roz so'ydim. Ukam baliq qovurdi. Biz mazza qildik. 12. Minni shrinliklardan o'zini tiyolmasdi.

NAVRUZ AT THE HOSTEL

I still **remember** my student life in our University hostel. When I was a student I lived in the University hostel and we had a lot of extracurricular activities, especially in spring. There were many other students from different faculties in the hostel. Every year all students would **come together** to celebrate spring holiday Navruz. I don't forget the party we had on that day.

We worked four days to prepare for the holiday. The girls cleaned every part of the hostel, and **got all extra rooms ready** for the guests. The boys **cut extra wood** for all the cooking, and went to the market to buy **food like sugar, flour, rice, butter, vegetables, fruits** and different **soda drinks**. We all washed our "Sunday best" clothes and ironed them **accurately**. The butcher killed a big sheep and **chopped** the meat into little bits. Our teachers also helped us. They **peeled** the carrots and **sliced** them for our festive meal "palow". Some students brought **dairy products, jam, dryings** and many, many other things to put on the table.

On that Navruz morning the girls got up early to begin cooking. They **stuffed** a big turkey with **bread** and **onions** and then put it into the **stove**. Somebody brought pies and spring flowers for the center of the table. The **pies** **smelt** so **delicious** that everybody **tasted** a piece. Some students **fetches candles**

and cookies from the **pastry shop**. We ate different meals and tasted wine for **toast**. There were lots of singing and dancing. All this time our dean sat on the chair and watched the activity. We enjoyed much!

DIALOGS

Waiter: Are you ready to order, sir?

Ralph: Yes. I'll have tomato soup, roast beef, mashed potatoes, and peas.

Waiter: That's tomato soup...roast beef ... mashed potatoes ... and peas. How do you want the beef – rare, medium, or well-done?

Ralph: Well-done, please.

Waiter: Anything to drink?

Ralph: Hmmm ... just water. I'll have coffee with my dessert.

Mrs. Innes: Oh, there you are. Why are you late?

Ellen: Sorry, Mummy, but I ran across Susan and we had a chat.

Mrs. Innes: Let's get supper ready, I want to be finished quickly tonight.

Mike: Hello, everybody. What are we having for supper?

Mrs. Innes: We are having fish.

Mike: And chips?

Mrs. Innes: I am afraid I haven't time. Just boiled potatoes and lettuce.

Mike: Oh, Mum. Let's have chips.

Mrs. Innes: I said I have not time, didn't I?

Ellen: I'll do the chips if you like.

Mrs. Innes: Oh, all right, but get on with it. And Mike, you'd better set the table, will you?

Mike: O.K., Mum.

Mr. Innes: Pass me the tomato sauce, will you, Mike?

Mike: Here you are, Dad.

Mr. Innes: Thanks.

Mrs. Innes: Another piece of fish, Julian?

- Mr. Innes: No, thank you, my dear, I've had enough.
- Mrs. Innes: And you Mike?
- Mike: Yes, please a small one and another helping of chips if I may.
- Mrs. Innes: Yes, of course. There is plenty left. Help yourself to some lettuce, Ellen, it is good for you.
- Ellen: No, thank you, Mummy; you gave me such a large helping.
- Mrs. Innes: A bit of cheese, then?
- Ellen: Yes, please, and I could do with a piece of that nice brown bread.
- Mrs. Innes: Here you are dear, help yourself, and Mike, pass me the butter, please.

VOCABULARY NOTES

come together [kʌm tə'gəðə]– yig'ilmoq, jamul-jam bo'lmoq. E.g.: All relatives come together for New Year Party.

get smth. ready [redi]- tayyorlab qo'ymoq, taht qilib qo'ymoq, hozirlab qo'ymoq..., e.g.: They got the car ready for the picnic.

food *n.* [fu:d]– taom, egulik, oziq-ovqat. to cook, prepare food — ovqat pishirmoq, to heat food, to reheat food — ovqat isitmoq, to eat food — ovqat emoq, to swallow food — ovqatni yutmoq, appetizing, delicious, tasty food — ishtaha ochadigan, mazali, totli taom, exotic food — ekzotik taom, fine food — ajoyib taom, heavy food — og'ir taom, light food — engil taom, nourishing food — sog'lomlashtiradigan taom, plain food, simple food — oddiy taom, rich food — yog'li taom, spicy food — o'tkir taom, frozen food — muzlatilgan taom, gourmet food — mazaho'rlar uchun ovqat food value — ozuqaviyligi

sugar *n.* [ˈʃʊgə] – shakar, granulated sugar – qumoqlangan shakar, lump of sugar; to sugar – shakar sepmoq

flour *n.* [ˈflaʊə] – un, to flour – tuymoq, yanchib unini chiqarmoq. E.g.: The mill can flour two hundred barrels a day.

rice *n.* [raɪs] – guruch, to mill rice – guruch oqlamoq (tuymoq)

butter *n.* [ˈbʌtə] – saryog', to spread butter o bread – nonga saryog' surtmoq

vegetable *n.* [ˈvedʒɪtəbl̩] – sabzavot, to grow vegetables – sabzavot yetishtirmoq

fruit *n.* [fru:t]– meva; canned fruit , tinned fruit — konservalangan meva, citrus fruit, dried fruit, fresh fruit, frozen fruit, luscious fruit, ripe fruit, tropical fruit, unripe fruit, fruit tree

soda drink – so’dali ichimlik

accurately *adv.* [ækjʊrətli]– aniq, bexato

chop *n. / v.* [tʃɒp] – kuchli zarba, chopmoq, e.g.: The tree is too big, you’ll have to chop back some of the branches.

peel *v.* [pi:l] – archimoq, shilmoq (postlogini) to peel an orange, to peel the label off the can, the wall-paper is peeling — gulqog’oz shilinib tushyapti, his face is peeling — uni yuzi tulayapti

slice *v.* [slais] – torg’amoq, bo’laklarga bo’lmoq, bo’lak, kesim e.g.: First slice all the fruit up, then add the ice cream.

dairy products [deəri prɒdʌkts]– sut maxsulotlari (tez ayniydigan)

jam *n. / v.* [dʒæm] – murabbo, to spread jam (on bread), apricot jam / grape jam / peach jam plum jam / red raspberry jam / strawberry jam

qismoq, ezg’ilamoq, siqib suvini chiqarmoq e.g. He jammed everything into one suitcase.

dryings – quritilgan mevalar, qoqi, turshak

stuff *n. / v.* [stʌf] – tarkib; teachers’ stuff, to’ldirmoq e.g.: She stuffed the bottle with fruits.

bread *n.* [bred] – non, to bake bread, to toast bread, to break bread with, fresh bread, corn bread, leavened bread, rye bread, sliced bread, unleavened bread, wheat bread, white bread, piece of bread, slice of bread, black bread, loaf of bread, brown bread, to take the bread out of smb.’s mouth, Syn: food , fare •• all bread is not baked in one oven, to eat smb.’s bread and salt, to break bread with smb.

onion *n.* [ˈʌnjən] – piyoz

stove – pechka, - coal stove - gas stove - kerosene stove - paraffin stove - kitchen stove - oil stove 2) issiqxona Syn: hothouse, greenhouse, kiln, stove plant — issiqxona o’simligi

roast *n. / v.* [rəʊst] - a) qovurdoq, kabob, ochiq olovda pishirmoq; **chuck roast, lamb roast, pork roast, pot roast, rib roast, veal roast, roast beef** The meat is roasting in the oven. Let's make a fire to roast the lamb. to roast a potato in ashes — cho'g'da kartoshka pishirmoq Syn: grill, bake, barbecue, broil, heat

smell (smelt) *n. / v.* [smel] – hid, hidlamoq, ifor..., bad smell, slight smell, rank smell, strong smell, sweet smell...,

i.g.: The rose smells sweet.

delicious *adj.* [di'liʃəs] – totli, mazali Syn: tasty, pleasant, lovely..., e.g.: The pudding tasted delicious.

taste *n. v.* [teɪst]- ta'm, maza; tatib ko'rmoq E.g.: The fruit left a pleasant taste in my mouth. bitter taste, mild taste, nice taste, pleasant taste, sweet taste, sour taste, strong taste..., Syn: flavor, flavour, experience E.g.: The spaghetti tasted so bitter that I couldn't eat a bite.

fetch *v.* [fetʃ]- olib kelmoq, keltirmoq, undamoq Ser, will you fetch me a bottle of beer please.

candy *n.* ['kændi] – qant, shirinlik lollipop, fruit-drop, chocolate candy, ...

cookie *n.* ['kuki] – pechennie, suhari

pastry shop – konditer dokoni

toast *n. / v.* [təʊst] – qizdirmoq e.g. Toast a slice of bread brown on both sides. to drink a toast to smb – kimningdir sog'lig'i uchun ichmoq, to give/propose a toast to smb. — kimningdir sharafiga to'st aytmoq

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

Meals: breakfast, lunch, dinner, supper; first (second) course, dessert; for the first (second) course, dessert, soup, eggs, sandwich, hotdog, hamburger, porridge, honey...,

Dishes: chinaware (plate, cup, saucer, tea-pot), silverware (fork, spoon, knife, tea-spoon), glass wear, cookware (kettle, pot, frying pan, saucepan...,)

Kitchen appliances: refrigerator, mixer, juice extractor (squeezer), mincer, microwave oven...,

Meat: pork, mutton, lamb, sausage, bacon, cutlet, beef, meatballs, rib, veal, fat, fillet, steak, liver, fish, herring, salmon, caviar

Poultry: chicken, goose, turkey, duck....,

EXAMPLES CUT OF MEAT



Bakery goods: bread, cake, cookies, biscuits, pie, pudding, spaghetti, pastry, pizza....,

Dairy products: cheese, milk, butter, cream, sour cream, ice-cream

Ingredients: salt, water, flour, sugar, oil, mustard, vinegar, spice

Vegetables: tomato, potato, carrot, onion, garlic, cabbage, cucumber, beets (qizilcha), pumpkin, radish, turnip, peas, lettuce, strawberry, raspberry, egg(-)plant (baqlajon), pepper....,

Fruits: apple, apricot, almond, banana, berry, cherry, grape, grapefruit, nut, orange, pear, peach, plum, tangerine, pomegranate, fig (anjir), date-palm....,

Beverage: alcoholic beverage, carbonated beverage, intoxicating beverage, non-alcoholic beverage, vodka, wine, champagne, beer, ale, spirit, alcohol, whisk(e)y, brandy, cognac, soda drinks: lemonade, fanta, pepsi, coke, kvass, juice, iced tea, milk shake, ...,

Eating places: restaurant, café, cafeteria, canteen, snack bar, coffee bar, takeaway, fast-food restaurant (elegant, first-class) restaurant, beer (ale) house,

Verbs: to have (eat, drink), to dine, to cook, to fry, to boil, to roast, to taste, to prefer, to lay (set) the table, to sit down to table, to be (sit) at table, to clear the

table (to take away the dirty dishes); Help your self to (smth., some food); have some more; No more, thank you! Would you like...? How do you like your coffee? to be addicted to, to order a meal, to indulge in, to smoke

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Answer the questions with a few words. You don't need to write complete sentences.

1. What are two common breakfast beverages?
2. What do you eat for lunch?
3. Which meal is bigger – dinner or supper?
4. Where do you go to eat hot dogs, hamburgers, or peroshkies?
5. Which meal do you usually eat at home?
6. What do you drink tea from?
7. What do usually eat for supper?
8. Where do you usually have lunch?
9. What is silverware (chinaware)?
10. What poultry do Uzbek people eat?

Ex.2. Complete these sentences with some of the key vocabulary words. Make the nouns plural if necessary, and put each verb into the correct tense and form.

1. People usually ... at home before they go out.
2. I usually eat ... for lunch.
3. Some people are addicted to ..., and drink a lot of alcohol.
4. My mother is the best cook. She ... perfect pies.
5. Would you like some tea? – No, thank you. I am not
6. Look, there is a very good pastry shop over there. Let's buy some ... for the party.
7. If shoppers want to know what is in a particular food, they can read the list of ... on the box, package, jar, or can.
8. Pass me ..., please. I like my soup rather bitter.
9. Shall I ... you some beer, ser? - No, thanks, that's enough.
10. Last Sunday we went to the picnic, and ... potatoes in ashes.
11. Students always have lunch at on weekdays.
12. It smells so nice! Let's ... this beefsteak.
13. Shall I ... some jam on your bread, son? – Yes, I would love to.
14. We got everything ready for supper. My sister ... the vegetables and I ... the table.
15. Milk, cream,

sour cream, cheese, and butter are 16. Don't drink too much ..., it is risky for your health.

Ex.3. The underlined words are general categories. Draw a line through the word that doesn't belong in the category.

- | | | | | |
|--------------------------|----------|------------|------------|-----------|
| 1. <u>Poultry</u> | chicken | duck | turkey | fish |
| 2. <u>Beverages</u> | juice | water | milk shake | apple |
| 3. <u>Dairy products</u> | cheese | milk | candy | butter |
| 4. <u>Desserts</u> | eggs | pie | pudding | ice cream |
| 5. <u>Bakery goods</u> | bread | candy | cake | cookies |
| 6. <u>Meat</u> | chop | caviar | pork | rib |
| 7. <u>Silverware</u> | oven | fork | knife | spoon |
| 8. <u>Chinaware</u> | cup | teapot | mincer | plate |
| 9. <u>Fruits</u> | peach | plum | pork | pear |
| 10. <u>Vegetables</u> | cucumber | strawberry | turnip | beet |

Ex.4. Translate into English.

1. O'tgan yakshanba ular hammasi kechki ovqatga yig'ilishdi. Martin xonim kurka dimladi, turmush o'rtog'i cabzi archidi, piyoz to'rg'adi, farzandlari sto'l bezatishdi. 2. Oylangizda kim xarid qiladi? – Odatda dadam, lekin o'tgan dam olish kuni dadam og'ayniari bilan piknikka bordi. Oyim xarid qildi. U un, saryog', shakar, ziravorlar va sabzavotlar sotib oldi. 3. Kofengiz qanday bo'lsin? -Men achchiq kofeni afzal ko'raman. 4. Har doim uyda nonushta qilasizmi? Xa, lekin ba'zan vaqtim tig'iz bo'ladi. Ko'chada tamaddi qilaman. 5. Andrey oziq-ovqatimiz tugapdi (have run out of), xaridga borib kelasizmi? – Nima? Kecha do'kondan qo'y go'shti, un, shakar, tuz, pishloq olib kelgandimku. – Ha, lekin kartoshka, sabzi, piyoz, va sarimsoqpiyoz olishni unutibsiz. 6. Juda ochiqdim, biror yerda tamaddi qilamizmi? – Qayerga boramiz? – Universitetimizni oldida yaxshi oshxona bor. 7. O'tgan kuni barga bordik. Daniyel pivo ichmadi. U odatda viski

Ichudi. 8. Kecha biror yerga bordingmi? – Xa, dadam bilan baqqollik do'koniga bordim, uyga kelayotib qassobxonada mol go'shti va qo'y yog'i oldik, keyin konditer do'konidan pecheni va to'rt oldik. 9. Oyim zo'r pazanda. U somsa yopadi, kurkani piyoz va ziravorlar bilan to'ldirib dimlashni yaxshi ko'radilar.. 10. O'tgan yoz tatilda biz maysazorga bordik. Biz cho'g'da kartoshka pishirdik, tog'am pivo olib keldilar, xolam meva-chevalar keltirdi, dadam shashlik pishirdilar. Biz mazza qildik!

Ex.5. Read the following text and discuss in groups.

Death by Consumption

Nutritionists say that many Americans are obese, because they eat too much unhealthy fat, salt, and sugar. The problem is that, many Americans eat outdoors to save time, and they do very little physical work. Alcoholic beverages, cigarettes, and illegal drugs (heroin, marijuana, cocaine...) are also main cause to the problem. Here are some facts for instance:

- *29% of American adults smoke;*
- *12% of Americans (among the 18-25 age groups) are addicted to marijuana;*

- *5.4% of Americans are heavy drinkers:*

The government tries to control the situation, but unfortunately the tobacco and alcoholic beverages industry have a lot of political power. The owners of tobacco plantations and the factories of alcoholic beverages spend millions of dollars to support the political parties during the election time.

Heavy drinkers and narcotics are more dangerous for the society. Those who are addicted to alcohol and illegal drugs are more likely to commit a crime. Drunk driving causes many traffic accidents and tragedy for many families. Illegal drugs damage the body and also lead to commit a crime. Many people who are addicted to cocaine or heroin are then forced to commit crimes in order to get enough money to buy these illegal (and therefore expensive) drugs. Narcotic traders fetch you these drugs free of charge until you are addicted, and then ...

In dealing with these health problems – obesity, alcoholism, cigarette smoking, and drug addiction- Americans often turn to support groups of fellow sufferers.

Ex. 6. Translate the text into your native language and try to retell it.

Cookout

The Fraser, Jerry and Alice, had a cookout on their patio last Saturday. They invited a number of friends for an evening of good food and conversation. Jerry built the outdoor barbecue pit himself and Alice selected the patio furniture. That evening Jerry was chief. He cooked the hamburgers for the guests. Alice set the table and put the other food in place. She made salad, baked beans, potato chips and cake. To drink she prepared coffee, tea, and soft drinks. As Jerry said: "It was a feast fit for a king!"

Ex. 7. Questions for discussion:

1. Should cigarettes be made illegal? Or should people have the freedom to buy and use this product if they want to?
2. Why do Uzbek people eat big portion of meal in the evening?
3. Do you think the typical Uzbek diet is healthy? Why or why not?
4. What should the government do to prevent drunk driving and illegal drugs trading?

Lesson Five

Grammar: Future Indefinite Tense
Adverbial clause of Time and Condition
Articles with Geographical Names

Text: Seasons and Weather

STUDY THE FOLLOWING

I shall work. (I'll work)	We shall work. (We'll work.)
You will work. (You'll work)	You will work. (You'll work.)
He (she, it) will work. (He'll work.)	They will work. (They'll work.)

Shall I work?	Shall we work?
Will you work?	Will you work?
Will he (she, it) work?	Will they work?

I shall not work. (I shan't work.)	We shall not work. (We shan't work.)
You will not work. (You won't work.)	You will not work. (You won't work.)
He (she, it) will not work. (He won't work.)	They will not work. (They won't work.)

d) ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF TIME AND CONDITION

I	shall	swim in the river go to the country go for a walk work in the garden play football have dinner in the garden	if when	it is hot. (?) the weather is fine. (?) Bob comes. (?) it doesn't rain. (?) the sun shines . (?)
We	(shall not)			
He (She) You They	will (will not)			
Shall	I we			
Will	he (she) you they			

The future indefinite Tense is used to denote actions or facts in the future. E.g.: He will come tomorrow. (the day after tomorrow, next week, next month, next year, in two days, in a year, ...)

We often use “will” in these situations:

Offering to do something:

- You look very tired. I'll help you.
- I need this book. O.K, I'll lend you.

Agreeing or refusing to do something:

- The car won't start.
- Ivan proposed marriage to Susan but she won't.

Promising to do something:

I promise, I'll come back very soon. / I'll phone you as soon as I arrive.

Asking someone to do something.

Will you fetch me that book, please? / Will you please keep silent?

We use “shall” to ask permission. E.g. Shall I close the window? Shall I help you?

In some cases we use “to be going to” or The Present Continuous Tense instead of Future Indefinite Tense.

1. When we speak about the action that we have decided before the time of speaking. E.g.: -Shall we go to the cinema tonight? No, I'm sorry. I am going to stay at home.

We are having a party tonight. Will you join us, Tom? I am sorry I can not. I am leaving for Tashkent tomorrow.

2. After temporal conjunctions **when, until, before, after, as soon as, while, till** and **if** no future is used. It is substituted by a Present Tense. E.g.: I shall stay here until you come. We shall go out as soon as it stops raining. If you wish I'll show you round the University campus.

Articles with Geographical Names

You have to be careful about the use of 'the' with features of the environment.

	use with the?	examples
countries	NO	France
countries which are in a plural form	YES	The USA
countries when limited by time	YES	The Spain of today
individual mountains	NO	Mount Everest
mountains in the Bernese Oberland	YES	The Jungfrau
mountain chains	YES	The Rockies
islands	NO	Sicily
groups of islands	YES	The West Indies
rivers	YES	The Volga
oceans	YES	The Pacific
seas	YES	The Mediterranean
gulfs, bays and straits	YES	The Gulf of Mexico
lakes	NO	Lake Erie
current	YES	The Gulf Stream
countries which contains preposition of or the words Union, State(s), Republic, Kingdom:	YES	The USA, the UK, The Republic of Uzbekistan

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Put the verbs in brackets in the Future Indefinite Tense. Practice the sentences orally.

Model: I (send) him this book next week. → I'll send him this book next week.

1. I (know) the result in a week.
2. He (arrive) in Tashkent tonight.
3. The delegation (visit) to our faculty in a week.
4. You (have) time to help me tomorrow?
5. I (give) you the article as soon as I (read) it.
6. Look the sky is cloudy. It (rain) soon.
7. They (have) winter holiday in a week.
8. there was no

blossom this spring. Apples (be) scarce. 9. The days are getting warmer and warmer. The Farmers (plough) the field in a day. 10. There is something wrong with my car. It (not start). 11. I (help) you? – No, thank you. I (translate) the article myself. 12. You (need) a visa if you are going to England. 13. I (stop) here for a moment to get some petrol. 14. I am cold. I (not stay) here another minute. 15. I (begin) reading? I (open) the window? I (help) you? I (switch off) the radio? 16. We (get) the ticket before twelve o'clock and (go) straight home. 17. Mother (come) home early and (ring) you up. 18. We (drive) to the mountains as soon as father (repair) the car.

Ex. 2. Use “to be going to” in the following sentences.

Model: I'll see you tomorrow. → I am going to see you tomorrow.

1. We shall have a holiday in winter. 2. It will snow much in this month. 3. The trees will be in blossom in spring. 4. The children will sledge if it snows much. 5. The winter is coming. Everything will be frozen very soon. 6. We shall have a summer holiday in two weeks. 7. Will you spend your summer holiday on the farm? 8. It is very hot today. I shall go to the pool. 9. What will you buy for your children? – I shall buy mittens and scarves for them. 10. The icicles will melt in a day or so. 11. It will take several hours for the fog to lift. 12. The sun is shining so brightly that the farmers will start gardening immediately. 13. The days are very hot. The fruits will be ripen soon. 14. The spring is near. The snowdrops will appear in the mountains. 15. It is very hot today. I shall wear T-shirt and shorts. 16. The sky is bright today. We shall spend the night outdoors.

Ex. 3. Use the correct form of the verb in the adverbial clauses of time and condition.

1. If you (translate) this article into Uzbek, I shall use it in my report. 2. If she (be) in Tashkent Now she will meet you. 3. If you (not hurry) you will miss the train. 4. If it (rain) we shall stay at home. 5. You will lay the table as soon as I (wash) the dishes. 6. They will go to the country as soon as fog (lift). 7. Don't forget to pay

for the dinner before you (leave) the canteen. 8. We shall drive to picnic **as soon as** the sun (rise). 9. What are you going to do after you (finish) the work? 10. **Were** will you go when it (stop) raining? 11. The farmers will plough the fields **after they** (crop) the harvest. 12. I shall not have dinner before father (come).

Ex. 4. Read the sentences with geographical names aloud, filling in the articles where necessary.

1. ... Elbrus is the highest peak of ... Caucasian Mountains. 2. ... Ands is the longest mountains range in the world. 3. ... Crimea is surrounded by ... Black sea. 4. ... Amudarya River is longer then ... Sirdarya River. 5. ... Nil is the longest river all over the world. 6. We are going to ... South. 7. She was born in ... Western Europe. 8. ... United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland is an island country. 9. ... People's Republic of China is the most densely populated country. 10. Where is ... Mediterranean Sea? 11. ... Aral Sea is in danger now. 12. ... Mount Everest is the highest mountain in the world. 13. ... England imports wool from ... Australia, timber from ... Sweden and Finland, cotton and petroleum from ... United States. Wine and fruit are imported from ... France, Italy, Spain; daily products from ... Denmark and Holland. 14. They usually go to ... Crimea for the weekend. 15. ... Republic of Uzbekistan is located in the very center of ... Central Asia. 16. ... Baikal is the largest lake on ... Earth.

Ex. 5. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Biz ertaga Toshkentga ketyapmiz. U yerda bir hafta qolamiz. 2. Hafta so'ngida nima qilmoqchisiz? – Agar ob-havo yaxshi bo'lsa shahar tashqarisiga chiqmoqchimiz. 3. Kelasi hafta dadam Germaniyadan qaytadi. U yerda qishda havo juda sovuq bo'ladi. 4. Bu yerda tuman qalin. Tuman tarqashini kutaylik. 5. Xolam kelsa bolalar bilan chana uchamiz. 6. Kelasi oy dadam tatil oladilar. Ular bizni toqqa olib bormoqchilar. Biz chana uchamiz, qorbo'ron o'ynaymiz, qorbobo yasaymiz. Yangi yilni tog'da kutmoqchimiz. 7. Akam kelishi bilanoq dasturxon yozamiz. 8. Biz Navrozda maysazorga (picnic) chiqmoqchimiz. Dadam shashlik

pishirmoqchi, oyim somsa yopmoqchi. 9. Kiyimlarni dazmolaganimdan so'ng senga yordamlashaman. 10. Chiroqni yoqaymi? Xa, bu yer ancha qorong'u. 11. Shakarni uzatib yuborasizmi, iltimos? Men kofeni shirin ichaman. 12. Qayerda o'bed qilmoqchisiz? – O'bedga vaqtim bo'lmaydi deb qo'rqaman. Bugun juda bandman.

Ex. 6. Change the following sentences into sentences of real condition.

Model: It will rain today, so we shall not go out. → If it rains today, we shall not go out.

1. It will freeze today, so we shall not go skiing. 2. "Don't move or the needle will hurt you," said the doctor. 3. "The wind will change and there will be a snow," the old man said. 4. He will do morning exercises and will feel much better. 5. We shall go to the South this summer and get plenty of sunshine. 6. You wish to enjoy a good concert of modern music, so go to the Conservatoire next week.

SEASONS AND WEATHER

There are four seasons in a year. These are: winter, spring, summer, and autumn (fall). Every season has a charm of its own. Winter months are: December, January, and February. The days are short and the nights are cold and frosty. The frost sparkles on the bushes, and there are shiny icicles under the roofs. Winter days are full of joy, especially for children. They make snowman, sledge, skate, and play snowballs.



Supermarkets and shops are full of customers who are going to buy food and presents for New Year party. Sometimes fog is so thick that the drivers can hardly see the road. All family members come together to see the New Year in. Children get presents from their parents. People wear warm clothes such as sweaters, coats, overcoats, gloves, mittens, and high-boots. The days become unpleasant when thaw begins.

After few days spring will come. The nature will awaken from winter sleep. The days will get warmer and longer. Many baby animals will **appear**. Snowdrops, violets, and daffodils will **bloom** out. The snow will **melt** and the snow-water will run in **tiny streams** down the river. The farmers will **plow** the field. The orchards will **be in blossom**. Colorful clothes will **be in fashion**. The young men will begin to think about love, in the spring!



DIALOG

Kate: Brrrr! I am cold. I **suppose** it will be worm today.

Bob: Yeah, I think so, too. That's what the weatherman said. It is 25 **degrees** above zero.

Kate: But look up. The dark clouds are **floating** in the sky. It is going to rain.

Bob: I fear a **thunderstorm** is coming. Let's go inside.

Kate: O.K. It's not fun standing out **here**. Oh, what a **tremendous** clap of thunder!

Bob: What shall we do then?

Kate: We shall wait till the sky clears.

VOCABULARY NOTES

cold *adj* [kəʊld] 1) sovuq, e.g. It is cold outside today. a cold stare — sovuq nigoh, He got a cold reception. — Uni sovuq kutib olishdi. cold facts — aniq faktlar, cold reality — obektiv voqelik, They died of the cold. — Ular sovuqdan o'lishdi. 2) shamollash, catch (take) cold— shamollab qolmoqcold; Syn: chill

frost *n* [frost] 1) izginin, qirov, 2) *v* qirov bosib qolmoq; 3) **frosty** qirovli, qirovlaqan

sparkle *v* ['spɑ:kl] yaltiramoq; Syn: **shine** e.g. Her diamonds sparkled in the bright light. Her eyes sparkled with excitement.

bush *n*[buʃ] buta, butazor

shiny *adj* [ʃaɪni] yaltiroq, charaqlagan, e.g. He looked at me with shiny eyes.

icicle *n* [aɪsɪkl] sumalak

sledge *n. / v.* [sledʒ] chana, chana uchmoq

skate *n. / v.* [skeɪt] konki, konki uchmoq

fog *n.* [fɒɡ] tuman; **a thick (heavy) fog** qalin tuman; fog clears, lets up, lifts — tuman tarqaydi, e.g. It took several hours for the fog to lift. — Tuman bir necha soatdan keyin tarqadi.

fog *v.* tuman qoplamoq, e.g. The airport was fogged in.

hardly *adj.* [hɑːdli] zo'rg'a, arang, qiyinchilik bilan, e.g. I hardly ran away.

see the New Year in - yangi yilni kutib olmoq

thaw *n.* [θɔː] erish davri, erimoq, muzdan tushmoq, bo'shashmoq

appear *v.* [ə'pɪə] - 1) ko'rinmoq; paydo bo'lmoq, eg. Suddenly a face appeared at the window. He appeared a few minutes before the end of the party. 2) to appear sad (ill, strange, satisfied, etc.) — hafa ko'rinmoq (kasal, g'alati, qoniqqan va.h.) 3) sahnaga chiqmoq The famous actor is now appearing at the Grand Theatre. - appear in a certain character 4) sudga chiqmoq. She appeared against John in court. The two thieves will appear at the court tomorrow morning.

appear before a judge – sud qarshisiga chiqmoq

appear for – sudda kimningdir himoyachisi sifatida qatnashmoq

appear for the prosecution – ayibni yoqlab chiqmoq (qoralovchi)

appear for the defendant – sudda oqlovchi bo'lib qatnashmoq

appear to defend – ayiblanuvchini himoyachisi sifatida sudda qatnashmoq

5) ta'surot qolditmoq, tuyulmoq, e.g. It appears (to me) that they will not come. It appears that they are relatives.

• Syn: seem, prove, happen, turn out

• Ant: disappear

bloom *n.* [blu:m]– g'uncha, kurtak, gullamoq, e.g. Life bloomed up with happiness and hope.

melt v. [melt] erimoq, e.g. The sugar melted in the tea. Syn: dissolve, disintegrate
yo'q bo'lib ketmoq, yumshamoq, e.g. Her anger melted at his kind words. Syn:
dissolve, liquefy, thaw

tiny adj. ['taɪnɪ] – mitti, jajji, juda kichik

stream n. [stri:m] ariq, soy, jilg'a, oqim

plow (plough) n. [plau] omoch, v omochlamoq, yer haydamoq

be in blossom - gullamoq

be in fashion - mo'da bo'lmoq

suppose v. [sə'pəuz] – fahmlamoq, o'ylamoq, tahmin qilmoq, e.g. We suppose that the situation will improve. We supposed him to be guilty. 2) Taklif ma'nosida ishlatiladi: e.g. suppose we go to the cinema! — Kinoga bormaymizmi. 3) majbur bo'lmoq to be supposed: e.g. I am not supposed to wash up — idish-tovoqlarni yuvish meni majburiyatimga kirmaydi

degree n. [di'grɪ:]– daraja, ilmiy daraja, e.g. It will be 10 degrees above (below) zero tomorrow. 2) diplom first class degree — imtiyozli diplom do a degree (earn a degree, receive a degree, take one's degree) – ilmiy daraja olmoq, academic degree - advanced degree - bachelor's degree - college degree - doctoral degree - doctor's degree - graduate degree - honorary degree - master's degree - postgraduate degree

float v. [fləʊt]– suv ustida chayqalmoq, qalqimoq, harakatsiz suzmoq, e.g. Yellow leaves floated down.

thunderstorm n. ['θʌndəsto:m]– bo'ron, izg'irin

tremendous adj. [tri'mendəs]– dahshatli, qo'rqinchli, vahimali, o'ta, juda

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

Weather: (tropical, arid, humid) climate, atmosphere, temperature, sun (sunny), cloud (cloudy), wind (windy), chill (chilly), frost (frosty), fog (foggy), rain (rainy), storm (stormy) severe, warm, hot, cool, mild, wet, thaw, rainy, rainbow, lightening

Nouns: the sky, the sun, the earth, the moon, the south, the north, the east, the west, hemisphere, polar, ocean, sea, river, channel, lake, stream, continent, island, bay, gulf, creek, mountain, hill, forest, wood, valley, desert....

Winter: to blow (blew, blown), to snow (snowy), to go skating, skating-ring, to freeze (froze, frozen), to sledge, to get wet through, melt, flakes of snow, ice (icy, icicle), fog (foggy), frost (frosty), wind (windy)...

Spring: to be in blossom (to be in bloom), to fly kites, to appear, to shine brightly, to plow (plough), meadow, field, orchard, to cycle (to go cycling), to pick flowers (poppies, snowdrops, violets, berries, mushrooms), to get warmer (longer)

Summer: to boat, to swim, to bathe, to lie in the sun, to go boating, at the seaside, on the beach, on the shore, on the bank of the river, to have a holiday (vocation), to be on holiday, to go to picnic, camping...

Autumn (fall): to harvest, crop, to pick cotton, to be ripen, ripe, mellow, start schooling, academic year, umbrella, farmer, to go fishing, to fish...

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Fill in prepositions.

1. There are four seasons ... a year. 2. The ground is usually covered ... snow in winter. 3. A thick fog is spreading ... the city. 4. The frost sparkles ... the branches. 5. There is a bridge ... the river. 6. The rivers, lakes, and ponds freeze ... winter. 7. I like to be out-of-doors ... such weather. 8. I prefer to stay ... home. 9. The new wheat is just beginning to appear ... the ground. 10. It is raining. Put ... your umbrella. 11. The weather is getting warmer and warmer. The trees will be ... blossom very soon. 12. He is going to spend the summer ... the seaside. He likes to lie ... the sun. 13. The temperature is 25° ... zero today. The sun is shining brightly. 14. The average temperature is 5° ... zero in winter. 15. There will be nobody ... the beach today. The sky is cloudy. 16. We are going to see the New Year ... with our parents.

Ex. 2. Complete the sentences with some of the key vocabulary words. Make nouns plural if necessary, and put each verb into the correct tense and form.

1. Winter days are very and people wear warm clothes. 2. The frost on the branches. 3. Many baby animals in spring. 4. The sparkle under the roofs. 5. You can hardly see the road when the weather is 6. It is snowing today, and the children are in the park. 7. We shall drive to the country as soon as the lifts. 8. Poppies, violets, and daisies in spring, and spread their fresh smell all around. 9. The icicles will when the spring comes. 10. They went to a little to drink some water. 11. The temperature is very cold in winter and streams and ponds are frozen all over. 12. Look, it is going to rain. Big clouds are in the sky. 13. What a tremendous lightening! I suppose it will be a heavy tonight. 14. Put on your warm clothes or you will catch

Ex. 3. Read the topic below, try to translate into your native tongue and retell it.

Seasons

There are four seasons in a year: spring, summer, autumn and winter. March, April and May are spring months. Spring is a pleasant season. The weather gets warm; everything changes and seems to revive. The trees begin to be in blossom. Sometimes it rains, but there are no rough winds; the sun shines brightly. The grass is green and one can see a lot of flowers peeping out from it. In spring all the migratory birds return. They sing sweetly on the branches of the trees.

The summer months are June, July and August. Summer is the hottest season of the year. The days are long in summer. The longest day of the year is the 22nd of June. Some people like summer best of all. All of us enjoy summer with its cloudless sunshine, with its gardens and meadows full of flowers. There is a lot of fruit and vegetables at that time. In summer many people leave town and spend the hottest time in the country or at the seaside.

After summer autumn comes. The autumn months are September, October and November. The warm days of early autumn are called the «Golden Autumn». The «Golden Autumn» is really beautiful with its yellow, red and brown trees and

golden leaves falling down. Autumn is the season of fruit and vegetables. But the days become short and the nights are long and dark. The weather is not as good as in spring and in summer. It often rains and the air gets colder and colder.

Winter is a cold season. The winter months are December, January and February. The winter days are short and gloomy. It often snows and it freezes. Winter is a very beautiful season too. Some people like it very much. It is pleasant to walk when it is not very cold and it snows. The ground is covered with snow. The trees and the roofs are white with snow too. Winter also gives great opportunities for those who go in for winter sports.

Ex. 4. Translate into English.

1. Bugun havo juda sovuq. Issiq kiyimlaringni kiy. 2. Qor yog'yapti. Bolalar chana uchishyapti. 3. Soyaboningizni oling, nazarimda yamg'ir yog'adi. 4. Tashqariga chiqmaymizmi, qarang quyosh charaqlayapti. - Uzur, onamga uy ishlarida ko'maklashmoqchiman. 5. Qishda tomlarning tagida sumalaklar paydo bo'ladi, ariqlar muzlaydi, daraxtlarni qirov bosadi. 6. Havo ilisa shahar tashqarisiga chiqamiz. 7. Bahor kelsa dehqonlar dalada yer haydashadi, adirlarda binafsha va chuchmomalar ochiladi. 8. Yoz kunlari uzun va issiq bo'ladi. Bolalar soyda cho'milishadi, dengiz sohillarida odamlar ko'p bo'ladi. 9. Kuzda mevalar pishadi, paxta ochiladi. Dehqonlar hosil yig'ishadi. 10. Qaerga ketyapsiz? - Tashqariga, bir oz aylanib kelmoqchiman. - Uyda qolganingiz ma'qul. Menimcha tuman tushadi, yo'llar sirpanchiq. 11. Bugun 20 daraja issiq. Cho'milgani boraylik. - Yaxshi, lekin dengiz sohilida odamlar ko'p. Men daryo bo'yiga borishni ma'qul ko'raman. 12. Menga bahor havosi yoqadi. Bahorda tabiat chiroyli bo'ladi. 13. Tom, qara dadang kelyapti. - Choy damlaymi, oyi? - Ha, bugun tashqari juda sovuq, ko'fe tayyorlagin. Dadang achchiq ko'fe ichadi. 14. Osmonda qora bulutlar bor. Menimcha yomg'ir yog'adi. - Menga yomg'irli havo yoqadi. Yomg'ir tinsa havo musaffo bo'ladi. 15. Kuzda bo'g'lar fusunkor bo'ladi. Mevalar pishadi. - Lekin

menga yoz yoqadi. Quyosh charaqlab nur sochadi, yomg'ir yog'maydi, osmon tiniq bo'ladi. – To'g'ri, biroq har bir fasilning o'zgacha chiroyi bo'ladi.

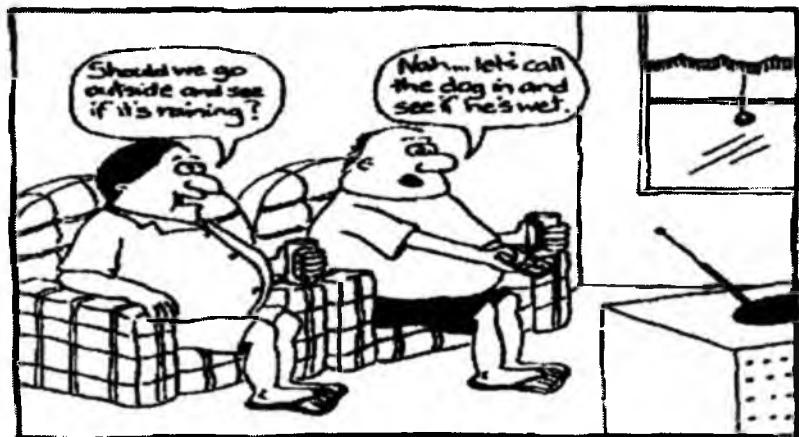
Ex.5. Translate the text into your native language.

The Big Snow

Vocabulary: hate - yomom ko'rmoq; shovel – kurak, kuramoq; move – ko'chmoq; sidewalk – yo'lak; patio – ayvon.

Harvey Schmidt hates snow. He is so tired of shoveling snow. He thinks that he will move to Florida. Yesterday, it snowed 12 inches. Today Harvey has been busy clearing snow from the sidewalk, the patio, and the driveway. There was a lot of snow on the driveway and he couldn't get his car out of garage. Now the driveway is clearing of snow. But Harvey can't rest long. His wife wants him to take her to the grocery store.

Ex. 6. Look at the picture and write an anecdote or a short composition.



TYPICAL DISCOURSE BETWEEN MEMBERS OF THE HUMAN ENERGY CONSERVATION SOCIETY.

Lesson Six

Grammar: Modal Verbs. Adjectives (Degrees of Comparison)

Text: Education in Uzbekistan

- What are the modal verbs?
- Modal verbs are doer's attitude to the action.
- What peculiarities do the modal verbs have?
- They don't have infinitive form, third person singular (s) form, they don't require "do" in the interrogative or negative forms.

CAN

Could - for the Past Tense / Will (shall) be able to for the Future Tense

Can is used to express:

1. Physical and mental ability. E.g.: He can read fast. I can't lift this luggage.
2. Possibility due to circumstance and due to existing laws. E.g.: You can get the tickets easily. You can not smoke here.
3. Surprise, and is translated into Uzbek as *nahotki*, ... *mumkinmas*. In this meaning **can** (could) +Indefinite or Perfect Indefinite is used. E.g.: Can you have written this essay? He can not have told a lie. U yolg'o gapirgan bo'lishi *mumkinmas*. She can not be waiting for us.
4. In polite requests. E.g. Could I help you? Could you give us some consultation?

MAY

Might - for the Past Tense / Will (shall) be able to for the Future Tense

May is used to express:

1. Permission and is translated into Uzbek as *mumkin*, *mumkinmi*? E.g. May I come in? May I smoke here? – Yes, you may. (No, you may not. – Yo'q bu yerda

chekish mumkin emas; No, you can not. – Yo'q bu yerda chekish ta'qiqlanadi; No, don't please. – Yoq, iltimos chekmang; No you mustn't.- Yo'q chekmaysiz.)

2. Probability and uncertainty is translated into Uzbek as *balki, bo'lishi mumkin*

E.g. He may come.

- He can come. – U balki kelar. = 50%
- He may come. – U kelishi mumkin. = 60-70%
- He must come. – U kelishi kerak. = 80-90%
- He will come. – U albatta keladi/ = 100%

3. Possibility due to circumstance. E.g. You may see him in the library.

4. Reproach (*kinoya faqat might ishlatiladi*). E.g. You might help your mother. – Onanga yordamlashsang bo'larmidi.

MUST

The modal verb **must** has two equivalents: *to have to and to be obliged to* (burch yoki qarzdorlikni ifodalaganda)

The modal verb **must** expresses:

1. Obligation, necessity (majburiyat, lozimlik). E.g. You must earn money. He must work. Must we come tomorrow? – Yes, you must. (agar lozim bo'lmasa) No, you needn't.
2. A command, an urgent request or prohibition (qat'iy buyruq yoki ta'qiqlov). E.g. You mustn't speak to a prisoner in a foreign language.
3. Probability or supposition (asosli tahmin). E.g. He must be working in his room. – Xonasida ishlayotgan bo'lishi kerak.

SHOULD and OUGHT TO

(! Should va ought to modal fellari deyarli bir hil ma'noni anglatadi.)

Should expresses advisability (maslahatni ifodalaydi) and is translated into Uzbek as kerak. E.g. You should stay at home. You are ill.

Ought to expresses obligation (burch) and something naturally expected (tabiiy) and is translated into Uzbek as kerak, lozim. E.g. He ought to know her well. She is his wife.

DEGREES OF COMPARISON

	Positive Degree	Comparative Degree	Superlative Degree
Bir bo'g'inli so'zlarda	big easy	bigger easier	the biggest the easiest
Ko'p bo'g'inli so'zlarda	difficult beautiful	more difficult more beautiful	the most difficult the most beautiful
Istesno so'zlarda	good bad many little far	better worse more less father	the best the worst the most the least the farthest

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Give negative replies to the following questions.

1. May I open the window? It is cold outside.
2. May I take your dictionary for a minute? I am also translating a text.
3. Must we copy out this text? You may do it at home.
4. May I switch on the radio? Your father is sleeping.
5. May I phone you tomorrow? I will be at my aunt's.
6. Can I use this mobile phone? It is not charged.
7. May I drive the car? You don't have a license.
8. Can I see the rector? He is busy. Come an hour later.
9. Can she be waiting for us? She doesn't like to wait.
10. Must we write the essay on this theme? You may chose the themes.
11. Must I take all these examinations? You may take some of them at the end of the next term.
12. Could I help you, sir? I can

do it my self. 13. Could you lend me this book for a week? I need it my self.

14. Must we do this exercise in written form? You may do it orally.

Ex. 2. Fill in missing modal verbs.

1. I go out? – No, please. We will have a test. 2. Youwork hard on your English. 3. you play the piano? – No, I I am not good at music. 4. Let's go for a walk. The weather is fine today. – I am sorry I not. I to look after my baby sister. 5. you help me, please? – Yes, of course. 6. Where is John? – He be at home. He is ill. 7. Students have more practice to learn best. 8. You not miss the lessons. You attend all lessons regularly. 9. Tomorrow we shall have a final test. I revise some grammar rules. 10. Must I wash up now? No, you not. You wash the dishes after you watch the match. 11. You have ironed the clothes yourself. Your mother is old. 12. You not learn by heart this theory. Anyway, you will forget it soon. Students learn best by practice. 13. You not have baked this pudding. You are not so good at cooking, I know. 14. I speak to the dean, please. – I am sorry, you not. He is receiving the teachers. 15. Ask this question from Alice. She know the answer. She is the best student of our faculty. 16. They not be married. Their parents are against their marriage.

Ex. 3. Translate into English.

1. Tashqariga chiqsam maylimi? – Yo'q, chiqmaysan, shamollab qolasan. 2. Ovqatlanamizmi? - Ozgina kutaylik, dadang kelishi kerak. 3. Xonada kimdir bo'lsa kerak, chiroq yoniq. 4. Darslarga kech qolmasligimiz kerak. 5. Oyim vannada kir yuvyaptilar shekilli. Telefonga hech kim javob bermayapti. 6. Darslaringni bajarishing kerak, bo'lmasa ko'chaga chiqmaysan. 7. Shu ishni bugun qillshim shartmi? – Xa, shart. 8. Xonangizda cheksam mumkinmi? – Yoq, iltimoq bunday qilmang. 9. Mobil telefonlaringizni o'chirib qo'yinglar! Bu yerda telefonda gaplashishaolmaysiz. 10. Uy vazufasini vaqtida bajarishing lozim. Yo'qqa imtihonlarni topshirolmaysan. 11. Universitetda o'qishni xohlasang qattiq

ishlashing lozim. 12. Biz ma'ruzani uch kundan keyin yozishimiz mumkin. 13. Ular bu matnни yodlay olishmaydi. 14. Nahotki bu she'rni u yozgan bolsa? 15. Balki u imtihon topshirayotgandir. 16. Soyaboningni olsang bo'lardi. Yomg'ir yog'ishi mumkin. 17. Vaqtli turishim shartmi? – Xa, shart. Men bilan xaridga chiqasan. 18. Talabalar uy vazifalarini bajarishlari shart.

Ex. 4. Change the sentences according to the model using the comparative and superlative degrees of the adjectives.

Model: Tom is a tall boy. → Bob is taller than Tom. → Martin is the tallest of all.

1. Alice is a smart girl (Susan, Beatrice). 2. Alisher is a clever pupil (Rustam, Bobur). 3. Room 5 is small. (room 6, room 10). 4. Cheese is a chip food (butter, bread). 5. Apricot is a sweet fruit (palm, apple). 6. Tennis is a popular sport (box, football). 7. The Indian Ocean is very big (the Atlantic, the Pacific). 8. "Shoxnoma" is an interesting book ("Boburnoma", "Xamsa"). 9. Winter is a beautiful season (Summer, Spring). 10. A crocodile is an angry animal (a tiger, a lion).

Ex. 5. Chose the proper form of the adjective.

1. Our University is (large, larger, the largest) higher education institution in Fergana valley. 2. This book (interesting, more interesting, the most interesting) then that one. 3. This faculty building is (tall, taller, the tallest) in our University. 4. English is (popular, more popular, the most popular) language in the world. 5. Narcotics are (dangerous, more dangerous, the most dangerous) drugs for human being. 6. This laboratory equipment is (modern, more modern, the most modern) then the old one. 7. Dr. Green's lectures are (interesting, more interesting, the most interesting) then Professor Black's.

Ex. 6. Translate into English.

1. Bahor kunlari iliqroq va uzunroq. 2. Bugun tuman qalinroq. 4. Qish eng sovuq fasl. 5. Yoz eng issiq fasl. 6. Bahor eng chiroyli fasl. 7. Nems tili Ingliz tilidan

qiyinroq. Xitoy tili eng qiyini. 8. Gulnora aqilli qiz. Saida Gulnoradan aqilliroq, Zebo guruhda eng aqilli qiz. 9. Janob Brown boy bisnesmen. Janob Orin Janob Browndan boyroq. Janob Wayt eng boyi. 10. Singlim mendan ko'ra epchilroq (quick). 11. Matiz zamonaviy (modern) mashina. Nexia Matizdan zamonaviyroq. Lasetty eng zamonaviy mashina. 12. Bo'ri abjir (fast) hayvon. Quyon bo'ridan abjirroq. Yo'lbars eng abjir hayvon. 13. Qishki chorak (term) yozgi chorakdan uzunroq. 14. Ularni kvartirasi boznikidan qulayroq.

Ex. 7. From the list of adjectives chose the ones describing JOHN DOE. Place the adjective in the blank under the picture that they describe. Can you think of other adjectives to describe John Doe?

courteous

sleepy

happy

confused

friendly

angry



scared

doubtful

mad

joyful

frightened

tired

EDUCATION IN UZBEKISTAN

In Uzbekistan everyone has both the right and the obligation to become educated. All children in Uzbekistan receive their elementary and secondary education in public schools, and parents never have to pay tuition fees. Nearly all schools are coeducational, which means that boys and girls attend the same school and have their classes together.



A lot of homework!

Free public education begins with **kindergarten**. Children begin to prepare for classroom life at the age of five. They learn letters, numbers, colors, and shapes. Still, there is a lot of time for play, singing, and dancing.

Children start schooling at the age of 7. **Compulsory** education **consists of 9** levels called **grades**. One school year (from September to mid-June) consists of four terms. Primary education **lasts** for four years and children have lessons on reading, writing, arithmetic, art, music, P.T., handicrafts, mother tongue, Russian and so on. When pupils finish their primary education they begin to take more **difficult** subjects such as physics, geometry, chemistry, zoology, biology, geography. They **move** from one classroom to another and study each subject with a **different** teacher. **School attendance** is strictly required in all educational institutions in Uzbekistan.

There is a **wide range of choice** for a pupil to **continue** his or her further education in Uzbekistan. When pupils finish the ninth grade they **transfer** to academic lyceums or vocational colleges. Subjects are more specialized in high school than in elementary school. The school day is very long for many high school students. Many take five or six major academic subjects as well as physical education and foreign languages. During other periods, students may be doing homework in a study hall, **researching** in the Information Resource Center, and **participating in activities** such as the orchestra, student government, student newspaper, or math clubs. These activities help students find friends with **similar** interests, develop their talents, gain **self-confidence**, and sometimes even **discover** their career goals.

There are 62 higher educational institutions for those who want to earn an advanced degree for further progress. Universities and Institutes in Uzbekistan **offer** four kinds of graduate degrees: bachelor's degree, master's degree, postgraduate degree, and doctor's degree. To receive a candidate's or a doctor's degree students must **pass oral and written examinations** and produce a long and **comprehensive** research paper that makes an original **contribution** to their field.

VOCABULARY NOTES

- receive** v. [rɪ'si:v] - 1) olmoq; egallamoq, qabul qilmoq, e.g. I received this book as a gift.. We received your letter of the 15th May. Agatha Christy received her early schooling at home. Syn: acquire 2) yig'moq, sig'dirmoq e.g. The cistern receives water from the roof. Syn: believe 3) guvoh ko'rsatmasii to'g'ri deb qabul qilmoq; to receive smb. coldly, coolly (favorably, warmly) — sovuq (iliq) kutib omoq
- elementary** adj. [ˌelɪ'ment(ə)rɪ] – boshlabg'ich, sodda syn: primary
- secondary** adj. [ˈsek(ə)nd(ə)rɪ] – ikkinchi, o'rta e.g. secondary technical training
- tuition fees** n. [tʃu(:)l(ə)n fi:z] – ta'lim uchun to'lov
- kindergarten** n. [ˈkɪndə ˌgɑ:tɪn] – bog'cha to attend kindergarten, go to kindergarten
- compulsory** adj. [kəm'pʌls(ə)rɪ] – majburiy compulsory education / compulsory measures / compulsory (military) service
- consist (of / in)** v. [kən'sɪst] – iborat bo'lmoq, o'z ichiga olmoq
- grade** n./ v. [greɪd] – bosqich, sinf, daraja, baho, to make out grades, to give grades — baholamoq, to get, receive a grade — baho olmoq / baholamoq
- last** v./adj. [la:st] - davom etmoq, cho'zilmoq, e.g. (for; from; to, until) The meeting lasted from one to three. The examination lasted two hours. This winter seems to last for ever. Syn: continue, endure, go on; n – ohirgi, so'ngi, o'tgan; e.g. last century, last year
- difficult** adj. [dɪfɪk(ə)lt] – qiyin, murakkab, mushkul e.g. Typing is difficult for me. Syn: hard, arduous, heavy / a difficult child — qaysar bola
- attendance** n. [ə'tendəns] – (darslarga) qatnashish, (at) davomad; your attendance is requested / e.g. I would advise the tutor not to press his young pupil to give attendance, when he is eagerly engaged with some other favourite pursuit. poor, low attendance/ average attendance / daily attendance e.g. There was a large attendance at the meeting.
- to attend a lecture (school, a meeting...) — ma'ruzada qatnashmoq (maktabga, tadbirga)

different *adj.* [ˈdɪf(ə)nt] - a) farqli, boshqacha, turli (from, to, than) Syn: dissimilar b) oddiy emas Syn: special, unusual, uncommon, various, another (difference *n.* / differ *v.*)

wide range of choice – keng tanlov

continue *v.* [kənˈtɪnju(:)]- davom etmoq, chozilmoq e.g. The trial continued for three days.

research (in, into, on) *n./v.* [rɪˈsə:tʃ] – izlanish, ilmiy ish, to be engaged in research – ilmiy ish bilan mashgʻul bolmoq, research work – ilmiy ish, to do (carry out) research, - detailed research - independent research - original research - market research - scientific research

participate *v.* [paːˈtɪsɪpeɪt] – ishtirok etmoq, qatnashmoq; Syn: take part, e.g. Some students like to participate in different extracurricular activities.

activity *n.* [ækˈtɪvɪti] - faoliyat, harakat, mashgʻulot, tadbir e.g. All students can participate in this activity. business activity - economic activity - extracurricular activity - intellectual activity - physical activity - political activity - recreational activity - scientific activity - social activity - terrorist activity - union activities
Syn: project

similar *adj.* [ˈsɪmɪlə] – aynan, oʻxshash, mos, bir hil e.g. similar in colour, a similar opinion, on similar occasions, to be in a similar situation, similar in every respect, similar to smth, Syn: alike, parallel. Ant: contradictory, different, dissimilar, diverse, contrasting

self-confidence *n.* [self ˈkɒnfɪd(ə)ns] – oʻziga ishonch e.g. His self-confidence helped him to win the game.

discover *v.* [dɪsˈkʌvə] kishf qilmoq, tadqiq qilmoq, oʻrganmoq, topmoq e.g. I discovered them in the library. While the mother talked to the saleswoman Tom discovered the shop. discovery – *n.* kashfiyot, tadqiqot

offer *n./v.* [ˈɒfə] – taklif / taklif qilmoq Syn: suggest, propose; Our university offers correspondence courses for those who want to change their profession. - *n.* taklif syn: suggestion, proposal

pass (take) **examination** *n.* [ɪg ,zæmɪneɪʃ(ə)n]– imtihondan oʻtmoq (topshirmoq)

oral and written **examination** – og'zaki va yozma imtihon

comprehensive *adj.* [ˌkɒmpriˈhensɪv] to'liq, mukammal, batafsil, keng qamrovli;

comprehensive knowledge Syn: all-round, thorough, vast, spacious

contribution *n.* [ˌkɒntriˈbjʊː(ə)n] hissa, ulush; to make a contribution; **contribute**

– v hissa qo'shmoq

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

Educational institutions: *academy, university, institute, faculty, department, chair, vocational training college, lyceum, school, nursery school, kindergarten...*

Administrative staff: *rector, director, vice-rector, dean, supervisor, head of the chair*

Scientific degrees: *academics, professor, doctor, docent, candidate, muster, bachelor*

Teachers staff: *lecturer, senior teacher, teacher, assistant teacher, tutor, inspector, and trainer, an experienced teacher, high skilled teacher; to teach, to educate, to give (deliver) lectures on, to grade, to examine, to call the register, to explain, to order books, to give homework, to correct papers (mistakes), to hold current (final) check up test, receive a bribe...*

Learners: *pupil, apprentice, undergraduate student (freshman, sophomore), junior student, senior student, monitor; to study, to take (have) lessons, to have a test (dictation), to do well, to be good at smth., to be interested in smth, to be fond of smth., to be absent (present), to attend classes regularly, to do homework, to prepare for the lesson, to write, to read, to learn by-heard, to make notes, to participate, to take (an active) part, to be late, to be on time, to be on duty, to keep late hours, to miss a (lecture) lesson, to follow the timetable(schedule), to take subjects, to pass examinations, to fail, to make a noise, to make a mistake, to cheat, to respect smb., to (disobey) obey, to criticize, to revise...*

Teaching aids: *book, textbook, manual, exercises (note) book, register, diary, pupil's mark book, record book, time table, curriculum, bulletin, blackboard, desk, table, chalk, map, handouts, pen, pencil, felt-tip pen (fountain-pen), eraser, rubber,*

rule, glue, sticker, thumbtack (drawing-pin), computer, language laboratory, earphones, calculator, projector, printer, scanner, tape recorder...

Subjects: *mathematics (algebra, geometry, trigonometry); nature science (biology, chemistry, physics, geography); social science (history, psychology, sociology, economy, law, literature);*

Art (fine art, applied art, music, ...)

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Ex. 1. a) Write sentences according to the following models using the words and word combinations given below.

Model 1: Let's begin our lesson.

read the text; write on the blackboard; do the exercises; speak to the dean; ask the monitor; participate in this activity.

Model 2: Shall I clean the blackboard?

bring some chalk; do my homework, revise this grammar rule; translate the text; open the window; copy out the text; explain the theme again.

Model 3: Listen to the teacher.

the monitor; the dean; the answer; the story; the text; the cassette-recorder; the lecturer.

Model 4: Look at the blackboard.

the picture; the map; the text; the handouts; me; those students; this register; record-book.

Model 5: Don't make a noise.

be late; speak to each other; open the door; make a mistake; clean the blackboard; use your mobile phone; interrupt me.

Model 6: May I go out?

come in; use your dictionary; clean the blackboard; take this fountain pen; switch on the cassette-recorder; switch off the TV; speak to the rector; smoke here.

Ex. 2. Complete the sentences choosing the suitable word.

1. We write on
2. We write with
3. The students sit at
4. They revise
5. A teacher grades
6. A lecturer gives
7. Students pass
8. We draw with
9. A teacher checks
10. Students may participate in different

Ex. 3. Fill in prepositions.

1. Children receive their education ... public schools.
2. Every academic year consists ... four terms.
3. Each term lasts ... three months.
4. The lecture lasted ... 3 o'clock.
5. Let's speak ... the dean.
6. Tom is good ... arithmetics.
5. She is fond ... chemistry.
6. My brother is engaged ... research.
7. Our students always participate ... extracurricular activities.
8. Our university offers a wide range ... choice for those who want to receive higher education.
9. The students of our faculty are quite different ... the students of your faculty.
10. We study different subjects ... different teachers.
11. My sister is ... the fifth grade.
12. The scholars of our university make a great contribution ... their fields.
13. Mathematics is very difficult subject ... many students.
14. One semester continues ... four months.

Ex. 4. Translate into English.

1. Bugun kim navbatchi? - Elena. Kim yo'q? - Uchta talaba yo'q. Viktor shu yerdami? - Yo'q, u bu yerda emas.
2. Bugun qaysi kun? - Bugun dushanba. Bugun nechanchi sana? - Bugun 19 yanvar.
3. Savol bersam mumkunmi? - Marhamat. Sakkizinchi xona qaerda? Uzur, savolingizga javob berolmayman. Kotibadan so'rang, u bilsa kerak.
4. Dekan bilan gaplashsam bo'ladimi? - Yo'q, hozir u sizni qabul qilolmaydi. Dekan sizni soat ikkida keyin qabul qilishi mumkun.
4. O'zbekistonda bolalar ta'lim olishni 7 yoshdan boshlashadi. Ba'zi ota-onalar farzandlarini 6 yoshdan maktabga berishadi.
7. Boshlang'ich sinfda bolalar o'qishni, yozishni, va matematikani o'rganishadi.
8. Universitetimizda 12 ta fakultet bor. Bir o'quv yili ikki semestrda iborat. Talabalar har semester yakunida og'zaki va yozma imtihon topshirishadi.
9. Talabalar darsdan tashqari

mashg'ulotlarga faol qatnashishadi. 10. Bu bizning xona. Xonada 8 ta parta, ikkita deraza va bitta eshik bor. Duskada mel, chizg'ich, o'chirg'ich va xarita bor. 11. Barcha talabalar xorijiy tillarni o'rganishadi. 12. Agar fanlardan yaxshi o'zlashtirmasangiz imtihonlarni topshira olmaysiz. 13. Uning o'ziga ishonchi fanlardan yaxshi o'zlashtirishiga yordam berdi. 14. O'qituvchi har bir darsda talabalarni baholaydi. Agar talaba ko'p dars qoldirsa imtihonlardan o'tolmaydi. 15. U boshlang'ich ta'limni uyida olgan. 16. Universitetimiz olimlari o'z sohalariga ulkan hissa qo'shmoqdalar. 17. O'rta osiyolik olimlar buyuk kashfiyotlar qilishgan. 18. Bu aspirantlar fizikadan ilmiy ish olib borishmoqda. 19. Universitetimizda har bir dars 80 minut davom etadi. Talabalar ma'ruzalar tinglashadi, keyin seminarlarga qatnashishadi. 20. Har bir semester yakunida talabalar turli fanlardan og'zaki va yozma imtihon topshirishadi.

Ex. 5. Read the text and try to translate it into your native language.

Life on a Campus

A university community is an interesting lively place. Students become involved in many different extracurricular activities. They can join different clubs such as; poetry, journalism, music, computer, art, and foreign languages. All modern facilities are available for those who go in for sports. Sports are an important part of life on most campuses in Uzbekistan. Students always participate in different sport contests with great enthusiasm. Every four year sport teams from each region compete against each other for the championships of "Umid nihollari", "Barkamol avlod", and "Uiversiada". The president of the republic of Uzbekistan supports all these sport festivals and pays a great attention in constructions of modern gymnasiums, swimming pools, and stadiums.

Is it fun to be a university student in Uzbekistan? For most students the academic years are exciting and rewarding, but they are also not easy and stressful. Just about all university students are anxious about examinations and grades. Many students have additional problems – too little money, not enough sleep, and feeling of loneliness because they are far from home. Some students spend too much time

at parties and get into trouble academically. Still, many Uzbeks look back on their student years as the happiest time of their lives, and they say, "Studentlik oltin davrim!"

Ex. 6. Discuss these issues in small groups. Then chose one and write about it.

1. Many university students spend too much money on clothes. Do you think clothing is an important part of student life? What are advantages and disadvantages of wearing fashionable clothes?
2. In all universities in Uzbekistan attendance is strictly required. In your opinion, until what age class attendance should be required?
3. Many students get married before they graduate from the university.

Ex. 7. Write a short composition on this cartoon.



Grammar: Present Perfect, Adverbs (Degrees of Comparison)

Text: Mother Nature

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I have watched the film.	Have you watched the film?	I have not watched the film.
He has watched the film.	Has he watched the film?	He has not watched the film.
They have watched the film.	Have they watched the film?	They have not watched the film.

The Present Perfect Tense is used:

1. To express the completed action and its effect or result on present event. E.g.: I have washed my hands. (My hands are clean now.) He has opened the door. (The door is open now.)
2. With the adverbials of indefinite time, such as: **never, ever, just, yet, recently, lately, already, often, seldom, always**. E.g.: I have never been to Moscow. Have you ever seen this man? She has just left for Tashkent.
3. With a word or phrase which denotes an uncompleted period of time such as: today, this week, this month, this year, etc. E.g.: I have been to Tashkent twice this year. He has drawn the picture today.
4. With the prepositions **since** and **for**. E.g.: I have not seen him for ages. We have not met since last year.
5. To express the action and its result at the moment. E.g.: Help, I have cut my finger!

The Adverb

Adverbs (ravish) can be:

1. Simple: **fast, soon, here, how, then, now, still.**
2. Derivative (formed from adjectives): **slow / slowly, quick / quickly, smart / smartly.**
3. Compound: **sometimes, somewhere, everywhere, nowhere.**

Mind some expressions:

1. The adverb of the adjective good is well.
2. Some adjectives and adverbs have the same form: high, deep, low, near, far, fast, hard, early, late, much, little, kindly. E.g.: 1. This is a fast train. It goes fast. 2. This mountain is very high. – The wind blows high. – He is a highly talented student. 3. She spoke in a low voice. – The plane flew very low. – She said this very lowly. 4. This is a near translation. – She lives near us. – It is nearly ten o'clock now. 5. He is a hard worker. – He works hard. – His friend hardly does his home work. 6. It happened in the late autumn. – It happened late at night. – I have been very busy lately.

DEGREES OF COMPARISON

	Positive Degree	Comparative Degree	Superlative Degree
Bir bo'g'inli so'zlarida	early near	earlier nearer	earliest nearest
Ko'p bo'g'inli so'zlarida	brightly beautifully	more brightly more beautifully	most brightly most beautifully
Istesno so'zlarida	well badly much little far	better worse more less father further	best worst most least farthest furthest

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Form adverbs from the given adjectives and nouns and make up your own sentences. *sad, successful, real, slow, usual, day, calm, bright, proud, firm, loud, happy, safe, dry, gradual, soft, brave, hour*

Ex. 2. Change the italicized adjective into an adverb.

Model. 1. He wrote a *perfect* essay. → He wrote the essay **perfectly**.

1. The doctor performed a *successful* operation. 2. He sent them a *formal* invitation. 3. She gave an *accurate* description of the incident. 4. She got a *warm* greeting from her friend. 5. She performed a *beautiful* dance. 6. They had a very *quick* run. 7. They showed a *wonderful* act.

8. She makes a *beautiful* dress. 9. He drew a *fantastic* picture. 10. There was a *sudden* change in the weather.

Ex. 3. Fill in the sentences choosing the appropriate adverbials or prepositions.

(never, ever, just, yet, recently, lately, already, always, since, for)

1. I have been to Moscow. 2. Have you ... been to Tashkent? 3. We have not seen each other ... three years. 4. He has not graduated from the university 5. Wash your hands. – I have ... washed my hands. 6. Dr. Green has ... finished his lecture. 7. He has ... been my best friend. 8. She has ... left the school. 9. They have been married ... 20 years. 10. She has been ill ... 2008. 11. They have ... bought a new car. 12. Mrs. White has been here ... Monday.

Ex. 4. Use the Present Indefinite, the Present Continuous or the Present Perfect instead of the infinitives in brackets:

1. Will you, please lend me your pen for a moment? I (to leave) mine at home and now (to have) nothing to write with. – I (to be) sorry, but I (to be going) to write myself. Ann (not to write), she can give you her pen. 2. She never (to see) the Aral Sea and wants to go to Nukus this summer.

3. The company (to decide) to reduce chemicals to prevent the pollution. 4. Our factory (to use) waste free technology and produces healthy food. 5. This man must go to prison. He (kill) many animals for their skin. 6. We (to go) to the cafe 'Cosmos' tonight. You ever (to be) there? 7. Where (to be) Ann? - She (to be) in the kitchen. - What she (to do) there? - She (to wash up). - I already (to help) my mother with the housework and (to come) to ask Ann to go to the cinema with me. 7. Don't forget we (to have) a party tomorrow, be sure to bring Bob with you if he (to come) from St. Petersburg. 8. (to be) there anything the matter with you? You (to be) so pale. - Nothing the matter. I just (to finish) my work and I (to be) little tired. 9. Ring me up as soon as you (to be) free. I (to have) something to discuss with you. 10. What you (to look) for? - I (to look) for my dictionary. I just (to put) it somewhere here. 11. Where you (to go) to? - I (to go) out for shopping. We (to run) out of food. - Oh, you (not need). Look, I (to buy) butter, bread, cheese, sugar, milkshake, jam, rice, and vegetables. 12. This dress is so new that I (not to remove) its tag yet.

Ex. 5. Translate into English using the Present Perfect.

1. Darslaringni bajar. - Darslarimni allaqachon bajarib qo'yganman. 2. Hamma fanlardan imtihonlarni topshirganmisiz? - Ha, barcha fanlardan imtihonlarni topshirib bo'lganmiz. 3. Men ingliz tili imtihonidan yiqilganman. Hozir qayta topshirishga tayyorgarlik ko'ryapman. 4. Onam pirojni pishirib qo'ygan. Biznikiga kelsangiz kechki ovqatni birga yeymiz. 5. U yerda hozir o'rmon yo'q. Odamlar daraxtlarni kesib yuborishgan, yovvoyi hayvonlarni otib bo'lishgan. 6. Bu suvni ichmang. Zavod ko'l suvini ifloslantirgan. 7. Kelganligingizdan juda xursandman. Anchadan beri ko'rishmagandik. Siz doim yaxshi xabar iolib kelasiz. - Ha, Yaponiyada bo'lgandim. U yerda ilmiy ish qildim. 8. Oyi, idishlarni yuvib qo'yganman, siz dam olishingiz mumkin. 9. Ular turmush qurishganmi? - Bilmadim ularni ikki yildan beri ko'rganim yo'q. 10. Janob Smith yaqindagina ilmiy ishini tamomlagan. Biz uning ma'ruzalariga doim qatnashamiz. 11. Dekan bilan uchrashsak bo'ladimi? - Afsus, bugun dekan bilan uchrasholmaysiz. U kishi

Toshkentga ketganlar. 12. Voy, qo'limni kuydirib oldim! 13. Qara, bu nima qilganing? – Nima qilibman? – Kitobimni yirtib (to tear) qoyibsanku! Uni kutubhonadan bolgadam. – Juda afsusdaman, bunday bo'lishni hohlamagandim. 14. Bu talaba juda ko'p dars qoldirgan. U imtihonni topshiraolmasa kerak.

Ex. 6. Fill in prepositions or adverbs if necessary:

1. Every student must work hard to master ... the language. 2. What grade did you get ... Literature ... the entrance examinations? 3. What grade did he get ... his essay? 4. "Try to get rid ... your spelling mistakes," the teacher said. 5. My nephew is very good ... arithmetic. 6. The sun is shining high ... the sky. 7. We are proud ... our university. There are 12 faculties ... our university. 8. ... Uzbekistan children start schooling ... the age of seven. 9. I see you are angry ... me, but I don't understand why you don't answer ... my question. 10. We are all fond ... English speaking club. 11. He always takes part ... our discussions. 12. I have not seen my cousin ... ages. 13. Mrs. Clark has been here ... September. 14. The plants pollute the air we breathe ..., and spoil the water we drank. 15. Teenagers leave school ... June and begin to prepare ... entrance exams ... the universities. 16. We must struggle ... peace! 17. Dr Sanford teaches geometry and delivers lectures ... trigonometry. 18. The Aral Sea is ... danger!

MOTHER NATURE

The problem of ecology is very important today, because we live in a **polluted** world. People all over the world discuss this problem, but they still continue to pollute air, water and **soil**. They are still cutting down the trees, killing the animals, and testing atomic bombs. All these activities have **damaged** the **environment** badly. The farmers have killed many wild animals to protect their domestic animals. They still shoot every **hawk** because one hawk (=falcon) have stolen the chicken. People are still afraid of sharks, snakes, bats, and wolves because they have bad **reputation**. People usually kill animals for their meat or

skin, and sometimes just for fun. Many **species** of animals, insects, reptiles, and plants have disappeared already and many species are in the **endangered list**.

The Aral Sea is four times ► smaller than it used to be because we have never thought about it seriously. During the past years people have cut down millions of trees, and damaged the flora needlessly.



Industrial factories and plants have polluted the air and the water. People are having different **lung disease** because huge clouds of smoke and gas have closed about the Earth. Fruits and vegetables may **cause** different **diseases** because chemical **fertilizers** have damaged the soil. **Acid rains** and **greenhouse effect** have been global problem and human being is also in danger now.

But there is a **solution** to clean the environment and it has become a moral duty and obligation of every man. We can **reduce** the usage of water and electricity. We should reuse whatever we can, for example, plastic bags, cans, paper, glass and bottles. Scientists have invented new **waste free technologies** that do not **do harm** to nature. There are new inventions such as filters that make water and air clean. Some factories and plants have started using these machines already and this helps to **prevent** pollution. Special kinds of gasoline for cars can help to reduce air pollution.

VOCABULARY NOTES

pollute v. [pə'lu:t] ifloslantirmoq, bulg'amoq, e.g. Factories are **polluting the air** with black smoke.

pollution n. ifloslanish, bulg'anish e.g. air pollution, water pollution, soil **pollution**

polluter *n.* ifiloslovchi, bulg'ovchi

polluted *adj.* ifiloslangan, bulg'angan e.g. polluted water (air, soil)

soil *n.* [soil] - tuproq, yer; to cultivate, till, work the soil — yerga ishlov bermoq, to fertilize the soil — yerni (tuproqni) o'g'itlamoq

damage *n./v.* [dæmɪdʒ] - zarar great damage, serious damage, severe damage — og'ir zarar light damage, slight damage — yengil zarar; zarar etkazmoq, putr etkazmoq, e.g. He damaged my reputation badly.

environment *n.* [ɪn'vaɪə(ə)nmənt] atrof-muhit, to clean up environment — atrof-muhitni tozalamoq; preserve, protect the environment — atrof-muhitni himoya qilmoq; to pollute the environment — atrof-muhitni ifiloslantirmoq; a healthy environment — sog'lom muhit

hawk *n.* [ho:k] lochin; syn: falcon

reputation *n.* [ˌreɪpju(:)teɪ(ə)n] - obro', nom, reputatsiya, to establish a reputation — obro' qozonmoq; to compromise, destroy, ruin, tarnish smb.'s reputation — obro'sini (nomini) bulg'amoq to guard, protect one's reputation — obro'sini (nomini) himoya qilmoq; international, worldwide reputation — xalqaro e'tirof, scientist of world-wide reputation — dunyoda obro' qozongan olim e.g.: He had the reputation of being a heavy drinker.

skin *n.* [skɪn] teri, et, po'stin, mo'yna; to cast, shed, slip one's skin — po'stin tashlamoq, e.g.: The snake shed its skin. — Ilon po'st tashladi. rough skin — dag'al teri; dark skin — to'q rangli teri; delicate, fine skin — yupqa teri; dry skin — quruq teri; fair, soft skin — mayin teri; oily skin — yog'li teri; sensitive skin — ta'sirchan teri

v. et (teri) bitmoq, - terisini shilib olmoq, e.g.: The wound should skin over quite quickly now.

endangered list [ɪn'deɪndʒəd list] - xavf ostidagilar (yo'qolb ketish xavfidagilar) ro'yxati

cause *n. /v.* [ko:z] - sabab, sabab bo'lmoq Syn: effect, bring about, produce, induce, make

lung *n.* [lʌŋ] o'pka

disease *n.* [di'zi:z] - kasallik, syn: illness, sickness, to come down with **disease** — kasallanmoq; to carry disease, to spread (a) disease — **kasallik tarqatmoq**; to **cure** (a) disease — kasallikni da'volamoq; to prevent (a) disease — **kasallikni oldini olmoq**

fertilizer *n.* ['fə:tilaizə] - o'g'it

acid rein *n.* [æsid rein] - kislata yomg'iri

greenhouse effect *n.* ['gri:nhaus i'fekt] - issiqxona effekti

solution *n.* [sə'lu:ʃ(ə)n] – yechim, (muammoning)yechimi

reduce *v.* [ri'dju:s] qisqartirmoq, ozaytirmoq, kamaytirmoq, tushirmoq e.g. The government reduced the taxes.

waste free technology [weist fri: tek'no:lədʒi] - chiqindisiz texnologiya

(do) harm *n.* [hɑ:m]– ziyon, zarar (etkazmoq)

prevent *v.* [pri'vent] oldini olmoq, xalaqit bermoq; to prevent the spread of disease - kasallik tarqalishini oldini olmoq, to prevent crime — jinoyatni oldini olmoq

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

The Universe, the Galaxy, the Milky Way

The Solar System: the Sun, Mercury, Venus, Earth, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, Neptune, Pluto

Pole: The North Pole, the South Pole

Hemisphere: Northern hemisphere, Southern hemisphere, Eastern hemisphere, Western hemisphere

Continents: Europe, Asia, Africa, America, Antarctica, Australia

Oceans: The Pacific, the Atlantic, the Indian, the Arctic Ocean

Seas: The Black Sea, the Mediterranean Sea

Rivers: The Nil River, the Volga River, the Amudarya River

Lakes: Lake Baikal, the Great Lakes

Mountains: The Alps, the Ands, the Caucasus, the Urals, the Pomirs

Island, bay, channel, pond, stream,

Animals and birds (domestic): horse, cow, dog, cat, goat, pig, swine, ass, rabbit, hen, cock, goose, duck, turkey, mule, donkey

Animals and birds (wild): lion, tiger, wolf, zebra, giraffe, hippopotamus, bear, fox, deer, ox, hare, elephant, mouse, monkey, hedgehog, eagle, swan, sparrow, parrot, pigeon, dove, crane, owl, falcon, nightingale, raven, magpie, hawk, bat, ostrich, sea-gull

Sea animals: fish, whale, shark, dolphin, ray, seal

Reptiles: crocodile, snake, turtle, lizard

Insects: bee, ant, spider, fly, flea, mosquito, beetle, butterfly, moth

☺ *stork - Jim storked her.*

as sly as a fox — tulkidek ayyor

a wolf in sheep's clothing — qo'y terisini yopingan bo'ri, ko'rinishidan qo'yday yuvash odam, to have the wolf in the stomach — bo'riday och. He is a wolf.- U xotinboz.

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Ex 1. Find the best way to complete each sentence.

- | | |
|------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. You can not drink this water | a. because, the farmers have used chemical fertilizers. |
| 2. There is no wood there now | b. because, people have destroyed their hebetate. |
| 3. It is dangerous to swim in this lake | c. because, the builders have cut down all the trees. |
| 4. We can hardly breath in the city | d. because, the plants have polluted the air. |
| 5. Wild animals don't live in this forest | e. because, the factories have polluted the water. |
| 6. You shouldn't eat this vegetable | f. because, it is too harmful to your health. |
| 7. Many species of fish are not longer living in the river | |

She lives ... her father's reputation. He had the reputation ... being a heavy drinker. That judge has a reputation ... being fair. Mr. Brown is a person ... high reputation. Mr. Black is a person ... no reputation. 8. The plants must reduce to send the smoke ... the air. We shall be able to reduce water pollution ... 50% if we use waste free technology. Special kinds ... gasoline ... cars can help to reduce air pollution.

Ex. 4. Translate into English.

1. Odamlar o'rmondagi daraxtlarni kesib tashlashgan. Endi bu yerda yovvoyi jonivorlar yasholmaydi. 2. Fermerlar o'z ekinlari va chorvalarini himoya qilish uchun yovvoyi hayvonlarni o'ldirishadi. 3. Ba'zi insonlar jonvorlarni shunchaki ko'ngilhushlik uchun ovlashadi. 4. Bu yerda cho'milish mumkin emas. Bu sog'lig'ingiz uchun o'ta xavfli. Atrofdagi zavodlar ko'l suvini ifloslantirgan. 5. Shahardagi zavod va fabrikalar havoni bulg'agan. 6. Insonlar atrof-muhitni tozalash uchun birga ishlashlari zarur. 7. Agar korxonalar chiqindisiz texnologiyalardan foydalanishsa ular tabiatga zarar etkazishmaydi. 8. Odamlar chiqindini (=litter) ahlat idishlariga (=garbage can) tashlashlari lozim. 9. Har-xil kasalliklar tarqalishini oldini olishimiz zarur. 10. Havoni iflislanishiga yo'l qo'ymasligimiz kerak. 11. Dexqonlar tuproq unumdorligini oshirish uchun ximiyaviy moddalardan foydalanishyapti. Bu esa tuptoqni zaharlanishiga sabab bo'ladi. 12. Orol degizi xavf ostida. U yerdagi baliqlarnin ko'plab turlari yo'q bo'lib ketgan. 13. Daraxtlarni kesish orqali odamlar tabiatga juda katta ziyon etkazishan. 14. Insonlar ba'zi jonvorlar yomon otliq bo'lishgani uchun o'ldirishadi. 15. Dada, bizni zoparkka olib borig, iltimos. – Yaxshi, o'zim ham u yerga anchadan beri bormaganman. U yerda qushlarning juda ko'p turlari bor. – U yerda baliqlar ham bormi? - Xa, u yerda hatto akula ham bo'r. – Dada nima uchun odamlar akuladan qo'rqishadi? -Bilmasam. - U juda badjahilmi? - Yo'q. Agar unga yomonlik qilmasang u senga tegmaydi. Dada, ko'rshapalaklar vampirmi, ular qon so'radimi? – Yo'q, kor'shapalaklar qon so'rmaydi. Shunchaki ular yomon otliq bo'lib qolishgan, aslida ular juda foydali jonvorlar.

Ex. 5. Read the texts, choose one and discuss why many species of animals and plants are in danger.

NATURAL WORLD IN DANGER

Vocabulary: dodo, extinct, passenger pigeon, mammal, habitat, plant, cardboard, oxygen, cancer, destroy, cure

You have never seen a dodo. Your friends and teachers have never seen a dodo. Your grandparents never saw a dodo. The last of these large birds that couldn't fly died many years ago. Now it is extinct. We even say "as dead as a dodo", which means "finished". Your great-grandparents may just have seen a passenger pigeon: the last one died in 1914. A lot more endangered species – fish, reptiles, insects, birds, mammals – may disappear before you have children. The reason is man that kills animals and destroys their habitats.

It is not just animals that are in danger. So are plants. The world had over nine million sq. km. of forests. This is a lot of trees, and also a lot of different species of plants. But they are disappearing fast. Every day we use paper and cardboard, both made from wood. We use different kinds of wood in furniture and in other ways. Every year people cut down 100 000 sq. km. of forests and damage the nature badly. The huge forests help to control the world's weather, to produce much of the oxygen in the air.

Many illnesses such as cancer and AIDS (acquired immune deficiency syndrome) are spreading all over the world. But, there are maybe medicines in wild plants in savannas, deserts or rainforests. If we destroy these places, we will never find the cure.

BATS ARE BEAUTIFUL AND DO GOOD DEEDS

Bats are *creepy*. Bats are ugly. Bats get *tangled* in your hair. Bats spread lots of diseases. Turn your back and bats will *suck* your blood.

On the other hand, bats are often highly intelligent and easily trained. Current bat research holds promise for improving birth control, fighting cancer and treating speech defects. Bats have mastered the night sky like dolphins have mastered the sea. The bat's sonar navigation system, known as echolocation, is so *advanced*, in fact, that it goes beyond current scientific understanding.

Bats have *gloomy* public reputation. People kill millions of bats because of fear and *ignorance*. A few species already are *extinct*, and several more are on the endangered list. Here are some facts to *get to know* the bats better:

- Bats, for their size, are the world's longest-lived mammals, with some species surviving 30 years or more.
- About 1,000 bat species exist. They amount for about one fourth of the world's mammal species. An *estimated* 70 million bats living in a series of caves near San Antonio, Texas, are probably the largest concentration of *vertebrates* on the planet.
- The world's smallest mammal happens to be a variety of bat the size of a *bumblebee*. It lives in Thailand.
- Bats may be the most important seed-dispersing animals in some tropical rain forests.
- Bats eat billions of insects and prevent the spread of diseases.
- Bat guano *mines* minerals out of caves and fertilize the soil. It helps grow about one third of the world's black pepper.
- Bats are considered quite *edible* in Asia and Africa and throughout the Pacific. A good bat dinner in a nice restaurant on the island of Guam will cost you \$25.
- There are some *tiny*, pale brown insect eating species in California, intelligent enough frog eating bats in Panama and an African signing bat with striking colors.

Lesson Eight

Grammar: *Interrogative sentences.*

Text: *Spring Victory (Illnesses and their Treatment)*

GENERAL QUESTION

1. We usually make **general questions** by changing the word order: we put the auxiliary verb before the subject. E.g.: He **is** at home. → **Is** he at home? I **am** busy. → **Are** you busy?
2. We put the auxiliary verb "**do**" at the beginning of the sentences. E.g.: They work hard. → **Do** they work hard. She wrote a letter. → **Did** she write a letter?
3. General questions require short answer. E.g.: Are you hungry? → No, I am not. Yes, I am. Do you speak English? → Yes, I do. No, I don't.
4. We use the auxiliary verb in negative form. E.g.: **Don't** you know him? **Isn't** he at home? **Didn't** he come? **Haven't** you seen him?

Compare: He has got a car. → Has he got a car? He has a car. → Does he have a car?

ALTERNATIVE (DISJUNCTIVE) QUESTION

1. Alternative questions are formed by adding **or**. E.g.: Is she a teacher **or** a doctor? Did you travel by train **or** by bus? Do you go in for swimming **or** wrestling?
2. Alternative question offers two (or more) variations of answers and consists of two (or more) general questions. E.g.: Shall we go by bus or by train? (= or shall we go by train) Are you laughing or crying? (= or are you crying)
3. We can form alternative question by adding "**not**". E.g.: Did you go there **or not**? Have you done the homework **or not**?

TAG QUESTION

1. Tag questions are formed by adding mini-questions on the end of the positive or negative sentences. E.g.: You are a student, **aren't you?** It was a nice day, **wasn't it?**
2. Normally we use a positive question tag with a negative sentence. E.g.: Tom won't be late, **will he?** They don't like us, **do they?**
3. Normally we use a negative question tag with a positive sentence. E.g.: Ann will arrive soon, **won't she?** Bob should pass his exam, **shouldn't he?**
4. After **Let's ...** the question tag is **shall we?:** - Let's go out for a walk, **shall we?**
5. After the imperative (do/don't do sometimes) the tag is **will you?:** - Open the door, **will you?** Don't be late, **will you?**

*Notice that we say **aren't I?** (-am I not): I am late, **aren't I?***

SPECIAL (WH) QUESTION

Special questions are formed using the following interrogative pronouns:

1. a) Who, what, which and whose are used as the **subject** (ega) and they require the verb in third person singular. E.g.: Who lives in this house? - The Smiths **do**. Who helped you? - Mr. White **did**. If pronouns **who** and **what** refer to complement the verb can be in singular or plural due to the answer. E.g.: Who are his friends? - Mark and John.
- b) Who, what, which, whose pronouns do not require the auxiliary verb **do**. E.g.: Who knows this man? - I **do**. What day comes after Friday? - Saturday **does**. Who invited you? - Mr. Tomas **did**.
- c) Who, what, which, whose pronouns are used as the **object** (to'ldiruvchi) and require the auxiliary verb **do**. Who **did** you go there with? Who **did** you call for help? What **do** you have for breakfast? Which/what train **do** you take? Which bread **do** you want — white or brown? What language **did** you speak in? What course **do** you study at? Whose daughter **did** you see there?

d) What is used as the **predicate** (kesim). E.g.: What are you doing? – I **am reading**. What do you usually do after classes? – I **go home** immediately. What does he do? – He teaches at school. *Compare: What is she? – She is a dentist. Who is she? – She is my sister.*

2. Where, when, why, what kind of, how (~ well, ~ often) are used as **adverbial modifier** of time, place, manner and purpose (payt, o'rin, holat, maqsad). E.g.: Where do you study? Where have you been? When did you graduate from the university? Why did you go there? How do you do? How often do you have English? – We have English once a week. How well does he translate from English into Uzbek? – He can't translate.

Compare: What flower are you fond of? – I am fond of rose. What kind of flower are you fond of? I am fond of a sweet flower.

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Put general questions to the following statements.

1. Mrs. Green is ill. 2. These students are very intelligent. 3. He has never been to Moscow. 4. Mr. White can not receive the delegates now. 5. They didn't participate in the competition. 6. It is cold today. 7. Little children are indulge in sweets. 8. My parents are leaving for Tashkent in a day. 9. She takes her daughter to the park every Sunday. 10. They are at home.

Ex. 2. Put general questions in negative form to the following statements.

Model. 1. He didn't write a letter. → Didn't he write a letter?

1. You are not sure. 2. The doctor hasn't arrived yet. 3. You don't see me. 4. You don't listen to me. 5. She didn't recognize you. 6. He hasn't recovered yet. 7. The injection was not effective enough. 8. You are not taking the pills regularly.

Ex. 3. Put disjunctive questions to the following statements.

Model. 1. He is studying medicine. → Is he studying medicine or law? → Is he studying medicine or not?

1. His wife is a nurse (dentist). 2. My father is a surgeon (a therapist). 3. Mr. White is an experienced therapist. 4. My sister is going to become a doctor (pediatrician). 5. My nephew is in hospital now (in bed). 6. Their niece is interested in medicine (geography). 7. My brother-in law has cured many patients. 8. Her granny prepares herbal medicine from native-grasses. 9. She has burnt her hand (leg). 10. A snake has bitten you (your friend).

Ex.4. Write special questions to the subjects of the sentences in bold type.

Model: They have translated the article. → Who has translated the article?

1. **They** learn English. 2. **My father** works at an office. 3. **Mrs. Taylor** is fond of gardening. 4. **We** are interested in history. 5. **These engineers** work at this plant. 6. **Our dean** is always short of time. 7. **You** must come on time. 8. **My little sister** can read. 9. **All of them** go in for sports. 10. **Mrs. Clark** baked pumpkin pies. 11. **My brother** is eager to start schooling. 12. **These students** are my classmates. 13. **Winter** comes after autumn. 14. **I** am sorry for my being late. 15. **The Titanic** hit an iceberg during its first trip across the Atlantic. 16. **My parents** are against our marriage. 17. **The house** is close to the park. 18. **They** are repairing their garage.

Ex. 5. Write special questions to the predicates of the sentences in bold type.

Model: Dr. Smith will operate the patient next week. → What will Dr. Smith do next week?

1. They are **working** in the garden. 2. The students will **take part** in this conference. 3. Mr. White has just **arrived** from Mexico. 4. They have **put** new tiles on the floor. 5. She **decided** to enter to the institute of foreign languages. 6. The Albinas **are closing down** their textile factory. 7. My aunt has never **traveled** by plane. 8. She can not **be waiting** for us. 9. They **built** a new house in one day. 10. Helen **roasted** chicken and **invited** her close friends for her birthday party.

Ex. 6. Write special questions to the objects of the sentences in bold type. (Use: what, who, whom, for whom, to whom)

Model: He bought some pills for his daughter. →What did he buy for his daughter. →Who did he buy some pills for?

1. He gave **me** a good advice.
2. The doctor prescribed him **some medicine**.
3. They watched **the match** on TV.
4. They have bought a new **car**.
5. My **little** brother likes **porridge**.
6. The Smiths owe a **rancho**.
7. Alice missed **the lecture**.
8. Andrew sang his favorite song **for us**.
9. She invited **me** to her birthday party.
10. The lecture explained **the theme** in details.
11. I usually go to the university with **my friend**.

Ex. 7. Open the brackets to make special questions.

Model: (How) Helen looks ill. →How does she look?

1. (How)I go home **on foot**.
2. (When)We shall discuss the accident **tomorrow**.
3. (How well) She performed her act **perfectly**.
3. (How well) Mr. Green pulls out a tooth **without pain**.
4. (How often) We go to see our doctor **twice a month**.
5. (What) My aunt is fond of **detective** films.
6. (Where) My granny lives **in the country**.
7. (How many) I have **six** cousins.
8. (At what time) He gets up at seven o'clock.
9. (When)We have lessons **in the afternoon**.
10. (How) My sister writes very **slowly**.
11. (Which of you) **Three of us** participated in the contest.
12. (Which of them) Andrew and Brain couldn't pass the examination.
13. (When) My father usually comes home **late at night**.
14. (What kind of) Her husband drives an **expensive car**.

Ex. 8. Write special questions as in the model.

Model: My sister is a nurse. →Who is a nurse?

My sister is a nurse. → What is she?

1. **His mother** is a children's doctor.
2. **These men** are engenders.
3. His wife is a **surgeon**.
4. My uncle is a **driver**.
5. **Her mother** is a tailor.
6. His father is a **butcher**.
7. **Our parents** are bakers.
8. My **nephew** is a fashion model.
9. My sister-in law is a **hairstylist**.
10. My **friend's father** is a carpenter.
11. **Their son-in law** is a therapist.
12. My brother-in law is a **builder**.

Ex. 9. Put question tags.

Model: He teaches at school. → He teaches at school, doesn't he?

1. This man is your uncle. 2. Their father repaired the bathroom. 3. She can not translate this text. 4. Mr. John has just received the guests. 5. The boy didn't take the medicine. 6. The shop will be closing down for good on Saturday. 7. The two ministers didn't close with each other until near the end of the meeting. 8. She uses her glasses for reading. 9. The doctor advised Jim to stay away from fattening foods. 10. There were many patients in the reception yesterday. 11. The weather is warm in spring. 12. The factories have polluted the air. 13. She has broken her ankle. 14. Tom has not recovered yet. 15. You have a headache.

Spring Victory



Jesse Stuart (1907-1984) began writing in his spare time between chores on the family's farm in Kentucky. Sometimes he **scratched** poems on tobacco leaves and potato **sacks**. At the age of seventeen, he became a schoolteacher. Most of Stuart's stories are about the hard working farmers of the Kentucky hills. In "Spring Victory" one farm family struggles for survival. What difficulties do they face? What personal qualities help them to succeed?

"I do not know what to do," Mom said. We have just enough bread for three more days. We don't have anything else to eat with our bread. This is a terrible winter and your father down sick."

Mom sat on the chair and looked at the fireplace. "I'll have to think of something. You children run along and play. Leave me alone to think." We went out and talked until we got cold. The weather was cold and Sophie began to **shiver**. At last Mom called us in. She got up from the chair and walked toward Pa's bed. She gave Pa the **pills** and poured a glass of water from a pitcher. "Do you **feel** any better, Mick?" Mom asked. "No, I don't. I feel weak as water. I have **aches and pains** all over." Pa looked **pale** and said, "We have not enough firewood

and food for the family.” “We are **getting along** all right,” Mom said. “Don’t worry, Mick. You won’t **recover** if you **keep on** worrying.”

“I can not **keep** from worrying,” Pa said. “Here I am down sick and can not **get** out of bed. Crops **failed** us last year and we don’t have bread for the children. And I have never seen such snow on the ground. This is dark winter to me.” Pa closed his eyes, Mom **took his temperature**.

She called us. I and Sophie approached her calmly. “Sophie can do the cooking,” Mom said. You can bake bread and cook potatoes, can not you?

“Yes, Mom.”

“And you can use **ax**. You are already ten years old, are not you” Mom looked at me.

“It is easy for me to **chop** with my ax.”

“Then you take your ax and go to the hills,” Mom said. “You can find **white-oaks** there. Cut them down, **trim** them and carry them here. We are going to make **baskets** out of them.”

I put on my warm clothes and went to the hills. I cut twelve white-oak **saplings**, and trimmed their branches and slid them toward the barn. Mom started to work immediately. Sophie cooked supper that night I milked the cow. The doctor came, **tested** Pa’s **blood pressure**, **checked his lungs** and gave an **injection** to **bring down the fever**.

The next day I **saddled** the horse and rode to Greenwood with four baskets. Every weekday, I took baskets to Greenwood. I sold them almost any place I stopped. I learned to take **orders** for the next day and I learned to be a good salesman. I learned to do the shopping and we saved enough money to buy corn and **fodder** for our **livestock**.

Mom would **weave** baskets on the long winter evenings. Sophie and I would trim the branches. It was fun for us to do this around the fire. And Pa **got better** and better. The spring was coming Pa talked more to Mom now than ever.

“Go to Greenwood and get the Doctor,” Mon said one day. “Get on **Fred** and hurry to town!”

“Is Pa worse?” I asked.

“Don’t ask questions but hurry,” Mom said. I rode Fred over the snow as fast as I could. I got Doctor Morris out of bed. He rode his horse and we **raced** back. It was some time before daylight when I heard a baby cry.

“I hear a baby crying, Sophie,” I said.

“Yes, didn’t you know?”

“Come in, you children,” Doctor Morris said. “You will be very happy when you see the big fine brother I have brought you.”

Sophie and I ran into the room to see our brother. There was a smile on Mom’s lips. The baby cried like he was **mad** at everything.

It was March and the sun was shining. The snow melted and the snow-water ran in **tiny** streams. There was more color in Pa’s face now. **Flesh** was coming back to his skeleton. Violets were in bloom, the trees were in blossom.

(source: Enjoying Literature /Macmillan literature series 1985/ p.32)

DIALOGUE

Doctor: Good evening. What is the **trouble**?

Patient: I do’t know. I don’t feel well. I have lost my appetite and I don’t sleep very well. I have a bad **cough** and a pain in my chest sometimes when I **breathe**.

Doctor: I see. Very well. You had better have a **thorough** examination. Let me see your **tongue** ... Yes, your **stomach** is a little **out of order** ... Now your pulse ... Yes, that’s all right. Now just **unfasten** your coat and shirt and I will listen to your **heart** and **chest**... Do you smoke a lot?

Patient: Well rather a lot, I am afraid.

Doctor: H’m! You ought to **give up** smoking, at least for a time. Let me see your **throat**. Open your mouth. Say “Ah!”

Patient: Ah! Ah!

Doctor: All right, that will do. Do you **lose weight**?

Patient: No, I don’t lose or **gain** at least never more than half a kilo or so.

Doctor: Well, there is nothing serious the matter with you. You need a real rest. I'll **prescribe** you a medicine that will help you. Take the medicine three times a day after meals. **Keep to a diet** of salads and fruit, very little meat. **Keep of** alcohol, drink plenty of milk and not too much coffee; get plenty of fresh air and plenty of sleep.

Patient: **As the matter of fact**, a friend of mine has invited me to come and stay with his family in their cottage near the town.

Doctor: That's just the thing. But remember, **take it easy**. Not too much swimming or tennis, at least for a week or two. I will see you again when you come back, just **to make sure** you are all right. You are welcome.

Patient: Thank you very much. Good evening.

VOCABULARY

shiver v. [ˈʃɪvə] - qaltiramoq, e.g. He is shivering with cold. *Syn.* to tremble, to shudder, to start; shuddering/starting E.g.: The child was shivering with cold.

pill n. [pɪl] - hapdori, (tabletka)

feel v. [fi:l] (felt / felt) - a) sezmoq, tuymoq, tuyulmoq, his qilmoq - feel the pulse of smb – kimnidir pulsni o'Ichab ko'rmoq *Syn.*: experience, sense, perceive E.g.: How do you feel about this problem? Your hand feels cold. Velvet feels soft. - feel fine - feel bad - feel low - feel quite oneself - feel angry - feel certain - feel tired

ache n./v. [eɪk] - og'riq / og'rimoq (doimiy og'riq) headache, toothache, stomachache, backache, earache, e.g. I had a strong headache yesterday. But: to have a sore throat, eye, finger, etc., e.g. I can not speak, I have a sore throat.

pain n. [peɪn] - to feel (have) a bad (sharp. slight) pain in ..., e.g. I feel a sharp pain in my left knee. My leg gives me much pain. *painful* *adj.*

pale n. [peɪl] - so'niq, oqargan, rangpar, pale face *Syn.*: weak, feeble *Ant.*: colourful

get along v. [get ə'lon] - 1) yashamoq / ko'nikmoq e.g.: I'll get along somehow. 2) uddalamoq; ulgurmoq e.g.: How is your work getting along? — Ishlaringiz qanday ketyapti? How is Tom getting along with his new book?

recover v. 1) o'ziga kelmoq, o'z holiga qaytmoq, qaytadan tiklanmoq e.g.: After the operation he recovered immediately. I doubt whether he will recover. *Syn:* get better, get over e.g: He recovered her from a painful disease. I must work hard to recover lost time.

2) ko'rilgan zararni qopla(t)moq (*huquqqa oid*) to recover damages for false imprisonment — nohaq qamoqqa olinganligi uchun ko'rilgan zararni qoplatmoq

keep on doing smth. v. davom etmoq E.g.: He kept on reading.

keep from doing smth. v. E.g: I can not keep from thinking (loughing, admiring).

O'ylamasdan turolmayman (kulmoasdan,...).

fail n./ v. [feɪl] - omadsizlik, yetishmaslik / omadsizlikka uchramoq, pand bermoq, e.g. He failed to keep his word. If only my memory does not fail me. But take care not to fail me. He failed to realize the seriousness of the problem. All my effort failed me.

take one's (or smb.'s) temperature ['tempɪtʃə]— haroratni o'lchab ko'rmoq

oak n. [əʊk] - eman (daraxt)

trim v.[trɪm] - butamoq, kesmoq, tarashlamoq, qisqartmoq, bezatmoq, bezak bermoq, kallaklamoq, to trim the hedges — devorgullarga shakl bermoq *Syn:* thrash - trim away - trim off - trim down n. soch turmagi, bayramona kiyim, tashqi ko'rinish, e.g. She saw him in his travelling trim.

basket n. ['bɑ:skɪt] - savat (basketball)

sapling n. ['sæplɪŋ] - navda, nihol, tayoq, o'spirin

teste one's blood pressure [bɪʌd 'preʃə] — qon bosimni o'lcha(maq)b ko'rmoq

check one's lungs — kimningdir o'pkasini tekshir(moq)ib ko'rmoq

injection n. [ɪn'dʒekʃ(ə)n] - ineksiya, ukol to administer, give an injection — ukol qilmoq to get an injection — ukol olmoq

bring down the fever ['fi:və] — istimani tushurmoq

saddle n./v. ['sædl] - egar, egarlamoq e.g. They saddled a gentle pony for the child.

fodder n./v. ['fɒdə] - chorva uchun ozuqa (yem), yemlamoq

livestock n. [laɪvstɒk] — chorva (eshak, mol, ot, tuya...)

weave v. [wi:v] (weaved; wove - woven) - to'qimoq, e.g. She wove a basket for us. — U bizga savat to'qib berdi. She wove the story around a specific theme. — U mavzuga oid ertak to'qidi. She wants to weave a scarf from this wool. to weave a web — to'r to'qimoq (o'rgimchak) to weave a cocoon — pilla o'ramoq

race n./v. [reis] -poyga, raqobat; poygalashmoq, musobaqalashmoq, raqobatlashmoq e.g. The race for the presidency was run between well qualified candidates. Jim was worried about racing against the best runners from other countries. I will race you to that tree.

mad adj. [mæd] - aqilsiz, esi yoq, ahmoq, aqildan ozgudek sevuvchi, o'lguday yoqtiradigan, e.g. I'm mad about The Beatles. I'm mad about collecting stamps. to fall/go/run mad — aqildan ozmoq to send/drive smb. mad — kimnidir aqildan ozdirmoq, e.g. She is mad for the boy next door.

flesh n./v. [fleʃ] - et, go'sht, tana, Syn: to lose flesh — ozmoq, to make flesh, gain flesh, put on flesh — to'lishmoq, tana qo'ymoq, semirmoq; semirmoq, e.g. Better health has fleshed her face out a little. — Uning sog'lig'i yaxshilanib yuzi biroz to'lishdi. Syn: fatten

trouble n. ['trʌbl] - a) tashvish, qayg'u, bezovtalik, muammo, e.g. She kept her troubles to herself. — U o'z qaygusiga birovni sherik qilmasdi. Syn: worry, grief, distress e.g.: You've caused us a lot of trouble. — Siz bizga kup tashvish keltirdingiz. The trouble is that — Muammo shundaki Your trouble is that that you take everything to heart. — Muammoingiz shundaki, siz hamma narsani ko'ngilga olasiz. Syn: misfortune , calamity b) ko'ngilsizlik, noqulaylik, e.g. Students made much trouble during the examination. Syn: disturbance, disorder, c) kasallik, e.g. Her husband had never before had any heart trouble.. d) qiyinchilik e.g. I had some trouble in reading his handwriting.

trouble v. tashvishlantirmoq, bezovta qlmoq, halaqit bermoq • Syn: bother, worry, disturb, annoy e.g. Let me trouble you with one more question. Physics doesn't trouble me at all.

cough n./ v. [kʌf] - yo'tal, yo'talmoq

breathe *n.* [breθ] - nafas *v.* [bri:ð] nafas olmoq, breathe in (out) – nafas olmoq (chiqarmoq), nafas rostlamoq, dam olmoq e.g. He stopped to breathe his horse.

thorough *adj.* [ˈθʌrə] - to'liq, batafsil, hartomomlama, mutlaqo, asosli, e.g. His knowledge of French literature is extensive and thorough. E.g.: Her daughter was a thorough coquette.

thoroughly *adv.* [ˈθʌrəli] E.g.: The doctor examined me thoroughly.

tongue *n.* [tʌŋ] - til

stomach *n.* [ˈstʌmək] – qorin, oshqozon stomach ache; chidamoq, toqat qilmoq e.g. He could not stomach the study of the Latin language. Syn: endure, tolerate, stand for

out of order – joyida emas e.g. His health is out of order.

unfasten *v.* [ˈʌnˈfɑ:sn] - a) echmoq, bo'shatmoq (tugunni, tugmalarni, bog'ichni) E.g.: The man began to unfasten the boat. From this time my lips shall not unfasten till I die. to unfasten a dress Syn: unbutton

heart *n.* [hɑ:t] - yurak (tana a'zosi); to transplant a heart — yurakni ko'chirib o'tkasmog healthy, strong heart — sog'lom (baquvvat) yurak, weak heart — kuchsiz (nimjon) yurak, artificial heart — suniy yurak; qalb e.g. In my heart I know that she is right. — Ko'nglim sezib turibdi u haq. Syn: disposition, soul, spirit b) jasorat, jurat e.g. I didn't have the heart to tell her. Syn: courage, resolve c) qalb, yurak with all one's heart — chin yurakdan, by heart — yoddan, take smth. to heart — jiddiy qabul qilmoq (ko'ngilga olmoq)

chest *n.* [tʃest] - 1) ko'krak qafasi, pain-chest — ko'krak qafasidagi o'g'riq 2) yashiq, quti, sandiq; surgeon's chest — xirurg asboblari solinadigan jomadon, tool chest — asboblari solinadigan yashiq, chest of drawers – tortma Syn: trunk, box, coffer 3) g'aznachilik, g'azna, kassa, fond Syn: treasury

give up *v.* to'htatmoq, voz kechmoq, yuz o'girmoq

throat *n.* [θrəʊt] tomoq; e.g. A bone stuck in my throat — Tomog'imga suyak tiqilib qoldi. red throat — kasallangan tomoq, sore throat — angina (faringit), strep throat — o'tkir angina e.g. Last year she had throats and coughs.

weight *n.* [weɪt] – vazn, og'irlik lose (gain) ... vazn yo'qatmoq, ozmoq (semirmoq)

prescribe v. [prɪsˈkraɪb] - 1) dori yozib bermoq (to, for – biror kimga; for – biror nimaga qarshi) e.g. The doctor prescribed painkillers for my headache. Syn: recommend 2) topshiriq bermoq, ko'rsatma bermoq, cheklab qoymoq, cheklov belgilamoq, ramkaga solib qoymoq e.g. It is prescribed by law. Syn: order, direct, appoint

prescription n. [prɪsˈkrɪpʃ(ə)n] - resept, me'yoriy hujjat, ko'rsatma, tavsiya, yozilgan qonun, tartib positive (negative) prescription - tavsiyanoma

keep to a **diet** of [ˈdaɪət]– dieta saqlamoq

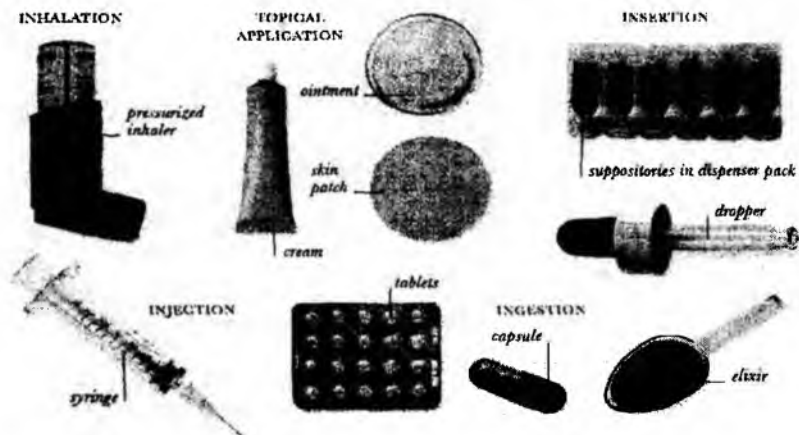
keep of v. [ki:p] - saqlanmoq, o'zini tiymoq

as the matter of fact - aslida

take it easy – engil qabul qilmoq, o'ziga olmaslik

make sure [ʃuə] – ishonch hosil qilmoq

TOPICAL VOCABULARY (I)



treat, treatment, cure, cure for, complain, suffer, die, be the matter with, reject, developed a fever, keep off, give up, cause, injection directly into the bloodstream, make an appointment with, avoid, appendicitis, attack of smth., case of disease, surgery, symptom, shiver, tonic, treat (smb. for a disease), treatment (for smth.), typhoid pain, tremble

Illnesses (sickness, disease): appendicitis, attack (of smth), cholera, cough, diphtheria, insomnia, scarlet fever, sneeze, sore (throat, eye, finger, etc.) typhoid fever, cancer, measles, tuberculosis, rheumatism

Drugs: capsule, pill, tablets, insertion, elixir, dropper, syringe, injection

WORD COMBINATIONS

to have (got) a headache	to catch a cold	to fill smb.'s tooth
to take one's (or smb.'s) temperature	to be short of breath to get rid of	to have one's tooth filled
to bring down the fever	to breath in deeply	to pull (take) out a tooth
to be in (a) good (bad) condition	to follow the doctor's directions	to have one's tooth pulled out
to be in no condition to do smth.	to examine a patient (smb's throat, etc.)	to be (have one's teeth, chest, heart) X-rayed
to give smth. up	to consult (see) a doctor	to test smb.'s blood
to take smth. easy	to have a nervous breakdown	to have one's blood tested
to feel smb.'s pulse	to keep to a dieat; to be on a dieat, to go on a diet	to test smb.'s blood pressure
to write out a prescription (for pills, etc.)	to feel sick to be taken ill	to have one's blood pressure tested
to go to the chemist's (drugstore)	to have a prescription made up / to be subject to colds (headaches, ets.)	to make an appointment with a doctor

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Change the sentences according to the model using “to have smth. done” construction.

Model: The dentist pulled my tooth. → I had my tooth pulled.

1. The surgeon operated his heart. 2. The doctor felt her pulse. 3. The nurse tested my blood pressure. 4. The dentist is going to fill my tooth. 5. They will check the patient's lung. 6. The doctor X-rayed my brother's chest.

Ex. 2. Give advice and suggest what each one should do. Follow the model.

Model: - I am aching all over. - You had better go to see a doctor.

1. Ann's grandmother has got a bad attack of flu. 2. John's little brother has a very bad sore throat and a bad cough. 3. John has hurt his arm badly while playing volley-ball. He thinks he has broken it. 4. The doctor has given you a prescription. 5. You feel hot. 6. Mary has a headache.

Ex. 3. Compose your own sentences using the following substitution table.

You	had better	go to see the doctor at once.
He		take this medicine for your (his, her) cough.
She		keep the bed for a week.
They		take your (his, her, etc.) temperature.
We		keep to a diet.
Your sister		have your (his, her, etc.) tooth pulled out.
Your brother		have your (his, her, etc.) blood pressure tested

Ex. 4. Insert English equivalents of the Uzbek words in brackets.

1. What is the trouble? – I have a (og'riq) in my chest and rather a bad cough that I can not (qutilmoq). Are you doing anything for it? – I just drink hot milk with (asal). It is (yaxshi davolash) for it. 2. The doctor (tekshirmoq) the patient. He (sezmoq) his pulse and (eshitmoq) his heart and chest. He (yozib bermoq) him

some medicine to take before meals. 3. You (shamolamoq). You must (o'ranib yotmoq) and in a day or two you will (sog'aymoq). 4. Why does she look so (yomon) today. – Is she (betob)? – No, she is just (chrchamoq). 5. I am sure you feel (sog'lom) after two months' rest/ - Indeed, I feel very (yaxshi) now. 6. I think I am (semirmoq). – In this case you had better (dieta saqlamoq).

Ex. 5. Insert prepositions where necessary.

1. Take these tablets ... your cough, to be ... the safe side. Otherwise you may fall ill ... flu. It is strange that you can not get rid ... it ... such a long time. 2. He is ill ... quinsy a very severe form. He has to stay ... bed ... two weeks. 3. The doctor gave him a sick-note because he has a very serious complication ... his heart ... quinsy. 4. As you are subject ... colds you must see the doctor ... once. 5. I see you are constantly suffering (aziyyat chekmoq) ... your liver. 6. If you complain (nolimoq) ... an earache, go and have this prescription made up ... the chemist's. 7. I feel I am aching all ... and running a temperature. I think we must call ... a doctor. 8. If you do not want to put ... weight, stop eating so much bread and pastry. Cut it ... to the minimum. 9. Well, Julian, your temperature is not much above normal. Nothing to worry ... , but I think you had better go ... bed at once. A little rest will do a world ... good. If it is a touch of flu, it may develop ... something serious. Off to bed then, and I'll make you a hot drink.

Ex. 6. Translate into English.

1. Kecha ukam kasal bo'lib qoldi. Uning harorati ko'tarildi. Oyim uni haroratini o'lchab ko'rdi. Dadam doctor chaqirdi. Doktor ukamni obdon tekshirdi, istimasini tuchirish uchun ukol qildi va dori yozib berdi. 2. Nima bo'ldi, kecha darsga kelmading? – Uyda qolishimga to'g'ri keldi. Oyim betob bo'lib qoldi. Oyimni zudlik bilan shifoxonaga olib bordik. Hakim oyimni pulsini o'lchab ko'rdi, yurak va ko'krak qafasini eshitdi. Oyim o'zini yomon his qildi. Hamshira og'riq qoldiradigan hapdori berdi. 3. Doktor bugun bemorlarni qabul qilolmaydi. U juda band. Siz yaxshisi boshqa shifoxonaga boring. 4. Bu hapdori kuni uch

mahal ovqatdan oldin iching. Ishonamanki, tezda sog'ayib ketasiz. 5. Janob Smisni yuragi tez-tez xuruj qilib turadi. U yuragini rengen qildirishi lozim. 6. Nimaga bunaqa yo'talyapsiz? – Bilmadim, anchadan beri bu yo'tal meni bezovta qiladi, undan qutila olmayapman (avoid). – Siz yaxshisi doktorga ko'ring. U sizning yo'talingizga qarshi dori yozib beradi. Dorilarni vaqtida ichsangiz tezda sog'ayib ketasiz. 7. Qara, singling qaltirayapti. U shamollagan ko'rinadi. – doctor chaqiraymi? – Yoq, uni yotgani ma'qul, o'zim dori tayyorlab beraman. Doktorni bezovta qilmaganimiz ma'qul. 8. Ovqatlanaylik? – Yoq, nimagadir ishtaham yo'q. – Toliqqan ko'rinasan, nima bo'ldi? Kecha ko'p ovqat yegandim, oshqozonim og'riyapti. – Dieta saqlasang yaxshi bo'lardi, bo'lmasa semirib ketasan. 9. Tog'am bel og'rig'idan qiynaladi. - U umurtqasini operatsiya qildirishi kerak. Lekin operatsiya juda murakkab va qimmat bo'ladi deb qo'rqaman. 10. Doktor, o'g'limni tomog'i og'riyapti istimasi ham baland. – Hechqisi yo'q, o'zingizga olmang. Bolalar tez-tez shamollab turishadi. Qani og'zingni ochchi. Yaxshi, endi ko'ylagini yeching, ko'krak qafasini eshitib ko'raman. Nafas ol, hafas chiqar, bo'ldi. –Janob, kasali xavfli emasmi? – Uni anginasini bor, dori yozib beraman. Bu dorilarni vaqtida ichsa tezda sog'ayib ketadi. 11. Salom, Meri. Juda o'zgarib ketibsan, sog'lom ko'rinasan. Ilgarilari sog'lig'ingdan ko'p nolirding. – Ha, ancha o'zgardim. Diyeta qilyapman, alkagol va sigaretni tashladim, har tong mashq qilyapman. 12. Kechalari tish og'rig'i bezovta qilyapti, uxlayolmadim. – Unday bo'lsa tish shifokoriga bor. Tishingni oldirma. Yaxshisi tishingni plo'mbalatgin.

Ex. 7. Read and translate the text into Uzbek. Chose one and try to retell it.

Leaving the Hospital!

The "big day" has arrived for Agnes Cole. She is finally leaving the hospital after a long illness. Her husband, Clark, is pushing her in a wheelchair. They say good-bye to the nurse as they pass by on their way to the hospital entrance. Clark has parked the car there. Agnes was ill for more than six weeks. The doctors were not certain about her illness. At first, they thought that she needed an operation.

Finally, after many tests, the doctors gave her some new drugs. Now, she is nearly well-only a little weak!

A visit to the Dentist

Hardly anyone likes to go the dentist. Maxine White is no exception. But today is the day that she has been dreading. She has to have some work done on her teeth. Seating in the dentist's chair, Maxine decides that her fears were unnecessary. Dr. Fawcett, her dentist, is very skillful and gentle. Maxine feels no pain. Today, Maxine is going to have two teeth filled. Dr. Fawcett suggests that she have her teeth cleaning. Maxine will make an appointment to come back next week, but next time she wouldn't be afraid.

Lesson Nine



Statement

I		(that)	he is a good student. she can speak English well. the students must work more at their pronunciation. Tom must be in room 7.
We	say		
You	tell him		
They			
He	says		
She	tells me		

General questions in indirect speech

I We You They Mary and Bob	ask	if (whether)	the weather is fine. Alice speaks French. the students are free on Sunday.
He (She) Mary Mr. Brown	asks		Tom likes to play chess. the children can skate well.

Special questions in indirect speech

He My friend Our teacher	asks (me)	where my parents live. why I am late. where my father works. what newspaper I read.
--------------------------------	-----------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Imperative sentences in indirect speech

He	asks me	to wait for him.
She	tells me	to do it at once.
Father		
You they	ask me	not to go there alone.
The students	tell me	not to stay there any longer.

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Report the following requests or commands. Use *tell* and *ask*.

1. "Do the exercise again," said the teacher to me.
2. The teacher says, "Peter, pick up the papers, will you?"
3. The teacher said, "Please, don't shut the window, will you?"
4. "Please, don't speak all at a time, raise your hands," said the teacher.
5. Mother said, "Cyril, behave yourself, will you?"
6. Mother said, "Cyril, go and wash your face and brush your hair."
7. "Stop banging the door, Brain," said Helen.
8. Mother said, "Alice, don't interrupt the grown-ups."
9. "Nina, don't

waste your time,” said her mother. 10. The office worker said to me, “Please, fill in this form and apply to next window, will you?”

Ex. 2. Report these statements using the verbs *say* or *tell* in the Present Indefinite Tense.

Model: It is a bit cold today. I am going to wear a pull-over.

David says (that) it is a bit cold today. He is going to wear a pull-over.

You always forget everything, Alice.

Mother tells Alice that she always forgets everything.

1. We have translated the article and done all the exercises. 2. I've watched this hockey match on TV. 3. I have been looking for you everywhere, Tomas. 4. I have posted your letter, Granny. 5. We shall wait for another bus. 5. It may rain any minute. 6. You mustn't cross on the red light, Rita. 7. If you come across unfamiliar words, you may look them up in the dictionary. 8. I couldn't call Nelly as I don't know her telephone number.

Ex. 3. Use the following questions in indirect speech according to the given model. Make all the necessary changes.

Model: The teacher asks: “Do you know any English words?”

The teacher asks if I know any English words.

1. Tom asks: “Do you know English well?” 2. “Do you have any complains to make?” the manger asks the customer. 3. “Are we going to have a written test?” we asked our teacher. 4. My friend asks: “Are you free on Sunday?” 5. The teacher asks: “Are there any mistakes in spelling on the blackboard?” 6. Mr. Green asks Alan: “Is your father fond of gardening?” 7. “Did you take part in the seminar?” I ask Helen. 8. The boy asks his sister: “Do you see anything on the table?” 10. The doctor asks the patient: “Have you ever had such heart attack before?” 11. Tom asks his father: “May I go for a walk?” 12. Helen asks her mother: “Must I wash the laundry today?”

Ex. 4. Report these questions using the reporting verbs **ask, wonder**.

1. "How long does it usually take to learn to skate?" Andy asked, the physical culture teacher. 2. "How long have you been waiting?" Alice asked me. 3. "What mark have you got?" Mark wanted to know. 4. "Where will you go for your summer holiday?" my friend asked me. 5. "When will you be seeing Mary again?" Nina asked me. 6. "What does your husband do for a- living?" I asked her. 7. "Who is England' s greatest dramatist?" the literature teacher asked. 8. "How long have you been learning English?" the Englishman asked me. 9. "When do you expect to hear the results of the examination?" Mother asked me. 10. "Who is the tall girl at the front desk?" the new pupil asked me. 11. "What time is it?" I asked the girl next to me. 12. "Why are you looking pale? What's the matter?" asked Mother. 13. "What size gloves do you wear?" asked the salesgirl. 14. "How long have you been feeling bad?" the doctor asked. 15. "What do you do in your spare time?" Larry asked me. 16. "How many English books have you read since September?" the teacher wanted to know. 17. "What are the advantages of the radio set with transistors?" the customer asked the salesman. 18. "How many people are coming to your party?" Mother asked me. 19. "Who told you about the exhibition?" I asked Nora, 20. "How can we get to the nearest Metro station?" we asked a passer-by.

SPORT

The youth in Uzbekistan have a great sporting **chance**. Physical training and sports have become a **matter of national importance**. Millions of people go in for various kinds of sports.



The ancients said, "A sound mind in a sound body". Therefore we begin to teach our children to love sport since early childhood. In kindergartens the child takes his first sporting **steps** – he learns to run, jump and dance.

Throughout school and college sport is a compulsory subject. Thousands of school children **compete** on different kinds of sports to take **an opportunity** to participate in the republican **contest** "Umid nihollari". The students of academic lyceums and vocational colleges compete in sport festival "Barkamol avlod." "Universiada" is also one of the nation's greatest **championship** that **takes place** every four year. All these competitions are colorful and **exciting** and attract huge crowds of students and big TV audience.

As a **spectator sport**, football is **extremely** popular, especially among men. Women sometimes complain that during the football season their husbands are always glued to the TV or at the stadium. Nearly every region and district has a professional men's team and there is a stadium in every village. In addition, women's professional football is also becoming **popular**.

Tennis, basketball, volleyball, boxing, wrestling, kurash, chess, judo and some kinds of water sports are popular in Uzbekistan. Kurash, horse racing and Kupkari (racing and fighting on horses) are national sports and traditions of Uzbek holidays and **weddings**. These national sports involve **speed**, high **skill**, strong **muscles** and **enthusiasm**. Finally, many Uzbek people enjoy the great outdoors at home by farming and gardening.

DIALOG

Phil: Say, what is your favorite sport?

Jack: Hmm... it is hard to say, I like golf a lot-but I guess I like tennis better.

Phil: Do you play much tennis?

Jack: Yes, quite a bit. How about a game sometime?

Phil: Sorry. I am strictly a spectator-football. Baseball, basketball, golf...

I watch them all.

VOCABULARY

chance *n.* [tʃɑ:ns] - 1) imkoniyat, kutilmagan vaziyat 2) taqdir, omad, mavofaqqiyat, umid; give me a/another chance! — Yana bir imkoniyat bering! to

stand a good chance — yaxshi imkoniyatga ega bo'lmoq; earthly, poor, slight, slim chance — umid kam; even chance — tang imkoniyat; fair (good) chance — yaxshi imkoniyat; last chance — ohirgi imkoniyat; only chance — faqat bir imkoniyat; sporting chance — sport bilan shug'ullanish imkoniyati; theory of (probability) chances — ehtimollar nazariyasi / a matter of national importance — milliy ahamiyatga molik masala, ant: of no importance

step *n.* [step] - qadam, odim *v.* qadam tashlamoq, odimlamoq

throughout — *prep.* [θru(:)'aut] - 1) bo'ylab; hartomonlama cities throughout Uzbekistan — O'zbekistan bo'ylab barcha shaharlarda 2) mobaynida (vaqt) throughout her life — hayoti davomida

compete *v.* [kəm'pi:t] - 1) musobaqalashmoq e.g. Runners from many countries are competing for the international prize. — Turli mamlakatlardan yuguruvchilar xalqaro sovrinni olish uchun musobaqalashishadi. Jim competed with the world's best swimmers in the Games, and did well to come third. — Jim dunyoning eng kuchli suzuvchilari bilan musobaqalashdi, uning uchinchi o'rinni olishi yaxshi natija. Syn: contend, oppose, rival, vie Ant: coincide, collaborate, co-operate to compete in the Olympic Games — Olimpiada Oyinlarida qatnashmoq, to compete with others for a prize — sovrin uchun musobaqalashmoq • - compete against - compete with

competition *n.* [kəm'pi:tʃ(ə)n] - musobaqa

opportunity *n.* [ˌɒpə'tju:mti] - imkoniyat

contest *n./v.* ['kɒntest] - tanlov, musobaqa, raqobat beauty contest — go'zallik tanlovi hold (stage) a contest — tanlov o'tkazmoq / oratorical contest — notiqlik tanlovi; kurashmoq, raqobatlashmoq e.g. Jim had to contest against/with the world's best runners in the Games.

championship *n.* ['tʃæmpjənʃɪp] - birinchilik (chempenat), musobaqa

take place *v.* sodir bo'lmoq, bo'lib o'tmoq

exciting *adj.* [ɪk'saɪtɪŋ] - jo'shqin, to'lqinlantiradigan, qiziqarli Syn: stimulating, energizing

- excite** v. [ɪk'saɪt] - rag'batlantirmoq, qiziqtirmoq, to'lqinlantirmoq, jonlantirmoq
Syn: stimulate, energize
- spectator** n. [spek'teɪtə] - tomoshabin, muxlis, ixlosmand, kuzatuvchi
- extremely** adj. [ɪks'tri:mli] - juda, o'ta, keragidan ortiq, oily darajada
- popular** adj. [popjələ] - 1) mashxur 2) xalqona popular election — umumxalq saylovi popular government — xalq hokimiyati 3) a) taniqli, moslashgan, tushunarli popular history — hamma tushunadigan (anglaydigan) tarix 6) hammaga tushunarli, maqbul **wedding** n. ['wedɪŋ] - to'y
- speed** n. [spi:d] - tezlik
- skill** n. [skɪl] - mahorat, san'at skill at/in using a computer — kompyuterda ishlash mahorati to demonstrate, display, show skill — mahoratni namoyish qilmoq diplomatic skills — diplomatic mahorat professional skills, technical skills e.g. She had the skill to cope with a difficult job. skilful (skillful) mahoratli, tajribali *Syn:* expert, clever, skilled
- muscle** n. ['mʌsl] - muskul, kuch
- enthusiasm** n. [ɪn'θju:ɪæzm] - qiziqish, hayrat, rag'bat, moyillik, ishqibozlik

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

archery	hang gliding	down-hill skiing
artistic gymnastics (calisthenics)	mountaineering	ski-jump
boxing	rowing and canoeing	shot putting
car (motorcycle) racing	athletics (track-and-field)	slalom
cycling	discus (hammer, javelin)	sky diving (parachuting)
diving	high (long, triple) jump	swimming
fencing	hurdle races	weight-lifting
figure-skating	skating	windsurfing
gymnastics	skiing	wrestling
gliding	cross-country skiing	arm-wrestling
race/run	pole vault (vaulting)	yachting
		marathon (race)

badminton	| volley-ball water-polo	<i>Open-air games</i>	
basket-ball		football (soccer)	net-ball
cricket		golf	rugby (rigger)
		hockey	(lawn) tennis

Indoor games

chess / draughts	| squash / table-tennis (ping-pong)
------------------	-----------------------------------

Audience

fan <i>n.</i> (football fan) / shout for <i>v.</i>	| spectator <i>n.</i> / sports	| support <i>v.</i>
	| enthusiast	

Sport Terms

amateur (professional) sport <i>n</i>	| indoor (outdoor or open-air) sports
championship (national football)	| sport <i>n</i>
championship	
compete (in running/for the team) <i>v</i>	| sports <i>n</i> = events
competition <i>n</i> (inter-college cup competition)	| sports <i>adj.</i> e.g. sports jacket
contest <i>v</i> (world gymnastic contest)	| sporting <i>adj.</i>
cup (final, semi-final) match	| tournament

Participants

crew <i>n</i> (used for sportsmen rowing or sailing a boat)	| opponent
national (Olympic, college team)	| sportsman (athlete)
official (umpire, referee, judge)	| sportswoman
cricketer, footballer, boxer, wrestler, skater	| hockey (tennis, basketball)
	| player
athlete, gymnast, cyclist	

Competition sites and sport equipments

barbell <i>n</i>	discus <i>n</i>	net <i>n</i>	ski jump
beam <i>n</i>	draughtsman <i>n</i>	play-ground	sports hall
		<i>n</i>	
chessboard <i>n</i>	gym <i>n</i>	puck <i>n</i>	boxing gloves
chessman <i>n</i>	javelin <i>n</i>	racket <i>n</i>	trampoline <i>n</i>

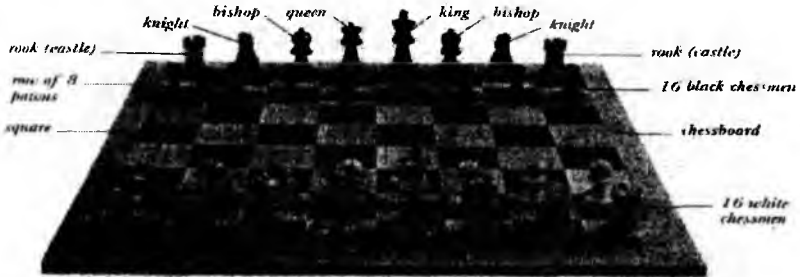
club <i>n</i>	jumping board	(spring)	rings <i>n</i>	uneven asymmetric bars	(parallel),
---------------	------------------	----------	----------------	---------------------------	-------------

Scoring system

best (record, fastest) time	point <i>n</i> , e.g. How many points have they won?
defeat <i>v</i> .	record holder (hold the record in, set the record, break the record, better (improve on a)the record)
draw <i>n</i> , e.g. The match ended in a draw.	runner-up <i>n</i>
The math ended in a shutout	score <i>n</i> , e.g. The score of the game was 6:4 (six to four)
draw <i>v</i> . e.g. The two teams drew.	score <i>v</i> , e.g. He scored 20 points.
goal <i>n</i>	Neither side scored in the game. even the score,
lose <i>v</i>	open the score, to score a goal, goal keeper
loser <i>n</i>	victory <i>n</i>

Word Combinations

athletic training	to win the team (personal, national, world) championship
to follow a tournament (competition, etc.)	to win by 2 (3, etc.) goals (points)
to kick the ball	to win with the score 4 to 0 in smb.'s favour
to score a goal (20 points)	to set up (break) a record
to keep the score	record holder
to end a game in a draw (to draw a game)	the world (national, European record)
to win a prize (a cup, the victory)	



CHESSEBOARD AND CHESSMEN

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Ex.1. Make questions and answers from the following tables.

Questions:

Which do you	prefer	football or tennis?
	like better	hockey or basket-ball?
	enjoy more	chess or draughts?
		table-tennis or badminton?

Answers:

I	prefer	football	
	like	hockey	better
	enjoy	chess	
		table-tennis	more

Ex.2. Answer the following questions.

a) What do you call a person who goes in for:

wrestling, cycling, weight-lifting, swimming, diving, running, boxing, skating, racing, hunting, playing football, playing chess, playing draughts, athletics, playing volley-ball, playing basket-ball, playing hockey?

b) What do you call people who: are skilled in gymnastics; coach a team; win at all championships; support a sports club or an athlete; break some record; watch sports competitions and games, take part in competition or game

c) What do you call the place where: we can join some sports society; we play football and organize sports festivals; schoolchildren can go in for sport in the open air; we go in for athletics indoors; we can swim; we can play tennis

d) What do we call: the country where almost everybody goes in for sports; the greatest sports events of international character; the games in which students of Uzbekistan take part; the game in which the players must not touch the ball

Ex.3. Translate into English

1. Men yengil atletika musobaqalarini televizorda tomosha qilishni yoqtiraman. 2. Men boks va kurashni afzal ko'raman. Bu sportning O'zbekistonda ixlosmandlari ko'p. 3. Jiyanim suzish bilan shug'ullanadi. U yangi record o'rnatishni va Olimpiada o'yinlarida ishtirok etishni orzu qiladi. 4. Biz "Navbahor" futbol komandasiga ishqibozlik qilamiz. 5. O'tgan yili Toshkentda "Universiada" musobaqasi o'tkazildi. Namangan davlat universiteti jamoasi ikkinchi o'rinni egalladi. 6. O'yinni during bilan tugashini hech kim kutmagandi. 7. Ayollar futbol o'ynashmaydi, shundaymi? –Ha, lekin ular badiiy gimnastika, suv sportiga ko'proq qiziqishadi. 8. Siz qaysi sport turiga qatnashasiz? – Men sport bilan shug'ullanmayman, lekin sport musobaqalarini tomosha qilishga ishtiyoqim baland. Sevimli futbol komandangiz qaysi? – Men "Paxtakor"ga ishqibozlik qilaman. 9. Klark juda mahoratli sportchi. Lekin u dunyoning eng kuchli sportchilari bilan musobaqalashishdan biroz cho'chiyapti. 10. Butun O'zbekiston bo'ylab deyarli barcha bolalar sport bilan shug'ullanishadi. 11. Bolaligingizda sport bilan shug'ullanganmisiz? Ha, maktabimiz yonida o'yingoh bor edi. Har kuni darsdan keyin o'rtoqlarim bilan futbol o'ynardik. 12. Kechagi futbol matchini ko'rdingmi? Afsus ko'rolmadim darslarim ko'p edi. Qaysi klub yutdi? – "Navbahor" "Nasaf"ni 4-2 ga yutdi. Mach o'ta jo'shqin bo'ldi.

Ex.4. Fill in prepositions if necessary: Chose one and try to retell it.

1. At the Racetrack

Our family likes horse races. ...the summer, we often go ... the racetrack ... Sunday. My sister gets very excited. Sometimes she jumps and shouts. She wants her favorite horses to win. We don't stay ... the racetrack all day. Usually we leave ... six or seven races. We get home ... time ...dinner.

2. Going cycling

John and Beth, our teen-age children, are going cycling this morning. They are going to ride their bicycles ... the park. It's going to be a nice day. The sun is

shining and it's going to be cool. They are going to take their lunch ... them. They are going to eat ... the park ... some friends.

3. Learning to Fly

I always wanted to fly an airplane. ... high school I began to take flying lessons. My teacher was also a friend ... my father. He helped me a lot. I learned to fly small airplanes first. Later, ... the war, I flew jet planes. I still like to fly and I have my own airplane. I use it ... my business to make trips.

4. Skiing in the Mountains

Last week I went skiing ... some friends. We flew ... the mountains and there took a bus ... the ski resort. We arrived late ... the afternoon. We had dinner first and then went ... bed. We got ... early the next morning. We were ready to ski and wanted very much to begin.

5. The Soccer Game

The soccer game last Sunday was exciting. We went ... our neighbors. They like soccer very much. They go ... most ... the games ... our town. Their son plays ... the team. He is an excellent player. Last Sunday he made two goals. His team finally won two ... one, ... the last minute ... the game.

Lesson Ten

Grammar: *Sequence of Tenses. The Future in the Past. The Past Perfect Tense.*

Text: *Hollywood (Live Entertainment for Every Taste)*

SEQUENCE OF TENSES

He (She)	was	sure	Bob	was	ill. out. at school.
			Alice everybody		
They	were		the children their friends	were	In the country.

James	asked	if	Ben	was	ready. busy. free. angry.
Roger			Ann everybody		
I			they	were	
We			her friends		
The Browns					

THE FUTURE IN THE PAST

Ann	knew that	I	should	go out of town.
Bob			we		join them.
We		Mr. Black everybody	would	enjoy the party.
The Greens				skate a lot.
The students				leave the place.
				never return.
				read the story.

THE PAST PERFECT TENSE

We	knew that	We	had	read the letter.	
Ann		Everybody			seen the play.
Tom		Mr. Black			bought a radio-set.
The Browns		Irene			stayed indoors all day.
The students					
Alice	asked if	John		had dinner.	
George		Ann		bought a lot of fruit.	
The Whites		the Grays		changed the clothes.	

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Study Substitution the Tables and compose as many sentences as you can.

Ex. 2. Write the following sentences in indirect speech using the future in the Past:

Note: *now* becomes *then*, *here* → *there*, *this / these* → *that / those*, *today* → *that day*, *tomorrow* → *the next day / the following day / the day after*, *next week* → *the following week*

1. She asked me: "Will you be angry with me?" 2. I said: "I'll be too busy tomorrow." 3. They said: "We'll take four exams this summer." 4. Bob said: "I can't record the song now, but I can do it next week." 5. Mary said: "My father will have his car repaired next weekend." 6. Jim said: "We shall have a wedding party in two days." 7. Andrew said: "I'll have a better command of the language, if I read English books." 8. They asked us: "when will you join our choir?" 8. Nelly asked her: "Who will you invite to your birthday party?" 9. The dean asked us: "Where will you go to spend your weekend?" 10. Tomas asked Margaret: "When will you graduate from the university?" 11. Father asked me: "How long will it take you to iron my clothes?" 12. Jimmy wondered: "Who will accomplish this task?" 13. Jennifer wanted to know: "How long will it take me to translate this article?" 14. Jonathan asked his boss: "When will the delegation arrive in London?"

Ex. 3. Write the following sentences in indirect speech using the past perfect:

Model: Jim asked: "*Who discovered X-rays?*" → Jim asked his teacher who had discovered X-rays.

Note: *yesterday* becomes *the day before / the previous day*, *last week* → *the previous week*, *last night* → *the night before*, *last year* → *the year before*

1. Alfred asked me: "How long did it take you to learn to skate?" 2. Jim asked his mother: "Did you ever try figure-skating?" 3. Mr. Green asked: "Who coached your volley-ball team last year?" 4. The dean asked us: "Which of you has ever participated in sport contests?" 5. Mr. Black asked his nephew: "How did you manage to break the world record?" 6. The students asked the monitor: "What was

the score of the game last weekend?" 7. Anvar asked his coach: "When did you win your first victory?" 8. A little boy asked his father: "Have you ever scored a goal?" 9. The teacher asked Bob: "What kind of sport did you go in for?" 10. Kitty asked her grandpa: "What football team did you support before?" 11. Tom said: "We went to the cinema last night." 12. Jimmy asked me: "Where did you go yesterday?"

Ex. 4. Write the following sentences in indirect speech. Begin your sentences with: *I wonder... , I'd like to know... , Please, tell me ... , Do you know ... , Can you tell me....*

1. Who wrote *The Old Man and the Sea*? 2. Who invented the radio? 3. Who discovered America? 4. Why are you always late? 5. Who made you tell a lie? 6. Who are you going to marry with? 7. Who is the first president of the U.S.? 8. When will Jim have to contest with the world's best runners? 9. How can I get to the city centre? 10. How long will it take me to look through all these documents? 11. Who is investigating this criminal? 12. Why don't your parents approve your marriage?

Ex. 5. Translate into English

1. Dadam menga yangi palto olib bermoqchiligini aytdi. 2. O'qituvchi talabdan eshikni yopib qoyishni so'radi. 3. Hayronman, Nik qayerda ekan? 4. Pavel akasidan qayerga ketayotganligini so'radi. 5. Nelli xolasidan qaysi institutni tamomlaganligini so'radi. 6. Jennifer singlisidan kechasi kech kelganligini dadasiga aytmasligini so'radi. 7. Tog'am menga mashinasini minmasligimni tayinladi. 8. Jiyanim uy vazifasini bajarishga ko'maklashishimni iltimos qildi. 9. Bo'b do'stidan qayerga bormoqchiligini so'radi. 10. Lena turmush o'rtog'idan o'tgan kechasi qayerda qolganligini so'radi.

HOLLYWOOD

Name some famous Hollywood movie stars, dead or alive.

To many people, the word Hollywood has two meanings. Hollywood is an area in Los Angeles. Hollywood is also the American movie industry.

In 1917, a director was making a movie in Chicago. Because of cold weather, he could not finish the movie. He traveled to southern California, and there he found just the weather and scenery he needed to finish his movie. The director realized that southern California was the perfect place for making movies. The next year his company built a movie studio in Hollywood. Other companies followed. Before long, nearly all-important American movie studios were in Hollywood. The next thirty years were Hollywood's greatest years. A few large and powerful studios made thousands of movies. They made some movies that today people consider them great art.

The great white shark silently approaches the swimmer. The audience screams in fear of the moment when the shark will bite and pull the victim under the waves. On the screen a few years, later the forces of good and evil fight against each other in faraway galaxy in



Star Wars. Space people come to the Earth in *Close Encounters of the Third Kind*. Later, *Indiana Jones* has wild adventures in *Raiders of the Lost Ark*. Movies of George Lucas and Steven Spielberg have entertained audience for over 20 years. Moreover, these movies made a great impression on the audience and changed the direction of American film forever.

Lucas and Spielberg both achieved fame as the brightest young talents in Hollywood in the late 1970s and early 1980s. Two of their greatest films *Star Wars* and *Close Encounters of the Third Kind*, appeared in the same year, 1977. Both men won the Academy Award. The two science fiction films used special effects that had never been before. Film makers invented special computerized cameras

and designed miniature models of spaceships and cities. The effect on-screen kept audiences breathless. When Lucas and Spielberg worked together on the **action-adventure** films *Raiders of the Lost Ark* and its **sequel** *Indiana Jones and the Temple of Doom*, they once again **captured** the imaginations of the audience and made them feel as if they were a part of the action. This is what their films so successful.

In a way, you can say that Steven Spielberg was born a filmmaker. He was born and grew up in Chicago, Ohio, and had all the interests of American boys of his age. However, he also had an **extraordinary** desire to make films. Steven was not a good student. He spent more time watching and making movies with his father's camera than he did studying. His grades were so poor that he could not get into film school, so he went to study English at a state college in Los Angeles. Once again, he spent all his time going to movies and making his own small films. Film **executives** valued one of his films, called *Ambling*, and signed to a seven-year contract to direct television movies.

George Lucas, on the other hand, never gave a thought of making movies. Born in Modesto, California, he dreamed of being a racecar driver. But three days before his high school graduation, he was in an accident that nearly killed him. He had to give up his car racing dreams. He went to Modesto Junior College, where he became interested in film work. A friend encouraged him and helped him get **admitted** to the film department of the University of South California. There he made a short science fiction film that won him first prize in a film festival. It got him started in the film business when it was later developed into a full-length film, THX 1138.

They were two different boys with very different dreams. Lucas and Spielberg are friends today and are still among the brightest and most talented directors in Hollywood. Both have made **great contribution** to the art of filmmaking. Already legends in their time, they are sure to continue their fine work for many years to come.

Today, Hollywood is not what it was. More movies are made outside of Hollywood. Many studios have moved. The movie stars have also moved to areas like Beverly Hills and Malibu.

But visitors to Hollywood today can go to the famous Chinese Theatre and see the footprints and autographs of Lucas and Spielberg and many other movie stars. They can go down the walk of Fame, on Hollywood Boulevard, and see the golden stars in the sidewalk.

DIALOGS

A Crowded theatre

Bob: Excuse me, is this seat taken?

Larry: No, it isn't.

Bob: Would you mind moving over one, so my friend and I can sit together?

Larry: No, not at all.

Bob: Thanks a lot.

Musical Instruments

Anne: Listen! Somebody is playing the piano.

Betty: Yeah, it sounds nice, doesn't it? I wish I could play a musical instrument.

Anne: Don't you play the violin?

Betty: No, but my sister does. Actually, she is pretty good at it.

Anne: I took flute lessons for a couple of years, but I never learned to play very well. I guess I don't have any musical talent.

Betty: Oh, that's not true. You sing very well. I can't even do that!

VOCABULARY

shark *n.* [ʃɑ:k] - akula

previous *adj.* [pri:vjəs] o'tgan, oldingi e.g. previous day, previous night

consider *v.* [kən'sidə] hisoblamoq, sanamoq, ...deb bilmoq e.g. I consider him my real friend. We considered her qualified, we considered her a genius. — Biz uni

haqiqiy tajribali deb bilar edik, u biz uchun dohiy sanalar edi. I considered him as a fool, I considered him as foolish. — Men uni g'irt ahmoq deb hisoblar edim.

• Gram: consider smth foolish

scream *n.* [skri:m] - chiyillash, chinqirish, chinqiriq (odamlar va hayvonlarga oid) bloodcurdling, shrill scream — dahshatli, vahimali, qo'rqinchli, mudhish chinqiriq to let out a scream — chinqirib yubormoq e.g.: She let out the scream of pain. — U og'riqdan chinqirib yubordi. They let out the screams of terror. — Ular qo'rqinchdan chinqirib yuborishdi.

kulguli holat (vaziyat) kulguli kishi e.g. It was a scream! — Juda kulguli bo'ldi-da! She's a scream! — U shunaqangi kulguli!

scream *v.* qattiq chinqirmoq, baqirmoq, jinoyatga aralashgan sheriklarni sotib qo'yimoq, tezkor ma'lumot

to scream for help — yordamga chaqirmoq e.g. The animal screamed with pain.

bite (bit, bitten) *v.* [bait] - tishlamoq, chaqmoq (ari, ilon) e.g. Barking dogs never bite.

victim *n.* ['viktım] - jabrlanuvch, jabrdiyda, qurbon(lik)

entertain *v.* [entə'tein] ko'nglini ovlamoq (hushlamoq), Syn: amuse, divert, interest Ant: annoy, bore, tire

entertainment *n.* [ente'teinmənt] - a) ko'ngilochar tadbir, qabul (mehmon), bazm, mehmonnavozlik b) estrada konserti, to provide entertainment — ko'ngil ovlamoq (hushlamoq)

impression *n.* [im'prɪ(ə)n] - ta'sir, ta'surot, tuyg'u e.g. I have an impression that I have seen this film before. — Bu kinoni oldin ham ko'rgandekman.

impress *v.* ta'surot uyg'otmoq, impress deeply — chuqur ta'surot qoldirmoq e.g. She impressed me as a scholar. — U menda olimadek tasurot qoldirdi. deeply, greatly, highly, strongly impress — chuqur, kuchli ta'surot - be impressed by / at

achieve *v.* [ə'tʃi:v] - erishmoq, etishmoq Syn: reach accomplish

achievement *n.* yutuq, muvofaqqiyat Syn: accomplishment

fame *n.* [feim] - shon-shuhrat famous *adj.* taniqli, mashhur

special effects —maxsus effektlar

action-adventure – [ˈækʃ(ə)n ədˈventʃə] jangari sarguzasht (film) (blokaster)
sequel n. [ˈsi:kw(ə)l] 1) a) keyingi hodisa b) davom, natija, oqibat natija Syn: continuation / 2) davomi - the sequel to "Gone with the Wind" — "Shamol bilan ketgan" romaninig davomi

capture v. [ˈkæptʃə] - egallamoq, ishg'ol qilmoq

extraordinary *adj.* [iks'to:dnri]1) a) favqulotda ajoyib, o'ta, juda, kamdan kam uchraydigan extraordinary beauty e.g.: He is an extraordinary child. Syn: unusual, uncommon, exceptional

executive n. [ig'zekjutiv] ijroji rahbar

admit v. [əd'mit]1) qabul qilmoq, o'tkazib yubormoq, ruxsat (ijozat) et(il)moq, rozi bo'lmoq, tan olmoq e.g.: This, I admit, is true. — Menimcha, bu to'g'ri. You must admit her statement to be doubtful. — Uning murojaati shubhali ekanligini tan olishingiz lozim.

2) tan olmoq (ayibni), anglab yetmoq, iqror bo'lmoq (admit to) e.g.: The accused admitted his guilt to the police. — Ayiblanuvchi o'z aybini tan oldi. He admitted to his complicity in the crime. — Sudda u jinoyatdagi ishtirokini tan oldi. The clerk admitted (to the police) that he had taken the jewels. — Xizmatchi qimmatbaho narsalarni o'zi o'g'irlaganligini tan oldi 3) qabul qilmoq e.g. Only 100 boys are admitted to this school every year. — Bu maktab har yili faqat 100 nafar o'g'il bolalarni qabul qiladi. 4) kiritmoq, ichkariga qo'yimoq to admit light (air, water, etc.) e.g. This key admits to the house. — Bu kalit yordamida uyga kiriladi. The manager admitted him to the theater. — Ma'mur uni teatrga kiritdi. The old man opened the door and admitted me. — Chol eshikni ochib meni ichkariga kiritdi. 5) sig'dirmoq (binoga oid) The theatre admits only 200 persons.

contribution n. [kontribju:(ə)n] hissa, ulush, badal e.g. She made an outstanding contribution to science. — U fanga ulkan hissa qo'shgan.

contribute v. [kən'tribju:(n)] hissa qo'shmoq (to) to contribute to charity — insonparvarlik yordamiga hissa qo'shmoq; e.g. Please contribute to this collection of money for homeless families. We contributed clothing for the flood victims.

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

Theatre

act	box	director	orchestra- pit	rehearsal	stage
acting	cast	dress-circle	produce	repertoire	stalls
amateur	company	interval	producer	row	scene <i>n</i>
balcony	costumes	lighting	production	stage- manager	

Cinema

make (produce, shoot) a film / adventure film / adult film, X-rated film / documentary film / educational film / propaganda film / horror film / instructional (training)film / silent film / sound film / feature film / gangster film

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Underline the phrase or the word that means the same as the one quoted from the reading.

- Hollywood was just farmland at the beginning of the **previous** century.
a. last
b. past
- There he found just the weather and **scenery** he needed to finish his movie.
a. decoration
b. landscape
- They made some movies that today people **consider** them great art. [kən'sidə]
a. think
b. count on
- The **great white shark** silently approaches the swimmer. [ʃa:k]
a. a very aggressive big fish
b. sea mammal
- The audience **screams** in fear of the moment when those huge teeth will bite and pull the victim under the waves. [skri:m]
a. cry
b. shout
- The audience screams in fear of the moment when those huge teeth will **bite and pull** the victim under the waves. [bait]
a. eat
b. strike

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5. Steven Spielberg could not get into film school | e. because, three days before his high school graduation, he was in an accident that nearly killed him. |
| 6. George Lucas could not realize his dream of being a racecar driver | f. because, the director realized that southern California was the perfect place for making movies. |
| 7. Today, Hollywood is not the center of entertainment | g. because, many companies have built movie studios there. |

Ex. 3. Insert English words instead of their Uzbek equivalents in brackets.

1. Play (ijro) began about 2,500 years ago in open-air theatres in Greece. In the plays, only men or boys played the (ro'l) and a single actor often took several different parts in the same (pyesa). 2. Drama went indoors with the Romans. They (sahnalashtirmoq) plays both in single wooden structures and in quite elaborate buildings. 3. In England the (mashxur) Globe Theatre was built in 1599 on the south bank of the river Thames. With its Shakespearean associations, the Globe (ko'nglimi olmoq) its audience for many years. 4. It had an open platform providing the scope for movement, an inner stage beyond, and upper (balkon) that allowed for vertical action. 5. There are about 200 professional and (havaskor) theatres in Britain now. 6. The main London theatres are the Royal Opera House in Covent Garden, the National Theatre, whose (dastur) consists of classical and modern plays from all countries, the Royal Shakespeare Company that (namiyish qilmoq) plays by Shakespeare in London and Stratford-on-Avon, the birthplace of the great playwright and poet.

Ex. 4. Translate into English

1. Dam olish kunlari nima qilmoqchisiz? – Hali o'ylab ko'rganoim yo'q. – Teatrga boraylik. - Juda yaxshi bo'lardi, anchadan beri teatrga bormagandim. 2. O'tgan yakshanbada tog'am meni konsertga olib bordi. Sahna bezagi juda ajoyib edi. Bisning joyimiz oldi qatorda edi. Tomoshabinlar qo'shiqchini rosa olqishlashdi

(applaud). 3. Kechirsiz, bugungi tomoshaga billet bormi? – Xa, lekin faqat yuqori balkondan joylar bor. – Unday bo'lsa ertangi tomoshaga ikkita chipta bering. – Yaxshi, qayerdan bo'lsin? Stullardan, faqat orkestrdan uzoqroqda. Marhamat, har biri 3000 so'mdan. 4. Qanaqa kinolarni yoqtirasiz? – Ko'pincha sarguzasht kinolarni ko'raman, lekin ba'zan dedektiv va jangari kinolarni ham miriqib ko'raman. – Seriallarni ham xush ko'rasizmi? – Yo'q, ular juda uzoq davom etadi va o'ta zerikarli. 5. O'g'lim bugun televizorda qiziqarli biror narsa bormi? – Xa, juda qiziqarli Gollivud kinosi bo'ladi. – Bosh ro'lni kim o'ynagan? Bilmadim, lekin juda muvofaqqiyatli chiqqan deyishyapti (they say). 6. Bu filmni oldin ham korganmisiz? – Xa, faqat batafsil eslayolmayman (in details), lekin film menda katta ta'surot qoldirgan (make an impression on).

Ex. 5. Read the dialog, insert the suitable words in the spaces and tell where Alice will sit.

At the Box-office

Alice: Are there any seats for Saturday night?

Clerk: There is not a performance on Saturday.

Alice: Isn't there? Oh, sorry. My mistake. Then I'd like to have two seats for Sunday.

Clerk: Would you like them in the stalls?

Alice: Haven't you got anything cheaper? Besides, I can not sit near the orchestra pit.

Clerk: Certainly. I've got some free seats in the dress circle and two seats in the gallery which are even cheaper.

Alice: Are there any seats in the boxes?

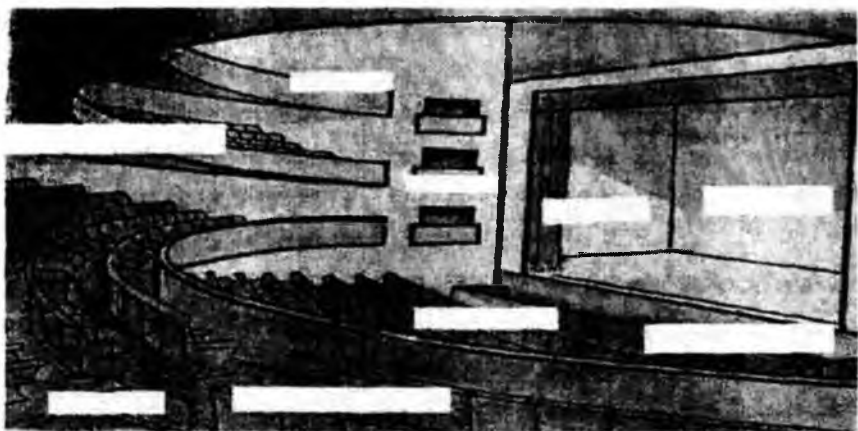
Clerk: No, I am afraid that's all there is.

Alice: Fine. How much are the seats in the dress-circle?

Clerk: Would you like the third row? The seats there are 2000 sums each?

Alice: OK, I'll take them. Here is 4000. Thank you very much.

Clerk: There you are. I hope you will enjoy the performance.



Ex.6. Translate into your native language and try to retell the passage

Television Game Show

Linda Chapman received an important letter in the mail one day last May. The letter contained good news *Dollars for Scholars*, a television game show invited Linda to appear on the show as a contestant. They offered Linda to win as much as \$10,000 to help with her education. The television game show also offered to pay for her airline tickets, hotel, room, and meals. Linda accepted the invitation. During the show, Linda answered all the questions correctly and won \$1,000. Next week, she will return to try to win \$5,000. If she wins \$5,000, she will then have a chance to win the big prize of \$10,000.

Lesson Eleven

Grammar: *Passive Voice*

Text: *Tashkent*

THE PASSIVE VOICE

§ 1. The Passive Voice is formed by means of the auxiliary verb **to be** in the required form and **Participle II** of the notional verb.

Table No. 1

Present Indefinite (Simple) Passive	Past Indefinite (Simple) Passive	Future Indefinite (Simple) Passive
I am invited.	I was invited.	I shall be invited.
He is invited.	He was invited.	He will be invited.
She is invited.	She was invited.	She will be invited.
We are invited.	We were invited.	We will be invited.
You are invited.	You were invited.	You will be invited.
They are invited.	They were invited.	They will be invited.

Table No. 2

The article / The poem / The fabric / The movie / The cheese	was	written translated	by Papov by Abraham bell
The exercises / The letters The pictures / The radio The telephone	were	made done painted invented	from milk next week last year

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Study Substitution Table No. 2 and compose as many sentences as you can

Ex. 2. Change the form of the verbs in the sentences from the active into the passive voice. **Note!** *Object becomes subject.*

Model: He wrote many articles. → Many articles were written by him.

1. Film producers made early American movies in other places; for example, in New York and Chicago. 2. Lucas and Spielberg made the greatest films in Hollywood. 3. The Royal Shakespeare Theatre stages Shakespeare's plays. 4. We teach our children reading and writing at primary schools. 5. We eat breakfast in the morning. 6. Millions of people watch football matches. 7. Nick mispronounced the word. 8. They didn't leave the windows opened. 9. She has given me an English book. 10. They will meet you at the station. 11. I shall finish the work at about seven. 12. They built the house in 1980. 13. My friend took me to a very pictures place last weekend. 14. They didn't turn off the light. 15. The police arrested him under the suspicion of murder. 16. The surgeon operated the patient successfully.

Ex. 3. Change the form of the verbs in the sentences from the passive into the active voice. Think of new subjects in the sentences.

1. The light has not been switched off. 2. The boy was punished for something. 3. His work was finished by 3 o'clock. 4. The dictation was written without mistakes. 5. Who is the article written by? 6. Her dress was washed and ironed. 7. I was not invited to the party. 8. The work wasn't finished in time. 9. This house was built last year. 10. The letter has just been sent off. 11. This article will be translated. 12. When will this book be read? 13. The room was cleaned and aired. 14. Have all these books been read? 15. Who are these letters written by? 16. The letter's just been typed. 17. She showed me the article which had been translated by her brother. 18. I shan't be allowed to go there. 19. He has been told everything. 20. All the questions must be answered. (By you).

Ex. 4. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Bu roman (novel) eng mashhur ingliz yozuvchisi tomonidan yozilgan.
2. Universitetimizda xorijiy tillar o'qitiladi.
3. Bu bino o'tgan asrda qurilgan.
4. Bu taom mol go'shtidan tayyorlanadi.
5. Bu kitob guruhimizdagi barcha talabalar tomonidan o'qilishi lozim.
6. Fakultetimizning talabarlari har doim turli musobaqalarga jalb qilinadi (involve).
7. Bahorda bu dala gullar bilan qoplanadi (cover).
8. Bolalar qonun bilan himoyalanaadi (protect).
9. Televizor O'zbekistonda kashf qilingan.
10. Uyga kelganimda dasturxon solingan edi.
11. Yozma ish o'qituvchiga qo'ngiroqdan keyin topshirildi.
12. Har bir semester yakunida talabalar imtihon qilinadi va baholadi (examine, grade).
13. Delegatsiya iliq kutib olindi.
14. Bolalarga daryoda chomilishga ruxsat berilmadi (allow).
15. Talabalar qo'ng'iroqdan keyin darsga qo'yilmaydi.
16. Zoparkdagi hayvonlar tashrif buyuruvchilar tomoidan ovqatlantirilmasligi lozim (feed, fed).
17. Xat stol ustida qoldirildi.
18. Bu o'qituvchining darslariga qiziqish bilan qatnashiladi.

TASHKENT



Tashkent is the capital of Uzbekistan. It is the city of friendship and **peace**. It is also the center of education, art, sport, business and science. Every year the city welcomes millions of **guests** from all over the world.

International festivals, sport contests, World Cup Tournaments, and conferences are held in this **magnificent** city. You will hardly **recognize** the city if you come here in a year or so. Tashkent's straight and broad streets, avenues, parks and **squares** make a great impression on tourists. They **admire** the center of the city with its theatres, cinemas, museums, monuments, exotic fountains, and wonderful buildings of world class hotels.

Tashkent metro was **constructed** in 1977. Magical moving **staircases** (escalator) carry the stream of people down and up. Every day, from early morning till late at night the trains run through the tunnels and carry thousands of people to different parts of the city. Each station looks like a museum of art and architecture that gives a good impression of Tashkent's **immense**



size. Wherever you may go you will see well planned streets lined with trees, squares with sparkling fountains and loans, administrative buildings and **amazing** parks. It takes you a whole week if you want to see the **sights** of the city.



“Mustakillik” square is the very center of the city. It is surrounded with “**Arches of Goodwill**” and there is a bronze monument to a mother in the middle of the square. The arches were decorated with ceramics of **cranes** and **storks** that symbolize peace and **liberty**.

Today Tashkent is a massive **building site** of giant constructions. The city is becoming more and more beautiful and a real **gateway** city of Central Asia.

DIALOGS

- Marilyn: Excuse Me. Could you tell me which way Dobson’s bookstore is?
- Passer by: Yes, it is that way. You go two blocks, and then turn left. It is on the corner opposite the post office.
- Marilyn: Thanks I’ve only been in town a few days, so I really don’t know my way around yet.
- Passer by: Oh, I know how you feel. We moved here a year ago, and I still don’t know where everything is.

Transportation

Joyce: Shall we take a taxi or a bus to the meeting?

Bill: We'd better take a bus. It is almost impossible to find a taxi during rush hour.

Joyce: Isn't that a bus stop over there?

Bill: Yes... Oh, there's a bus now. We'll have to run to catch it.

Joyce: O.K.... Oh, no! We have just missed it.

Bill: Never mind. There will be another one in five minutes.

VOCABULARY

peace *n.* [pi:s] tinchlik

guest *n.* [gest] to have guests (for dinner) — mehmonlarni qabul qilmoq (obedga) e.g. You should make a guest list of who you want to invite. — Taklif qilishni hohlaydigan mehmonlarningni ro'yhatini tuzish kerak. Our special guest on the programme is Robert de Niro. — Dasturimisning mahsus mehmoni - Robert de Niro. Can I try out your new bicycle? - Be my guest. invited guest — taklif qilingan mehmon, unexpected guest — kutilmagan mehmon, unwelcome guest — chaqirilmagan mehmon, wedding guest — to'y menmonlari, welcome guest — chaqirilgan mehmon, guest of honour — fahriy menmon Syn: visitor

magnificent *adj.* [mæg'nifisnt] – ajoyib, ulkan, buyuk e.g. magnificent temple — buyuk ehrom, magnificent idea — ajoyib g'oya Syn: majestic, grand

recognize *v.* ['rekəgnəɪz] tanimoq, anglamoq, tan olmoq, o'z-o'ziga hisob bermoq e.g. I had to recognize he was right. We recognized that the situation was hopeless. He recognized that he was not qualified for the post. Syn: realize, become aware

square *n.* [skwɛə] kvadrat, maydon, skver, kvartal, yer maydoni o'lchov birligi

admire *v.* [əd'maɪə] hayratlanmoq, lol qolmoq, ajablanmoq, hayrat bilan qaramoq e.g. They all admired his behaving in that manner. I admire his honesty.

staircase *n.* ['steɪkɛɪs] zinapoya, pillapoya Syn: stairs

immense *adj.* [ɪ'mens] o'lchab bo'lmas darajada ulkan, juda katta, majobatli Syn: massive, huge, enormous e.g. the immense and boundless universe — had-hududsiz olam Syn: vast, terrific, splendid, cool, excellent, enormous

amazing *adj.* [ə'meɪzɪŋ] (amaze *v.* amazement *n.*) ajoyib, g'aroyib, ko'rkam, maftun (maftun) qilib q'oyadigan darajada

sights *n.* [saɪts] diqqatga sazovor joylar e.g. to go sightseeing to see the sights of the city sightseeing bus – shahar bo'ylab sayohat aftobusi, sightseeing tour – shahar bo'ylab sayohat

Arches of Goodwill – Ezgulik Arkasi

liberty *n.* [lɪbəti] erk, ozodlik, hurriyat

building site *n.* qurilish maydoni

gateway *n.* ['geɪtweɪ] darvoza, gateway city darvoza shahar

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

attraction, attract, to attract one's attention; to arrive in/at; to go by; to ride; to drive; tourist, to make a tour of (some place); place of interest, castle, get on/off (a bus), take on/off (a bus), down/up the street; at the bottom of the street; take bus No. 7. change for bus No. 7; it is five minutes' walk from here; take the first turning to the left/right; what/how much is the fare?; full up/packed; traffic regulations/lights; right/left hand traffic; heavy/light traffic; one way traffic; peak/rush hours; industrial area; shopping area; center; outstanding; tower; castle; palace; skyscraper; multistoried building;

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Ex.1. Give the comparative and superlative degrees of the following adjectives: new, long, busy, beautiful, good, large, big, splendid, immense, amazing, massive, narrow, interesting, hospitable, straight, impressive, broad, crooked

Ex. 2. Rewrite as in the models:

Model 1: *His answer surprised me.* → *I was surprised at his answer.*

1. Her voice surprised us all. 2. The results of the exam surprised the teacher. 3. His behavior surprised those who were present. 4. You surprised me. 5. Your written test surprised us. 6. The girl's speech surprised the students. 7. The act surprised the audience. 8. The letter astonished me. 9. The movie shocked the audience. 10. His essay pleased us. 11. Tashkent fascinated the tourists. 12. The park amazed them.

Model 2: *The teacher was impressed by the student's answer. → The student's answer made an impression on the teacher.*

1. The listeners were impressed by the speech. 2. The play impresses me every time I see it. 3. The tourist was impressed by places of interest in Tashkent. 4. We were greatly impressed by Victor's speech. 5. My companions were impressed by her singing.

Model 3: *He came to Tashkent the other day. → He arrived in Tashkent the other day.*

1. He came to Tashkent to take part in the work of the congress. 2. He came to the meeting in time. 3. They came to the seaside at the weekend. 4. We came to London on 16th of March. 5. We came to the station to see our friend off. 6. We shall get to the theatre in time.

Ex. 3. Fill in prepositions if necessary.

A. 1. A lot ... tourists ... various countries arrive ... Samarkand. 2. The children enjoyed riding ... metro and going escalators which led ... platforms. 3. We were taken ... the town ... the guide. 4. Mary was most impressed ... the museums. 5. ... Sunday we went ... the Recreation Park, we walked ... alleys. The leaves ... the trees were turning red, brown and yellow. 6. Tourists always admire the Tashkent metro, the beauty ... its architecture different ... each station. 7. You can hardly recognize the city if you come here ... a year or so. Tashkent's straight and broad streets, avenues, parks and squares make a great impression ... visitors. 8. The buildings ... the suburbs are as modern and beautiful as those ... the center ... the town. 9. The splendid multi-storeyed house are inhabited ... the workers of the

automobile plant. 10. ... my great surprise the movie didn't impress ... at all. 11. We were all greatly impressed ... his knowledge ... so many foreign languages. 12. They are leaving ... Tashkent next week.

B. New-comer: Excuse me, can you tell me the way ... the "Uzbekistan" hotel?

Passer-by: Oh, it quite a long way ... here.

New-comer: Yes, I know, but my friend advised me to stay ... this hotel.

Passer-by: Your friend is right. It is one of the best hotels. You may go there ... metro. It is the quickest way to get there. It is only one stop ... the metro station.

New-comer: Thank you very much. Is it possible to get there ... tram or trolley-bus? I haven't seen anything ... Tashkent yet and I've heard so much ... this beautiful city!

Passer-by: You can get ... a No 10 bus. You will ride around the Amir Temur square and get ... at the last bus stop.

New-comer: I am very much obliged ... you.

Passer-by: That's all right.

Ex. 4. Read the text and test your knowledge of the city.

A. LONDON was founded by the Romans as Londinium in the 1st century AD. Extensive building projects were constructed after the Great Fire of 1666, and London became the dominant centre not only of the nation but of its expanding empire. The river Thames plays an important role in the city life and there are 27 magnificent bridges over the river.

The Tower of London is the nation's leading historic visitor attraction. This ancient fortress was founded in 1066 by William the Conqueror who came to London from Normandy in France. During the past 1,000 years the Tower played an important role in British history.



It was used as a fortress, a royal residence, and a prison. Now it is a museum and Crown Jewels are kept here. A twenty minutes' walk from the Tower will take you to another historic building – St. Paul's Cathedral, the greatest of English church. The works of the building of Saint Paul's Cathedral started in 1675, and was completed in 1708. The church was built by a famous English architect, Sir

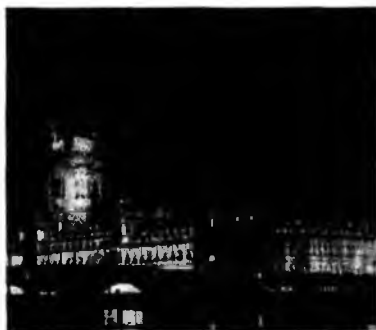


Christopher Wren. Its giant dome, remarkable columns and the interior make a great impression on visitors. In one of its towers hangs one of the largest bells in the world, Great Paul, weighing about 17.5 tons. Wellington⁴, Nelson⁵ and other

great men of England are buried in the Cathedral.

Most of the government buildings are situated in Westminster. It includes Westminster Abbey and Westminster Cathedral, Buckingham Palace, the principal government offices, important shopping districts, New Scotland Yard, luxury hotels, the Tate Gallery, and the National Gallery.

Its two graceful towers stand high above the city. One of them has the largest clock in the country and the famous bell Big Ben that strikes every quarter of an hour. Westminster Palace is the seat of the British Parliament.



⁴ The Duke of Wellington (1769-1852): a famous British general whose army defeated at Waterloo in 1815

⁵ Nelson, Horatio (1758 -1805): an English admiral who won the battle of Trafalgar (the Atlantic coast of Spain)



Trafalgar Square attracts thousands of tourists like a magnet. It was so named in memory of the victory in the battle of Trafalgar, where on October 21, 1805 the English fleet under Nelson's command defeated the combined fleet of France and Spain. In the middle of the square there is a tall column with a monument to Admiral Nelson.

The monument is guarded by four bronze lions. There are two fountains, the National Gallery, and the Portrait Gallery around the square. Every year Norway donates the 20 meter tall Christmas tree to Londoners as a token of friendship.

Buckingham Palace was built in 1703 and became the official royal residence in 1837. The Palace is a symbol and home of the British monarchy, an art gallery and tourist attraction. There is a monument to Queen Victoria in front of the palace. It is one of the world's most familiar buildings and more than 50,000 people are invited to banquets, lunches, dinners, receptions and



the royal garden parties. The most famous parks are Hyde Park, Regent's Park, St. James's Park, and Kensington Garden. The city also fascinates the tourists with its world famous botanical and zoological gardens.

B. How much do you know about London?

1. Who founded London?

a. the Romans did

b. Queen Victoria did

c. William the Conqueror did

2. Who built the Tower of London?

- a. the Romans did b. Queen Victoria did c. William the Conqueror did

3. Where were Anne Boleyn, Guy Fawkes, Richard II and Elizabeth I executed?

- a. in the Tower b. in Westminster Abbey c. in Buckingham Palace

4. Who was the architect of St. Paul's Cathedral?

- a. Christopher Wren b. St. Paul c. Wellington

5. What is Big Ben?

- a. clock b. bell c. tower

6. Who donates Christmas tree to Londoners?

- a. Norwegians b. Germans c. Scottish

7. What is there on the top of the column in Trafalgar square?

- a. sculpture b. monument c. bronze lions

8. Which one is the official royal residence of British monarch?

- a. the Tower b. Westminster Abbey c. Buckingham Palace

9. Whom did Admiral Nelson defeat?

- a. combined fleet of Norway and Spain b. combined fleet of France and Italy c. combined fleet of France and Spain

10. The monument is guarded by

- a. twelve black ravens b. four bronze lions c. many doves

Ex. 5. Translate into English.

1. Kechirasiz, "Mustaqillik" maydoniga qanday borsam bo'ladi? – Siz u yerga metroda borganingiz ma'qul. "Mustaqillik maydoni" bekatida tushasiz. 2. Bugun yakshanba, shuning uchun ko'chalar tirband bo'ladi. Vokzalga juda kechki boramizmi deb qo'rqaman. 3. Keling shahrni tomosha qilishga chiqamiz. Men sizni "Istiqlol" saroyiga olib boraman. U bu yerdan piyoda ikki daqiqalik yo'l. 4. Kechirasiz, men bu yerga yaqinda kelganman. Amir Temur muzeyiga yo'lni ko'rsatib yuborasizmi iltimos? 5. Menimch biz umuman boshqa tarafga ketyapmiz. 6. Universitet bu yerdan oils emas. Men ham o'sha tomonga ketyapman. Istasangiz men bilan yuring. 7. Men uyingizga tramvayda borishni maslahat beraman. Hozir

tig'iz vaqt, avtobuslar tiqilinch bo'ladi. 8. "Milliy" teatri bu yerdan uzoqda emasmi? – Anchagina uzoq. Yaxshisi u yerga taksida boring, bo'lmasa adashib qolasiz. 9. "Chorsu" mehmonxonasini oldida qadimiy bino bor. Uning baland minoralari va ulkan gumbazi sayyohlarni hayratga soladi. 10. Qayerga shoshilyapsiz? – Sayilhog ko'chasiga. Janob Green bilan soat 3 da uchrashishim kerak. Aytganday, u yerga qanday boriladi? To'g'riga yuring, keyin svetafordan chapga burilasiz. 11. Turkiston saroyi bu yerdan uzoqmi? – Anchagina uzoq. Taksida 15 daqiqalik yo'l, avtobusda borsangiz 1 soat vaqtingiz ketadi. – Afsus, konsertni o'tkazib yuborarkanman. 12. Toshkentda juda ko'p xiyobonlar va parklar bor. Mustaqillik maydoni doimo turistlar bilan gavjum. Maydonning o'rtasida "Ezgulik" monumenti bor. Maydon maysazor va favvoralar bilan o'ralgan. Uning atrofida chiroyli ma'muriy binolar joylashgan.

Lesson Twelve

Grammar: *Past and Future Continues (progressive)*
The Complex Object

Text: *Shopping*

PAST CONTINUOUS (to be V+ing)

I	was	working	when Mr. Green came yesterday.
He (she, it)			
We	were		
You			
They			

FUTURE CONTINUOUS

I	shall be	working	Tomorrow at this time.
He (she, it)			
We	will be		
You			
They			

COMPLEX OBJECT

I	want	Beatrice	to	make a report.
We	wanted	Alfred		return soon.
They	expect	you		ride in a taxi.
	Expected	him (her)		dance at the party.

He	sees saw	Nelly	go along the street every morning.
Nick		Jack	take the book from the desk.
Bob		me	stand near the theatre.
		us	come up to the window and shut it.
		them	write exercises every evening.

He	hears heard	Nelly	speak loudly.
She		Tom	sing beautifully every Sunday.
Nick			laugh softly at the joke.

The teacher	makes made let	me	do the room every day.
The mother		them	speak loudly enough.
Lack		him (her)	get up early every morning.
Brain		Sarah	work regularly.

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Complete the following sentences using the Past Continues Tense.

1. The train (pull) out of the station when I appeared on the platform. 2. She (pack) the suitcase when I entered the room. 3. The cat (wait) on the doorstep when I came in. 4. When I came in the cat (sit) on the kitchen table and (eat) the steak you brought for dinner. 5. The fire still (burn) at six o'clock in the morning. 6. It (rain) this morning when I went out. 7. The light went out when we (have) supper. 8. The students (dance) at the far end of the room when the teacher came in. 9. They (see) the sights of the city and they lost. 10. What you (do) when I phoned you? 11. As he (cross) the road, he slipped and fell. 12. When I (talk) on the phone she interrupted me. 13. We (walk) in the Broadway when it started to rain. 14. When the dean came in the students (quarrel) with each other. 15. Where you (go) when I met you yesterday? 16. Why you (look) miserable when I saw you this morning? 17. Who you (speak) to, when I came in? 18. Where you (drive) your mother at 3 o'clock yesterday?

Ex. 2. Complete the following sentences using the Future Continues or Future Indefinite Tense.

1. I (wait) for you at the hotel at midday tomorrow. 2. I wonder, what I (do) at this time tomorrow? 3. I hope you (work) at this time tomorrow. 4. What you (do) at this time next year? 5. I ring you up at 5 o'clock tomorrow. 6. He (drive) to town at this very hour tomorrow. 7. They (have) a wedding part tomorrow evening. 8. You (hear) from me next week. 9. I (see) you again. 10. I'll come at two o'clock. – Good, I (expect) you. 11. My daughter (be) in the seventh grade next year. 12. He has got a serious injury but he (walk) again in two month time. 13. On the September 1studnets (come) back to the University. 14. We'd better go out tomorrow, because our neighbor (practice) the piano all day. 15. I'll call for her at 7 o'clock. – No, don't; she (have) her supper then. 16. He (wait) for me, till I return.

Ex. 3. Write one sentence instead of the given two using complex objects.

Model: *I saw Bill every day. He often spoke with his comrades.* → *I often saw **Bill** speak with his comrades (or **Bill** speaking).*

1. I watched the Sun. It was rising. 2. We heard him. He was singing a Spanish song. 3. We noticed a man. The man was riding a bicycle. 4. John saw three girls. They were chatting. 5. He watched the children. They ran about and played in the garden. 6. I saw her every morning. She arranged her hair carefully. 7. He saw Roger. He was crossing the square. 8. They saw their father. He was fixing his car. 9. Tom heard his mother. She was talking on the phone. 10. They saw me. I was walking in the park with my girlfriend.

Ex. 4. Paraphrase the following sentences as in the model.

Model: *Nelly spoke to the dean yesterday.* → *It was Nelly who (that) spoke to the dean yesterday.*

Those boys have brought me the letter. → *It is those boys who (that) have brought me the letter.*

1. The guide showed them many places of interest. 2. Mr. Green told the worker to have a break. 3. Lizzie baked the birthday cake. 4. The conductor told me where to get out. 5. These students missed a lot of lectures. 6. Miss. Evelyn took the students to Trafalgar Square. 7. This engineer invented a new model of the calculator. 8. William scored two goals. 9. My friend helped me to catch up with the group. 10. Our dean informed us about the meeting.

Ex. 5. Translate the following sentence into English.

A. Use Past and Future Continuous Tenses.

1. Kecha telefon qilganingizda biz bog'da ishlayotgandik. 2. Direktor kelganida kotiba xonani tartibga solayotgandi. 3. Ertalab tashqariga chiqqanimda quyosh charaqlab nur sochayotgandi. 4. Kelasi hafta biz Toshkenda sayohat qilib yurgan bo'lamiz. 5. Kecha shu paytda men dadamga uy ishlarida ko'maklashayotgandim. 6. Ertaga bu paytda biz tog'amnikiga ketayotgan bo'lamiz. 7. Kelsai yil ular yangi

uyda yashashayotgan bo'lishadi. 8. Nima haqida gaplashayotganding? 9. Nima qilayotganding? Senga rosa telefon qildim, javob bermading. – Hech narsa qilmayotgandim. Shunchaki derazadan tashqarini tomosha qilayotgandim. 10. Biz ertaga toqqa dam olishga ketyapmiz. Biz bilan borasanmi? – Bilmasam, dam olish kuniga ishlarim ko'p. Menimcha ertaga kun bo'yi xarid qilauotgan bo'laman. 11. Qayerga ketyotganding? -Amakimnikiga ketyotgandim. Ular to'y bazmi qilishayotgandi. 12. U juda xursand ko'rinardi. Yangi kiyimlar kiyib olgandi. Qo'lida guldasta tutib turardi. 13. Janob Grin talabalarga xonadan chiqishga ijozat berdi. 14. Sizni qutlashimga (congratulate) ijozat bering. 15. Mayli ular biroz dam olishsin. 16. Janob Blek o'quvchilarga darslikdan foydalanishga izn berdi.

B. Use complex objects.

1. Men Nikitani kelayotganini ko'rdim. 2. Biz Jorjni chorrahadan o'tib ketayotganini ko'rdik. 2. Har tong u qo'shnisini deraza ochayotganligini ko'rardi. 3. Meni tushinishingizni hoxlardim. 4. Hech kim meni bu ishni qilishga majbur qilolmaydi. 5. Yolg'on gapirishga seni nima majbur qildi? 6. Mik turmush o'rtog'ini kim bilandir raqs tushayotganligini ko'rib qoldi. 7. Men uni seyfni ochayotganligini o'z ko'zlarim bilan ko'rdim. 8. Ularni xonadan chiqib ketayotganligini ko'rdim. 9. Biz ularni tez orada kelib qolishlarini kutayapmiz. 10. Sizdan bunday qilishingizni kutmagandim. 11. Men sizlarni shunchaki ajrashib ketishinglarni istamayman. 12. Dadam meni yurist bo'lishimni hoxlardi. 13. Janob Martin xizmatkorlarini yanada ko'proq ishlashga majbur qilardi. 14. Talabalar darsni tezroq tugashini hoxlashardi.

FOR A GOOD BUSINESS

Mr. Sellyer was manager of the biggest **bookstore** in the town. He was an **up-to-date** manager and had his own methods with his real **customers**. The methods were so successful that all the publishing houses considered him one of the **prosperous** businessmen of literature in America.

One day while I was looking through some new books in the store I saw something of his methods.

A lady with a **pale** face entered the store. **Evidently** she was a widow. Mr. Sellyer was standing near his desk.

"Do you want something new in **fiction**?" he said. "Oh, yes". "Here is a charming thing, a sweet story *Golden Dreams*. The critics are saying it is a wonderful book in this year."

"Is it really good?" said the lady.

I understood that customers often asked this.

"A charming book," said the manager. "It is a love story, very simple, sweet and sad. My wife was reading it last night. She was **weeping** the whole night."

The lady bought *Golden Dreams* and went out.

"Have you any good light reading for vacation time?" asked the next customer loudly. "Yes," said Mr. Sellyer and his face almost broke into a laugh as he was answering, "here is an excellent thing *Golden Dreams*, the most humorous book of the season. My wife was reading it yesterday. She was laughing all the time."

"What is the **price**, one dollar? All right, I'll take it."

After that customers came and went one after another. There were very many books in the store, thousands of them, but Mr. Sellyer was only selling *Golden Dreams*.

One lady bought *Golden Dreams* for a holiday reading, another as a book to read after the holiday, another bought it as a book for a rainy day and a fourth as the right book for a fine day.

In the evening when the store was empty and Mr. Sellyer was **shutting** the door I asked him: "Did your wife really like this book?"

Mr. Shellyer smiled. Oh, I am not married yet, sir. It is only for a good business."

DIALOGS

Jane: I say, Ellen, **would you mind** if we went in here, they seem to have lots of pretty **lampshades**.

Ellen: All right, let's. It looks a first class shop.

Saleswoman: Good morning, ladies, what can I do for you?

Ellen: We're looking for a nice lampshade.

Saleswoman: Certainly, Madam, **anything special you have in mind?**

Ellen: Well, no, I'd like to have a look round.



Saleswoman: **But of course.** Would you mind stepping this way, please. There is a bigger **choice** in the next room.

Jane: This one is so pretty, don't you think so, Ellen?

Ellen: Oh, yes I do. Would you mind if I switched the lamp on?

Saleswoman: No, of course not, but let me do it for you; (to another saleswoman) Miss White, would you mind switching the ceiling light off? ... Thank you.

Jane: Oh, lovely!

Ellen: Yes, but **how much is it?**

Saleswoman: Thirty nine shillings.

Ellen: I'm afraid it is too **dear**, almost two pounds. No I can not **afford** to spend that much. I would like something **cheaper**.

Saleswoman: Certainly, Madam. Let me see... What about this one? It is just a **guinea**, quite a **bargain**, really.

Ellen: Well, that's more like it. What do you say, Jane?

Jane: I think it is quite pretty too.

Ellen: I will take it then.

- Customer:** I want a strong walking shoe with a low **heel**. Perhaps **calf** would be best. I like **court shoes**, but of course high heels are not **suitable** for country wear... As you see, I have rather small feet.
- Shop assistant:** Here's a pair about your size. **Try them on**... How do they feel?
- Customer:** They are rather comfortable, but they are a bit **tight** across the toes; I suppose they'll **give a little**.
- Shop assistant:** Yes, they'll **stretch** with wearing.
- Customer:** Very well, then let's see, what else did I want. Oh yes, some silk stockings, shoe polish, a pair of scissors, and some **safety-pins**.

VOCABULARY

up-to-date - zamonaviy

customer *n.* [ˈkʌstəmə] - xaridor

prosperous *adj.* [ˈprɒsp(ə)rəs] – muvofaqqiyatli, istiqbolli; to make the nation more rich and prosperous Syn: successful, flourishing, thriving, lucky

evidently *adj.* [ˈevid(ə)ntli] – aniq, ravshan, shubhasiz

fiction *n.* [ˈfɪkʃ(ə)n] – fantastika, uydirma

weep *v.* [wi:p] (wept) – yig'lamoq, ko'z yosh to'kmoq

price *n.* [praɪs] – narx, baho

shut *v.* [ʃʌt] – berkitmoq, yopmoq

would you mind... - ijozat bersangiz, ruxsat etsangiz, qarshi emasmisiz ...

lampshade *n.* [læmp ʃeɪd] – qandil, abajur, fonus

anything special you have in mind? – nima olishni o'ylab olganmisiz?

choice *n.* [tʃɔɪs] – tanlov

How much is it? How much does it cost? Narxi qancha? Qancha turadi?

dear *adj.* [dɪə] – qimmat, qadrli Syn. expensive, precious, lovely, charming

afford v. [ə'fɔ:d] - 1) qurbi yetmoq; (can afford, be able to afford) I can't afford it. — Buni cho'ntagim ko'tarmaydi. She could not afford to pay. — To'lashga qurbi etmadi. 2) bermoq, imkon bermoq The district affords minerals. — Bu hududda minerallar bor. The hills afford a fine view. — Teppaliklar ajoyib manzara kasb etadi.

cheap adj. [tʃi:p] - 1) a) arzon , qimmat emas e.g. It's not cheap to live in the city. It is cheaper to live in the south than in the north. Syn: inexpensive b) arzonlashtirilgan, pasaytirilgan (narx) Syn: cut-price

guinea n. - gineya (Anglya pul birligi 21 shilling)

bargain n./v. [bɑ:ɡɪn] - xarid, kelishuv; savdolashmoq to bargain about the price — narx ustoda savdolashmoq e.g. I hate bargaining. — Savdolashishni yoqtirmayman.

wrap v. [ræp] - o'ramoq, o'ranmoq e.g. He wraps himself warm in furs. Syn: bundle up, parcel e.g.: Wrap the tube in a piece of white paper.

counter n. ['kauntə] - rasta, bo'lma, savdo peshtaxtasi

kid n. - layka (hayvon bolasi terisidan ishlangan kiyim)

suede n. [swɛɪd] - zamsh (bug'u terisidan ishlangan baxmalsimon charm)

chamois n. [ʃæmi] - duhoba, zamsh

match v. [mætʃ] - a) moslamoq, juftlamoq, turmushga uzatmoq, uylantirmoq (rangini, shaklini va hok) tastelessly matched clothes — didsizlik bilan moslangan kiyim. I should be pleased to match my daughter with your son, so that we could become even closer friends. b) mos kelmoq (juftiga, rangi, shakli) She matches for him perfectly.

n. - juft This carpet and this sofa are/make a perfect match. I am looking for a match for my new shoes. a dress with a hat to match

size n. [saɪz] - o'lcham

measure v. [meʒə] - o'lchab ko'rmoq, o'lchamoq

reliable adj. [rɪ'laɪəbl] - ishonchli, sinalgan

millinery n. [mɪlɪn(ə)rɪ] - ayollar shlyapasi bo'limi

calf n. [kɑ:f] - buzoq terisi

glace' *n.* [gleis] – silliqlangan, ohorlangan teri, xrom (laklangan)

suede [sweid] *n.* - zamsh

shoe *n.* [ju:]– oyoq kiyim court shoes – earth shoes - gym shoes - running shoes - saddle shoes - sports shoes - tennis shoes - tight shoes - track shoes - well-fitting shoes

try on *v.* – kiyib ko'rmoq

tight *adj.* [tait]– tor Ant. loose - keng

stretch *v.* [stretʃ]– cho'zmoq, cho'zilmoq e.g.: He stretched his neck to see what was going on. Syn: strain, extend

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

Kinds of clothes: coat, shirt, t-shirt, blouse, cardigan, sweater, skirt, suit, trousers, shorts, a pull-over, dressing-gown, jersey, jeans, corduroy trousers (corduroys).

Articles of clothing: socks, stockings, scarf (muffler), kerchief, gloves, mittens, tie, handkerchief, tights, pyjamas, nightgown, underwear (undies).

Parts of clothes: collar, sleeve, belt.

Footwear: slippers, sandals, sport shoes, walking shoes, court shoes, rubber boots, training shoes, trainers.

Textiles: silk, cotton (print), velvet, woolen cloth.

Jewellery: ring, bracelet, ear-rings, chain, brooch, necklace.

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Fill in prepositions or adverbs where necessary.

A. 1. What size ... gloves does your daughter wear? 2. Is your blouse made ... silk or nylon? 3. This frock suits ... her and she looks so well today. 4. Go ... the fitting-room and try ... the green frock. 5. Go ... the mirror and have a look ... yourself. 6. I'm afraid the shirt is a bit loose ... you. 7. You must chose another belt. This one doesn't go ... your light dress. 8. I'm sure they will soon make ...

their quarrel. 9. The woman was made to believe that such shoes were not ... fashion ... that time.

B. 1. We have run meat. Let's go and buy some beef... the butcher's. 2. Please, weight half ... a pound ... sweets. 3. Will you give me a quarter ... a pound ... sausage? 4. Whom are you waiting ...? – I am waiting ... my friends. They are ... the greengrocer's. 5. She paid ... a cabbage and went 6. The salesmen will finish their work ... half ... an hour. 7. There is no cottage cheese ... the dairy today. 8. I am not going to stand ... a queue ... a tin ... sprats.

Ex. 2. Chose the right verb: (to expect – to wait)

1. Don't ... for him. He will return very late. 2. Nobody ... such an answer from him. 3. ... a minute. Your brother is sure to come soon. 4. Do you ... her to be late? 5. We ... him to repair the broken radio easily. 6. Let's ... little longer. 7. They ... the box-office to be opened on Sunday. 8. the students are ... impatiently for the ending of the academic year. 9. I ... my new shirt to become to me perfectly. 10. Everybody ... him to marry to Joanna.

Ex. 3. Translate into English.

1. Qaysi o'lchamda tufli kiyasiz? 2. Bu ko'ylak sizga yarashibdi. Bu shilyapa sizga yarashibdi. Bu ko'ylakni kiyib ko'ring. Rangi sizga mos tushadi. Manabu ko'fta menga yarsharmikin? 3. Yangi kastyumimga moslab tufli olmoqchiman. 4. Bu kastyum menga yarashmayapti, nazarimda. Boshqasini kiyb ko'rsam bo'ladimi? – Albatta, o'zingizga ma'qulini tanlang. Menimcha sizga bu kastyum yaxshiroq yarashadi. Kiyib ko'rasizmi? 5. Hozir havo issiq. Turli ranglardagi futbolka va shortiklar urif bo'lgan. 6. Bu qo'lqop paltoinga mos tushmaydi. Bu tasma binfsharang ko'ftanga mos emas. 7. Bu futbolka sizga kengroq, oynaga qarang. Bu etikni kiyib ko'ring. Bu etikni poshnasi baland, qo'nji qalin, sof teridan, bichimi ham so'ngi mo'dada. – Xa, juda bejirim, faqat ular oyog'imga tor. Kattaorq o'lchamdagisi bormi? 8. Bu palto men uchun o'ta qimmat. Arzonrog'idan

ko'rsating, iltimos. - Avval. kiyib ko'ring, chegirmasi bor, savdolashamiz. 9. Men ko'chaga kiyishga arzonroq tufli olmoqchiman. Men arzon kiyimlarni ma'qul ko'raman. Ularni qo'rqmasdan yuvishingiz mumkin. 10. Singlim taqinchoqlarga juda o'ch. Lekin u hech qachon pardoz qilmaydi. U tabiiy chiroyli. Jenifer bazmlarga zirak, uzuk, to'g'nog'ich va zanjirlarni taqib borishni xush ko'radi. 11. Keling janob, xizmat? - Shoyi galstuk olmoqchiman, ko'ylaginga moslab. - Qaysi rangni ma'qul ko'rasiz? - To'q ko'k yoki qora rangni afzal ko'raman. - Marhamat, taqib ko'ring, o'zingizni oynada ko'ring. Faqat maslahatim, siz ancha yosh ekansiz, to'q qizil yoki zangori galstuk ham sizga juda yarashadi. 12. Qo'lqop olasizmi, xonim? Qarang bizda turlari ko'p: layka, xrom, zamsh. - Yaxshi, laykalaringizni ko'rsatingchi. Biroz arzonlatasizmi? - Albatta, savdolashamiz. Ko'tarasiga olsangiz (to buy wholesale), 20 foiz chegirmasi bor (discount), chek bilan to'lasangiz (to pay by cheque) ham bo'ladi. 13. Bu ko'ylakni kiyib ko'rsam maylimi? - Xa xomim, rasta orqasida xona bor. - Kechirasiz bu torroq ekan, shu fasondagi boshqa kengrog'ini olib keling, iltimos. 14. Bu tuflini kiyib ko'ring. Shimingizga mos tushadi, ham juda qulay. - Lekin, sal qisiyaptida. - Hechqisi yo'q, kiyilganda biroz kengayadi.

Ex. 4. Read the text and try to retell it

SHOPPING

It's difficult to **imagine**¹ our life without shops. Wherever we may go, even in distant province villages we see a wide choice of **goods**² and different **advertisements**³. Nowadays villagers don't have to go to town to buy something. There are grocer's, greengrocer's, baker's, pastry shops, butcher's, and stores everywhere. Today supermarkets and department stores are becoming more popular. Because of good choice and high **quality**⁴ goods some people prefer supermarkets. But the price is rather **expensive**⁵ there. Therefore many costumers go to market.

Uzbek markets are always full of people and noisy especially on weekends. These markets have a large territory and special **sheds**⁶ for ready made clothes and

fabrics, **linen**⁷ and **blankets**⁸, building products and instruments, fruits and vegetables, home appliances and equipments, **fodder**⁹ and **cattle**¹⁰. There are canteens, fast-food restaurants in and around the markets and platforms for different social activities, national circus shows, and transports. It is very interesting to do shopping in Uzbekistan. If you want to buy something at a very **reasonable**¹¹ price you should **bargain about the price**¹². The sellers also prefer to bargain with individual clients. But be very careful with **speculators**¹³ and **pickpockets**¹⁴!

1 - tasavvur qilmoq; 2 - mahsulot, mol, tovar; 3 - reklama; 4 - sifat; 5 - qimmat; 6 - ayvon, naves, saroy; 7 - choyshab; 8 - adyal; 9 - em, kunjara, ozuqa (chorva uchun); 10 - chorva; 11 - ma'qul, maqbul; 12 - savdolashmoq; 13 - chayqovchi, oltin sotar; 14 - cho'ntakkesar, kisovur.

Lesson Thirteen

Grammar: Present perfect Continues

Text: Leaving the Car at Home (Transport)

I			working	at this hospital	for ten years.
You	have	been	learning	English	for six months.
They			researching	on this theme	since 2008.
She	has		building	the bridge	since January.
He			repairing	the road	for five months.

I	have not (=haven't)	been	working	at this hospital	for ten years.
You			learning	English	for six months.
They	researching		on this theme	since 2008.	
She	has not (=hasn't)		building	the bridge	since January.
He			repairing	the road	for five months.

Have	I	been	working	at this hospital	for ten years?
	You		learning	English	for six months?
	they		researching	on this theme	since 2008?
Has	she		building	the bridge	since January?
	he		repairing	the road	for five months?

Ex. 1. Look at the picture and say what the members of the family have been doing since 6 o'clock. Start with:

It is 7 o'clock now. Mary has been singing since I entered the room.
Helen
Bob and Tommy
Mr. Green
Mrs. Green
The baby / The dog / The cat
This is what my family has been doing for an hour.



Ex. 2. Practice the following sentences putting the verbs in brackets into the Present Perfect Continuous Tense.

*Model: He (wait) for me for fifteen minutes. → He **has been waiting** for me for fifteen minutes.*

1. My family (live) in the same house for 30 years now.
2. He (work) at this book for two years.
3. He (do) this odd job since morning.
4. I (look) at this picture for ten minutes, but I can't find you in it.
5. The teacher (talk) about this rule for the last twenty minutes.
6. She (stand) near the door for half an hour.
7. They (bargain) about the price almost for an hour.
8. She (try on) different clothes but can not find anything suitable to match to her shoes.
9. Mrs. Edison (weep) since early morning today.
10. We (sell) wholesale cotton fabrics for ages.
11. Kate (practice) the law for 5 years.
12. Where ... you (work)

Ex. 3. Complete the sentences using "since" and "for" wherever necessary.

1. It has been raining ... yesterday.
2. They have been waiting for us ... one o'clock.
3. We have been studying English ... three months.
4. this building has been standing here ... centuries.
5. What have you been doing ... last term.
6. She has been teaching at the University ... 1997.
7. I have been writing my report ... morning.
8. Alice has been going in for sport ... her childhood.
9. This park has been entertaining the visitors ... many years.
10. The University entrance commission has been admitting the documents of the applicants ... June 20.

Ex. 4. Find the best way to complete each sentence.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. I am so tired | a. because she has been living in London for three years. |
| 2. She can speak English fluently now | b. because she has been worrying about her child all this time. |
| 3. He successfully passed the examination | c. because I have been working the whole day. |
| 4. Mr. Brown is in prison now | d. because I have been living here for ten years. |
| 5. Mrs. Smith looks pale | e. because he has been studying well for this term. |
| 6. I know this city very well | f. because he has been falsifying the legal documents. |

Ex. 5. Translate into English

1. Ular bu masalani 3 soatdan beri muhokama qilishyapti. 2. U 10 yildan beri maktabda dars beryapti. 3. Qanchadan beri sigaret chekyapsiz? 4. Maggi ertalabdan beri pianino chalyapti. 5. Bu proekt to'g'risida anchadan beri o'ylab yuribman. 6. Ular 30 yildan beri birga yashashyapti. Uch nafar farzandlari bor. To'ng'ich o'g'li uch yildan beri ilmiy ish olib bormoqda. 7. Ertalabdan beri yomg'ir yog'yapti. Tashqariga chiqmaganimiz ma'qul. 8. Qayerga ketyapsiz? -- Shifoxonaga do'stimni ko'rib kelaman. U ikki oydan beri kasal. 9. Bu romanni ikki kundan beri o'qiyapman, lekin hech narsa tushunmadim. 10. To'rt yildan beri Universitetda tahsil olyapman. 11. Biz bu matodan anchadan beri foydalanyapmiz. U ishonchli, sinalgan, narxi ham qimmat emas. 12. Bu jurnalist gazetamizga 20 yildan beri oz hissasini qo'shib kelmoqda. 13. Martin xonim ikki soatdan beri telefonda gaplashyapti. 14. Singlim uch yildan beri figurali uchish sportiga qatnayapti. 15. Kechirasiz, siz anchadan beri shu shaharda yashayapsizmi? -- Xa, 10 yildan beri shu yerda yashayman, nimaydi? -- Aytolmaysizmi, shahardagi eng katta o'yingoh qayerda? - Eng katta o'yingoh Mashrab bogining orqasida, u bu yerdan avtobusda 15 minutlik yo'l.

LEAVING THE CAR AT HOME



When the weather is cold, it is not very much fun to wait for a bus. These people have been standing on the corner for fifteen minutes. They have been watching the traffic, looking for the bus, and hoping it will come soon. They have been talking about the bus and complaining about the weather.

Most of them feel cold. One smart man has been drinking coffee to stay warm. Traveling on busses **decreases** pollution, but people often would rather **drive** their cars. Many people are not used to the **bus schedules**, and they do not like to wait. On the other hand, many people have



Automated Cycle Stand in Paris

been taking the bus every day for many years. They say the bus has been coming on time every day, and they have never been late to work. In addition, they have not needed a **parking place** in all that time. Buses are very convenient when you are used to them. There is another form of transportation that is even more convenient. Bicycles are a great way to **avoid** from traffic jams and the problems of parking. More and more school-kids have been **riding** to their school for many years. To encourage people to use bicycles, many cities are introducing **bike-hire schemes** that allow cyclists to get a bike from a **cycle stand** and then leave it at another stand near their **destination**. The London bike-hire scheme has been performing a very cheap and safe transport service to locals and Here are some of the other cities where cycling is cool.

Paris. The Paris bike-hire scheme has 10 000 bicycles and 1,000 automated stands. The bikes are available for locals and tourists.

Amsterdam. In Amsterdam, bicycles make up around 40 per cent of the total traffic.

Barcelona. The Barcelona Biking system is used by residents who pay a small annual fee.

Copenhagen. Cyclists pay a deposit to use one of the city's public bikes. This is returned when the bike is left at another stand.

Tel Aviv. Tel Aviv is planning to have around 1, 500 bicycles available for hire at 100 stands around the city.

VOCABULARY

decrease [di:'kri:z] *v.* qisqartmoq, qisqarmoq, kamaytmoq e.g. The newspaper has **decreased** in size, but not in quality. Syn: abate, decline, drop, dwindle, fall, reduce, sink, subside Ant: climb, enlarge, escalate, grow, strengthen, wax

drive [draiv] *n.* 1. 1) a) yo'l yurish b) sayr, sayohat (avtomobilda) to go for a drive, go on a drive — avtomobilda sayohatga chiqish to have a drive, to take a drive — sayohat qilmoq e.g. Come with us for a drive in the country. Syn: ride , outing , excursion , trip 2) yo'lak, so'qmoq Syn: driveway

v. - drove - driven 1) a) olib bormoq (avtomobilda), eltib qo'ymoq e.g. She drove me to the station. b) bormoq (avtomobilda) e.g. We usually drive to the country on Sunday. Syn: ride, motor, go by car, go driving b) boshqarmoq (avtoullovni), minmoq (otni), haydamoq (mashinani, chorvani) She drives a car skillfully.

schedule [ˈʃedju:l] or [skedju:l] *n.* – jadval, ro'yxat, grafik

parking place – vaqtinchalik avtomobillar turar joyi

avoid *v.* [ə'void] – 1) bartaraf etmoq, qutilmoq, chap bermoq e.g.: She managed to avoid being punished. Syn: escape, evade Ant: catch, encounter, face, meet, 2) bekor qilmoq, yo'qqa chiqarmoq Syn: deviate, annul

ride *n.* [raid] - 1. 1) yurish, borish (biror narsani ustida, veloseped, ot, va. hok) Syn: drive 2) yo'lak Syn: riding 3) a) egar Syn: saddle-horse b) harakat vositasi 4) charxpalak, hayinchak (atraksion) to go on the rides

v. - rode - ridden 1) biror transport turi vositasida harakatlanmoq a) minmoq b) yurmoq (avtobusda, tramvayda, poezdda, velosepedda e.g.: The children loved to ride on Father's back.

bike-hire schemes [ski:m] – velosepedlarni ijaraga berish dasturi

cycle stand – velosepedlar saqlanadigan joy

destination *n.* [ˌdestɪn'eɪʃ(ə)n] – belgilangan joy, manzil, maqsad, yo'nalish; point of destination — yo'nalishning oxirgi nuqtasi, port of destination — belgilangan bandargoh, to reach (to arrive at) one's destination — belgilangan joyga yetib kelmoq Syn: place of destination, station of destination

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

Traffic crafts: bicycle, motor-bicycle (motorcycle), motor tricycle, scooter, car, lorry, buggy, tractor, truck, bus, trolleybus, tram, train (through train, slow train, fast train).

Sea crafts: kayak, canoe, boat, river boat, life boat, log boat, powerboat, sailing yacht, motor yacht, ship, steamer, tanker.

Air crafts: plane, biplane, helicopter, supersonic airliner.

Word combinations: a business trip, a tourist trip, to arrive at the airport, much/little luggage, to buy a single (return) ticket, business/tourist class, to catch a flight, on the plane, on board the ship, sea voyage, customs officer, passport control, booking office, check-in, to check-in,

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Match the words with the parts of the bicycle.

- | | | |
|--------------|----------|---------|
| - handbrake | - saddle | - lock |
| - chain | - spoke | - bell |
| - handlebars | - tyre | - light |
| - pedal | - wheel | |



Ex. 2. Complete the text filling in the words and word combinations of the lesson.

Last summer Mike's elder brother had a very interesting ... he went to New York ... He traveled ... The ... was fantastic. The sky was blue. There was no ... All the passengers enjoyed the voyage. My ... was not very ... as it was ... I had ... as I wanted to get back to London ...

Ex. 3. Listen to the sentences as the teacher reads them. If you can, change the verb phrase to the present perfect continuous tense. If the verb can not take a continuous tense, simply repeat the sentence as it is.

1. I've owned a car for ten years.
2. I've driven it to work every day.
3. I've never believed that cars are dirty.
4. I've always thought that cars are convenient.
5. I've taken my car to the center of the city.
6. I've parked very close to my office.
7. It has taken half an hour to drive to work.
8. I've always hated to wait in the cold.
9. I've thought about taking the bus in the summer.
10. I've waited for a more convenient bus schedule.
11. I have never had a car.
12. I've taken the bus every day for years.
13. I've had a lot of fun riding buses.
14. The schedule has been convenient for me.
15. The bus has come on time every day.
16. I've always liked the buses.
17. I've ridden with the same bus driver for two years.
18. I've said hello to him every morning.
19. The air has seemed polluted this week.
20. The weather has felt cold all week.

Ex. 4. Role Playing

In the exercise above, sentences 1-10 present the point of view of a person who drives a car regularly. Sentences 11-20 express the view of a person who usually rides the bus.

Choose a partner and make up a conversation between a car driver and a bus rider. You may use ideas and sentences from the previous exercise. The people in

your conversation will probably agree about some things and disagree about others. Perform your conversation for the class.

Ex. 5. Which words have the same meaning as the words in the story? Circle the letter of correct answer.

1. Traveling on busses **decreases** pollution, but people often would rather drive their cars.

a. reduce

b. increase

2. Traveling on busses decreases pollution, but people often would rather **drive** their cars

a. operate

b. ride

3. Many people are not used to the **bus schedules**, and they do not like to wait.

a. bus time-table

b. bus catalogue

4. Cyclists (=pedestrians) have not needed a **parking place** in all that time.

a. a special place for cars

b. garage

5. Bicycles are a great way to **avoid** from traffic jams and the problems of parking.

a. to get rid of

b. escape

6. Bicycles are a great way to avoid from traffic jams and the problems of **parking**.

a. leaving the car at a special place

b. stopping the car for a short time

7. More and more school-kids have been **riding** to their school for many years.

a. to go somewhere on bicycle

b. to go somewhere by bicycle

8. Many cities are introducing bike-hire schemes that allow cyclists to **gat** a bike from a cycle stand and then leave it at another stand near their **destination**.

a. a place one plans to get

b. the end of the road

Ex. 6. Fill in prepositions where necessary. (of, along, into, out, at, away, in)

1. The engine-driver drove his train at the rate ... forty miles an hour. 2. They drove the cattle ... the Chisholm Trail. 3. The police drew the thief ... a corner. 4.

He drew the mosquitoes ... of his room. 4. Mrs. Smith was about to drive the children ... when their father appeared in the gateway. 5. Just what are you driving ...? 6. What can I do to drive ... these feelings of sadness? 7. Don't drive people ... who want to help you. 8. The guests got into their cars and drove 9. We built the garage joining the house so that you can drive straight 10. The army drove ... the enemy with much effort and loss of life. 11. This medicine will help to drive the disease 12. The police used horses to drive the crowds

Ex. 7. Translate into English

1. Tog'am taksi haydovchisi. U o'n yildan beri mashina minyapti. Uning avtomashinasi so'ngi modelda. Agar mashina (to be out of order) buzilib qolsa, mashinani ozi ta'mirlaydi. 2. Men velosepedda yurishni ma'qul ko'raman. Uch yildan beri institutga velosepedda qatnayapman. U sog'liq uchun juda foydali, atrof-muhitga ham zarar etkazmaydi. 3. Universitetimizda velosepedlarni ijaraga berish dasturi bor. Talabalar o'quv yili boshida ijaraga veloseped oladilar. Talabalar turar joyi va fakultet binolari yaqinida avtomatlashtirilgan velosepedlar joyi bor. O'quv yili oxirida talabalar depozitlarini qaytarib oladilar. Velosepedda yurish talabalarini yo'l kira chiqimlarini (traffic expenses) kamaytiradi. Lekin qishda veloseped boshqarish mushkulroq. 4. Korxonamiz oldida mashina parki bor. Men olti yildan beri mashinamni shu yerda qoldiraman. Hafta kunlarida ertalab ve kechqurunlari yo'llar tirband bo'ladi, chorrahalarda uzoq kutib qolishimizga to'g'ri keladi. 5. Ikki soatdan beri mashinada yuribmiz lekin haligacha belgilangan joyga yetib borganimiz yo'q. 6. Nina odatda ishga avtobusda boradi. Uning aytishicha avtobuslar jadval bo'yicha doim vaqtda keladi. Avtobusda yurish juda maroqli.

Ex. 8. Read the anecdote and try to retell to each other.

An English tourist found himself in Norway with only enough money in his pocket to pay his passage back. As he knew that it would take him only two days to get to England, he decided that he could easily do without food. So he went on

board the steamer and bought a ticket. As he had not a luggage, he didn't have to check in.

He closed his ears to the sound of the lunch bell. When dinner time came he refused the invitation to accompany a fellow traveler to the saloon, saying that he didn't feel well.

The next morning he didn't go to breakfast and at a lunch time he again stayed in his cabin. At dinner time he was so hungry that he couldn't stand it any longer.

"I am going to eat," he said, "even if they throw me overboard afterwards." At dinner he ate everything the steward put in front of him and felt ready for the coming row. "Bring me the bill," he said to the steward. "The bill, sir?" said the man. "Yes," answered the traveler. "There isn't any bill," was the answer, "on the ship meals are included in the passage money."

Lesson Forteen

Grammar: *Past perfect Continues Tense*
(HAD+ BEEN+VERB+ING)

Text: *Native Americans*

I	had	been	wearing my seatbelt	when the car hit the hill.
You			working in the garden for three hours	when father came.
They			living in that house for since 1990	before they moved away.
She			talking on the phone since 2 o'clock	when her spouse arrived.
He			looking after the baby since morning	so he was very tired.

I	had not (=hadn't)	been	working hard on my English	so I failed at the exam.
You			taking the medicine regularly	so you didn't recover.
They			talking to each other for a year	when they divorced.
She			wearing her seatbelt	so she was injured seriously.
He			feeding his dogs for ten days	and they were hungry to death.

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Read the situation and then write a sentence.

Model: Allen came into the room. He had a black eye, a cut lip and scar on his hand. (he/fight) → He had been fighting.

- Tom was having supper. He was feeling very tired. (he/play/ for half an hour).
- When I walked into the room, it was empty. But there was a smell of cigarettes. (Somebody/smoke/in the room)
- When Daniel came from the beach, he looked very red from the sun. (he/lie/in the sun too long)
- Beatrice woke up in the midnight. She was scared and she didn't know where she was. (she/dream)
- When Mr. Black came into the kitchen and switched on the light the room started to burn. (the oven/let gas)
- When Sarah arrived home she found her mother weeping in her bedroom and the father was going out. (her parents/quarrel)
- As soon as Mrs. Kendal got out off the car she vomited. (Mr. Kendal/drive/too fast)
- When the baby recovered she felt better. (She/worry/for a week)

Ex. 2. Put the verbs in brackets into the Past Perfect Continues Tense or Present Perfect Continuous Tense.

1. They said they (to translate) the text for three hours.
2. He says he (to drive) a taxi for ten years.
3. It was raining in the morning and it (to rain) for the whole night.
4. He was working when I came, and he obviously (to work) for a long time, because he was very tired.
5. She is a skilful teacher. She (to teach) for twenty years.
6. Jim explained that he (to potter) in the shed for a couple of hours making the table.
7. My blouse is almost ready. My granny (to sew) it since morning.
8. Yesterday I found the book which I (to look for) for several days.
9. Now I can show you the picture I (to paint) for a week.
10. Suddenly she lost her conscious and felt down. She (to eat) nothing for five days.

Ex. 3. Find the best way to complete each sentence.

1. I was so tired a. because she had been living in London for three years.
2. She spoke English b. because she had been worrying about her child all fluently this time.
3. He successfully passed c. because I had been working the whole day. the examination
4. Mr. Brown was in d. because I had been studying with her in the same prison faculty.
5. Mrs. Smith looked pale e. because he had been studying well for this term.
6. I knew her well f. because he had been falsifying the legal documents.

Ex. 4. Translate into English.

1. Men u bilan uchrashmasdan oldin ismini eslashga harakat qilayotgandim.
2. Ular ajrashmaslaridan oldin baxtli yashashayotgandi.
3. Meggi Braynni ko'rishi bilan quvonib ketdi. U Braynni anchadan beri kutayotgandi.
4. Bino zilzila (earthquake) tufayli qulab tushdi. Anchadan beri u yerda hech kim yashamayotgandi.
5. Ular uylarida emasdilar. Ikki kundun beri dalada ishlashayotgandi.
6. Biz juda

toliqqandik. Ikki haftadan beri uyimizni ta'mirlayotgandik. 7. Ular to'rt soatlar chamasi piyoda ketishayotgandi, keyin qayerdandir mashina kelib qoldi. 8. Doktor juda holsiz edi. U ikki kundan beri bemorlarni qabul qilayotgandi.

NATIVE AMERICANS

In the past, the earliest residents of the Americas were called American Indians. Before the arrival of the European **explorers** and **settlers** hundreds of different Indian **tribes** had been living on this continent in **harmony** and peace with nature. They had been fishing, hunting and planting corn and white potatoes.



They had been making clothes from leather and fur. They had been living in **tents** and reserving their customs, traditions and religious identity. The typical indigenous people were tall, long haired, and square faced. They had deep set eyes, broad forehead and straight nose.

When the first colonists came to this land aboard the ship Mayflofer Massasoit's tribe helped them to survive from hunger and cold. The Pilgrims⁶ were not trained and equipped to **cope** with life in the **wilderness**. They had been suffering tremendously because of cold weather, diseases, and insufficient food. Massasoits were friendly to them and taught them how to hunt and fish, how to plant pumpkins, beans and corn; and how to fertilize the corn with fish. Pilgrims learned canoeing, making chocolate, chewing gums, pipes, and **rubber** balls.

Although the Native Americans helped the European settlers in many ways, because both groups wanted the same land, they became enemies. **Both** Europeans and Indians had different attitudes, values and lifestyle and this led to **great misunderstandings** and long-lasting cultural conflicts. The result was a long history of **bloodshed** and **cruelty**. The Indians had been fighting with **bows** and **arrows** while the settlers had **powder guns**. The Indians were divided into hundreds of different tribes that were **hostile** to one another.

⁶ The passengers who came to America on board the ship Maylofer in search religious freedom in 1620

In the early decades of the 19th century, Native Americans of the American **Deep South** were removed from their homeland. In 1786, the U.S. government pushed the Indians onto the reservations. Since 1920 they had been suffering from **lack of** food and different epidemics. Approximately 80 % of Native Americans died **due to** syphilis, measles and moral depression. In the 1920s, American treatment of Native Americans began to improve. As a result, the population grew. Today 2.5 million Native Americans live in the U.S.A., including the Aleuts and the Inuits (Eskimoes) of Alaska. Every year, the federal government's Bureau of Indian Affairs (BIA) spends millions of dollars to improve Native American **living conditions**.

(Source: *The U.S.A. Customs and Institutions / Ethel Tiersky. Martin Tiersky. – 4th ed. P. 240*)

VOCABULARY

explorer [ɪksˈplɔːrə] – *n.* tadqiqotchi, kashfiyotchi

explore *v.* a) tadqiq qilmoq, o'rganib chiqmoq, tahlil qilmoq to explore carefully

Syn: investigate, inspect b) sinab ko'rmoq, clear up c) razvedka qilmoq

settler [setlə] *n.* – kolonist, boshqa joydan ko'chib kelib o'rnatib oluvchi

tribe [traɪb] *n.* – qabila, urug', jamoa to lead a tribe — qabilani boshqarmoq /

native tribe — o'troq qabila / nomadic, wandering tribe — ko'chmanchi qabila /

primitive tribe — ilk qabila

harmony [hɑːm(ə)nɪ] *n.* – hamohanglik, mutanosiblik, kelishuv Syn: concord,

accord

tent *n.* – chayla, kapa to erect, pitch, put up a tent — chayla o'rnatmoq, to take

down a tent — chaylani yig'ishtirmoq circus tent

cope [kəʊp] *v.* - kurashmoq; uddalamoq, uddasida chiqmoq, chidamoq (with) e.g.

I can't cope with such a pile of work this weekend. How is Mary coping with Jim's

mother? **wilderness** *n.* [ˈwaɪdənɪs] – yovvoyilik, o'zlashtirilmagan joy

rubber [rʌbə] *n.* – rezina, kauchuk, kalosh

both [bəʊθ] *ol.* – ikkisi ham, ikkalasi ham e.g. Both of them wanted the same land.

Ant. Neither... nor [naiðə] - na... na... he neither knows nor cares — u bilmaydiham, e'tibor ham qilmaydi / neither here nor there, neither hot nor cold, neither more nor less than / Neither of you can do that. If you do not take part in the conference, neither shall I.

misunderstanding *n.* ['misʌndə'stændɪŋ] – tushunmovchilik, anglashimoychilik

bloodshed *n.* [blʌdʃed] – qonli urush

cruelty *n.* [kruəlti] – shafqatsizlik

bow *n.* [bau] – kamon, yoy

arrow *n.* [æraʊ] - kamon o'qi to shoot an arrow at..., belgi

powder gun - porxli miltiq

hostile *adj.* [hostail] – noahil, bir biriga qarshi, dushmanlik

lack (of) *n.* [læk] 1) yetishmovchilik, kamomat, tanqislik, taqchillik (biror narsadan) for lack of — yetishmovchilik sabab e.g. For lack of fuel, their plans were grounded. lack of balance - lack of capacity - lack of conscientiousness - lack of coordination - lack of discipline - lack of experience - lack of faith - lack of knowledge - lack of land - lack of logic - lack of moderation - lack of respect

due (to) [dju:] – sabab, qarab, ko'ra (vaziyatga qarab / ko'ra)

living condition [lɪvɪŋ kən'dɪʃ(ə)n] – yashash sharoiti

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

Peoples Appearance

Figure: tall, short, middle-sized; stout, thin, slim; straight, stooping

Face: thin, plump, fat; oval, round, square; beautiful, handsome, good-looking; lovely, pretty, attractive; common, plain, ugly

Complexion: rosy, pale; fresh, dark, fair

Eyes: blue, brown, hazel, dark, grey; deep set, close-set, wide-set

(Eye)-lashes: long, short, curving, straight

(Eye)-brows: straight, arched, penciled, bushy

Forehead: broad, narrow; low, high *Nose:* straight, hooked, turned up, snub(bed)

Mouth: large, small, tiny, red

Lips: thin, full, thick

Hair: long, short; curly, straight; red brown, dark, fair, grey, chestnut, golden;
thick; to wear one's hair long, short; to wear a beard, a moustache
Arms and legs: long, short; shapely, small
to gain (lose) weight; to keep fit

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Complete these sentences with *both / neither / either*.

Sometimes you need *of*.

Model: There was an apple and a pear on the table. I was thirsty so I ate both of them. Do you want tea or coffee? Either. I really don't mind.

1. After the accident cars stopped. drivers got out and started shouting at each other. drivers were very aggressive.
2. It was an exciting football match. team played well.
3. Which of the two films did you prefer? – Actually I didn't like them.
4. these gloves are very pretty. I will buy them.
5. Is he black eyed or brown? his eyes are deep blue.
6. When the Titanic started to sink, they were really frightened because them could swim.
7. my parents is Native American. My father is Polish and my mother is Italian.
8. I have read these novels. You may take
9. Do you mind which sandwich I take? – No, take
10. When are you going to move, tomorrow or the day after tomorrow? -
I made up my mind.

Ex. 2. Complete with *both ... and..., neither ... nor...* and *either ... or ...*.

*Model: Pauline was angry. So was Alfred. → Both Pauline and Alfred were angry.
He didn't eat. He didn't drink. → He neither ate nor drank.*

1. The hotel was not clean. And it was not comfortable. The hotel was neither
.....

2. It was a boring film. It was very long to. The film was
3. Is that man's name Raymond? Or is it Robert? – It is one of the two. That man's name ...
4. I am not addicted in drugs? I am not addicted in cigarettes. I am
5. The students couldn't answer the question. The teacher also couldn't find the right answer. could answer the question.
6. We painted the front of the house. Our neighbor also painted their house. painted our houses.
7. Mrs. Margaret didn't explain the situation to her husband. She didn't want to speak to her daughter. Mrs. Margaret explained the situation neither
8. Nick wanted to have a son. So did Patricia. wanted to have a son.

Ex. 3. Chose the right word: *due to – explore – explorer – settle – settlement- settler – tribe – harmony – cruel – cruelty – hostile – bow – arrow – powder gun – lack of*

1. Many Indian tribes disappeared ...bad conditions on reservations.
2. For about a month, the Pilgrims lived aboard ship and sent out a few men the coastline.
3. The first English ... was established in 1607, in Virginia.
4. Spanish pirates had discovered Greenland before English arrived in this land.
5. 102 passengers and 25 sailors came to the New World in 1620 and in Massachusetts.
6. The Indian tribes and European settlers couldn't live in because of significantly different social values.
7. The Pilgrims could hardly ... with the wild life and suffered tremendously.
8. I can not ... with such a crazy child.
9. European colonists were too to indigenious people and transferred them to reservations.
10. Many specious of animals are disappearing because of the cruelty of the human.
11. I am still suffering from ... words to explain my thoughts.
12. The both tribes were to each other.
13. Early men on this continent hunted with and
14. European soldiers were armed with ... and well trained.

Ex. 4. Give a short description of your friend according to the following model:

She is rather short but so slim and graceful that she seems taller than she is. She has shapely legs and arms and her hands are beautiful. Her hair, slightly red, is curly. Her face is oval, her eyes are brown, but when she is angry they seem black. Her complexion is fresh, her mouth is full, her lips – red. She is lovely.

Ex. 5. Translate into English.

1. Tadqiqotchilar noqulay ob-havo sharoitidan va oziq-ovqat taqchilligidan qiyinalishayotgandi. Uch kundan beri tinimsiz qor yog'ayotgandi. Ular chayladan tashqariga chiqishdan qo'rqishardi. Tashqarida ularga ko'chmanchi hindu qabilalari hujum qilishlari mumkin edi. Ular bunday sharoitga chidasha olishmadi.
2. Rodjer na dadasi bilan na onasi bilan xayirlashishni istamadi. U bir haftadan beri ota-onasi bilan gaplashmayotgandi.
3. Anya malla shochli, yumaloq yuzli, sarvqomat qiz edi. Uning sochlari usun va ko'm-ko'k ko'zlari charaqlab turardi.
4. Ikkala qabila ham bir-birlariga dushman edi. O'zaro tushunmovchiliklar tufayli ularning o'rtasida tez-tez qonli va shavqatsiz urushlar bo'lib turardi.
5. Epidemik kasalliklar keng tarqalgan hududlarda odamlar dori-darmon etishmovchiligidan qiyinalishayotgandi.
6. Porxli miltiqlar kashf qilingunga qadar qabilalar bir-birlari bilan kamon va nayzalar bilan jang qilishardi.
7. Hayronman, Pamela qaynanasini qanday qilib uddasidan chiqayapti. Linden xonim keksa bo'lsa ham anchagina durkun ko'rinadi. U uzun sochlari tim qora, ko'zlari chuqur, lablari yo'g'on, qoshlari qalin va peshonasi keng ayol.

Ex: 6. Let one of the students give a very short description of the appearance (and character) of a person, male or female, you all know very well. Try to find out who that person is by asking questions as in the model.

A: How old is she?

B: She is young, tall and slim.

A: Is her complexion rosy?

B: No, rather pale, I'd say.

A: She is blue eyed, isn't she?

B: No, her eyes are dark.

A: And what about her nose?

B: She has a very nice turned-up nose.

A: It is Ann, isn't it?

B: No, it is not. You are mistaken. (That's right. You've guessed).

Lesson Fifteen

Grammar: *Some Verbs and Word Combinations Followed by a Gerund / HAVE SOMETHING DONE*

Text: *Wild Fire (Natural disasters)*

to stop	can't help	to practice		
to finish	to go on	to give up	to be interested in	
to mind	to do	to consider	to be good at	
to enjoy	to delay	to postpone	to be fed up with	
to be fond of	to regret	to miss	to be excited about	verb+ing smth.
to be good at	to avoid	to risk	advantages of for	
to go in for	to deny	to suggest	in spite of	
to be worth	to enjoy	to admit	instead of	

Note! The preposition **without** may be followed by a gerundial construction: e.g. He left the room **without saying** a word. One can't learn **without making mistakes**.

Have + object + past participle

Muggy	had	the roof	repaired	yesterday.
Where did you	have	your hair	done?	
We are	having	the house	painted	at the moment.
Bob has just	had	a telephone	installed	in his flat.
How often do you	have	your car	serviced?	
Why don't you	have	that coat	cleaned?	
I want to	have	my photograph	taken.	
George	had	his nose	broken	in fight.
I	had	all my money	stolen	during my holiday.

Note! Get something done is possible instead of have something done (mainly in formal spoken English): e.g. I think you should get your hair cut. (=have your hair cut)

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Complete the following sentences using a gerund.

1. Go on ...
2. He stopped ...
3. He couldn't help ...
4. We all enjoyed ...
5. Have you finished ...?
6. I don't mind ...
7. Her cousin is fond of ...
8. The child is rather good at ...
9. She goes in for ...
10. The poem is worth ...
11. The boy doesn't read the text without ...
12. You won't go there without ...
13. Who usually does ... in your family?
14. He got in to his car and drove away without ...

Ex. 2. Translate into English.

1. Gaplashishni to'xtating.
2. Janjallashishni bas qiling.
3. Chekishni tashlang.
4. Derazani ochishimga qarshi emasmisiz?
5. Biz Mayklining kuylashidan zavqlandik.
6. Bu film ko'rishga arziydi.
7. Bu maqola o'qishga arzimaydi.
8. Ular xonadan hech narsa de'may chiqib ketishdi.
9. Men rasm chizishni juda yoqtiraman.
10. O'qishda davom eting. Bu safar ancha durust o'qiyapsiz.
11. Men tashvishlanmasdan turolmadim.
12. Talabalar o'zlarini kulgidan to'xtata olishmadi.

13. Brayn suzishdan yaxshi, uning ukasi esa yugirishdan. 14. Mening akam boksga qatnashadi.

Ex. 3. Answer the questions as in the model.

Model: Did Ann make the dress her self? – No, she had it made.

1. Did you cut your hair yourself? 2. Did they paint the wall themselves? 3. Did Roger cut down the tree himself? 4. Did your father repair the car himself?

Ex. 4. Complete the sentences using the words in brackets.

Model: *We (the house / paint) at the moment.* → *We are having the house painted at the moment.*

1. You (your hair / cut) last week? 2. Your hair is too long. I think you should (it / cut). 3. How often (you / your car / service)? 4. The engine in Tim's car is out of order, so he had to (a new engine fit). 5. We (swimming pool / build) in the garden now. 6. My watch is slow. I must (the watch / repair).

Ex. 5. Answer the questions.

1. Jill's coat was dirty so she took it to the cleaners. Now it is clean. What has Jill done?
2. Tom thinks his eyesight is getting worse, so he is going to the optician. What is Tom going to do there?
3. Maxim is at the barber's now. A barber is shaving off his beard. What is Maxim doing?
4. Gulshan's bracelet was broken, so she took it to a jeweler's. Now it is O.K. What has she done?
5. George's nose was broken in fight. What happened to George?
6. John's money was stolen on a train. What happened to John?
7. Andrew's luggage was checked at the police station. What happened to Andrew?
8. Jane lost the key to her flat and called a carpenter. What happened to Jane?

Ex. 6. Translate into English.

1. Kecha kechasi uyga kelayotib sumkamni o'g'irlatib qoydim. 2. Biz uyimizni tomini ta'mirlatyamiz. 3. O'tgan hafta janob Smis mashinasining matorini ulmashtirgizdi. 4. Jiyanim mashinasini urdirib oldi. 5. Sochingni qayerda turmaklatding? – O'zim turmakladim. 6. Dadam har tong sartaroshda soqolini qirtishlatadi (trim off). 7. Biz darvozamizni ko'k ranga boyattirmoqchimiz. 8. Yangi kastyum tiktirdim, qara yarashibdimi? - Xa, lekin u sizga ozgina torroq nazarimda. - Hechqisi yoq, tor kiyim hozir mo'dada.

WILD FIRE

Wildfires are very common in many places around the world, including much of the areas of Australia, South Africa, and the forested areas of the United States and Canada.



The climates of these areas are sufficiently **moist** to allow the growth of trees. During **droughts** fallen branches, leaves and grasses and became highly **flammable**. Global warming also has been increasing the number of fires in many areas.

This morning at five o'clock, the Green Mountain Restaurant caught on fire. Nobody noticed the fire until six o'clock, when the house next door started to burn. **Firefighters** came from all over the area. They began to fight the



fire at seven o'clock. Now it is eight o'clock, and the fire is still going strong. The firefighters are working hard, but they have not brought the **blaze** under control yet. Every few minutes they call more help. Fire Chief Brown says that the owner

of the restaurant hadn't the **fire warning system** installed in the building. He had the restaurant built out of wood and besides quite near the forest. Chief Brown is afraid that by the time the fire stops burning, nothing will **remain** of the restaurant.

Mr. Brain, the owner of the restaurant is going to choose a new place. He will have a new restaurant constructed out of **fireproof bricks** and **cement**. He says that he will have installed fire warning system and **fire pipeline** in the building. To his great misfortune, he had all his money stolen and his car crashed a month ago.

VOCABULARY

moist *adj.* [moist] – ho'l, nam, seryomg'ir

drought *n.* [draut] – qurg'oqchilik

flammable *adj.* [fleimb(ə)l] – yonadigan, yonuvchan

firefighter *n.* [faɪəfaɪtə] – o't o'chiruvchi

blaze *n.* [bleiz] - 1) yorqin olov, mashala in a blaze — olov qarida Syn: flame, flare, fire 2) do'zax olovi, do'zax 3) yorug' nur, yorug'lik; yorqin rang 4) nur Syn: lustre, shine, glory, splendour • - blaze of publicity *v.* 2. 1) yorqin olov bo'lib yonmoq 2) yaltiramoq, nur sochmoq e.g. The streets of London blazed with bonfires. Syn: sparkle

fire warning system – yong'indan ogohlantiruvchi moslama

remain [rimeɪn] - 1) qoldiq, sarqit, iz e.g. Coal is the remains of an ancient vegetation.

v. qolmoq e.g. My parents remained in England. Syn: stay e.g. Mother was advised to remain indoors for a week.

fireproof *adj.* [faɪəpru:f] – olov o'tmaydigan, olovga chidamli (waterproof, bulletproof)

brick *n.* [brɪk] 1) g'isht Syn: clinker 2) kubik 3) buxanka (non) *v.* g'isht termoq e.g. They have bricked up the lower part of the window.

cement *n.* [si'ment] - 1) sement 2) mustahkamlash vositasi *v.* sementlamoq, qotirmoq, mustahkamlamoq - cement a friendship *Syn:* maintain

(fire) pipeline *n.* [paɪplajn] – yongin o'chirish tarmog'i (trubaprovod)

TOPICAL VOCABULARY

disaster (to experience, meet, suffer (a) disaster, to cope with (a) disaster, recover from (a) disaster), catastrophe, earthquake, erupt, eruption, flood, hurricane, avalanche, blizzard, emergency, survivor, survive, predict, unpredictable, tremor, shake, destroy, collapse, explode, wreck, crush, injured, victim, rescue, risk, risky, expect, unexpected

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Ex.1. Match the words with definitions.

drought	a strong storm with winds and snow
earthquake	fire spreading rapidly through trees
flooding	snow sliding quickly down a mountain
volcanic eruption	a very strong fast wind
avalanche	a long period without rain
hurricane	storms with very strong turning winds and dark clouds
forest fire	the covering of dry land with water
blizzard	a shaking of the earth's surface
tornado	the explosion of a volcano

Ex. 2. Look at the picture below of well-know monument in Tashkent



Where is the monument?

Why is it there?

What time does the clock show?

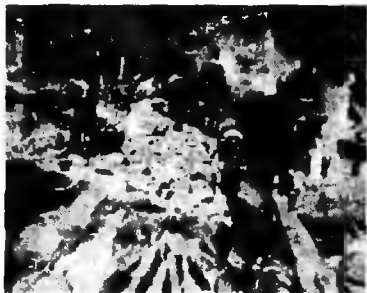
When did the earthquake strike?

Ex. 3. Read the text and fill in: 1. (*twist, funnel, wind, lightning, destroy, tornado*)

A hot afternoon in the spring is the most likely time for a Clouds become dark. There is thunder, ..., and rain. A cloud forms a ... and begins to The funnel moves faster and faster. The faster the winds, the louder the noise. A tornado's path is narrow, but with that narrow path, a tornado can ... everything.



2. (*destroy, injure, Richter scale, crush, tent, helicopter*)



As many as 2,000 people have died and thousands more ... in an earthquake which ... the town of Neftegorsk on Sakhalin island of Russia. The tremor measured 7.5 on the Most of the dead were ... in their homes while they were asleep. The government provided the homeless people with ..., and ... are carrying the injured to hospital.

3. (*avalanches, dead, knock off, rescue, blankets*)

More than 200 people were believed ... and 400 others injured as ... of snow swept down mountainsides along the Srinigar-Jammu in Kashmir. The police said that 5 buses had been ... the road during the avalanches. About 5,000 people have been ... from vehicles stuck in deep snow on the road. Helicopters dropped food and ... along the highway for the stranded travelers.



4. (*sweep-swept, disaster areas, damage, homeless*)



On the 17th August, 1969 a powerful hurricane ... across the southern states of the USA killing 235 people and making 20,000 ... in Mississippi and Louisiana alone. The wind speeds reached 300 km per hour and did so much ... that both states were declared ... by the government.

Ex. 4. Chose the right word: *to stay – to remain*

1. I don't think I'll ... at the Browns more than a fortnight. 2. Mother was advised to ... indoors for a week. 3. He is ... with us for another week, isn't he? – No, he is leaving tomorrow morning, I am afraid. 4. I got acquainted with Miss Frances during my ... at this hotel. 5. The tornado was tremendously strong but the whole villagers ... alive. 6. This building has been ... here for many years. 7. Emily scarcely ... to thank him for it. 8. I wept, and could not ... from weeping. 9. Let's ... this chapter unchanged. 10. The wind is so strong and blowing the last ... leaves away.

Ex. 5. Translate into English.

1. 1966 yil, 26 aprel kuni Toshkent shahrida zilzila bo'ldi. Kuchli yer silkinishi oqibatida bir qancha odamlar vafot etdi, 150 kishi jarohatlandi va minglab odamlar boshpanasiz qolishdi. Yer silkinishi (tremor) Rexter shkalasi bo'yicha 8 balga yetdi, natijada bir qancha binolar qulab tushdi, maktablar, shifoxonalar va zavodlar jiddiy shikastlandi, shahar markazi (wreck) vayron bo'ldi. 2. Bu yil Avstraliyada qurg'oqchilik oqibatida qishloq xo'jaligiga jiddiy zarar yetdi. Katta-katta ekin maydonlari yomg'irsiz qoldi. Fermerlar chorva uchun yetarli ozuqa yetishtira olmadilar va qimmat yem sotib olishga majbur bo'lishmoqda. Kuchli shamol unumdor tuproqni uchirib yubormoqda. Hukumat fermerlarga moddiy yordam yuborishga qaror qildi. 3. Kecha Italiyadagi suv toshqini natijasida bir necha odam

vafot etdi va minglab turara joylar shikastlandi. Tanaro daryosi qirgo'qdan toshib mamlakatning shimoliy-g'arbidagi qishloqlarni oqizib ketdi. Jarohatlanganlar vertalyotlarda yaqin atrofdagi shifoxonalarga olib kelinmoqda. Italiya bosh vaziri Favqulodda Komissiya tuzishga qaror qildi. Mahalliy aholi boshqa yerga ko'chirilmoqda (evacuate).

Lesson Sixteen



1. A *clause* is a part of a sentence. A *relative clause* tells us which person or thing (or what kind of person or thing) the speaker means:

- the man – he lives next door – is very friendly → The man who lives next door is very friendly.

- we know a lot of people – they live in Tashkent → We know a lot of people who live in Tashkent.

- I don't like stories – they have unhappy ending. → I don't like stories that have unhappy ending.

2. There often prepositions (in / at / with etc.) in relative clauses. Study the position of the prepositions in these sentences.

Do you know the girl? Tom is dating with her. → Do you know the girl (who / that) Tom is dating with?

Are these the books (that) you have been looking for?

The girl (who / that) he fell in love with left him after a few weeks.

The bed (that) I slept in last night was not very comfortable.

3. You can not use **what** instead of **that**:

Everything (that) he said was true. (not “everything what he said ”)

I gave him all the money (that) I had. (not “all ... what I had”)

What = the thing(s) that: Did you hear what I said? (= the words that I said)

I won't tell anyone what happened. (=the thing that happened)

4. When **who** or **that** are objects of the verb in the relative clause, we can leave them out:

Have you found the keys you lost? (but not “Have you found the keys you lost them?”)

The dress you have bought doesn't fit you very well. (= the dress that you have bought)

Is there anything I can read? (= is there anything that I can read)

5. **Whose**, **whom** and **where** in relative clauses:

a) We use **whose** mostly for people:

This is the man whose house collapsed during the earthquake.

Is this the woman whose son is going to marry to your daughter?

I remember the lady whose husband crashed my car.

b) **Whom** is possible instead of **who** (but not with a preposition **to** / **from** / **with whom**):

The man whom I wanted to see was on holiday. (I wanted to see him)

The girl with whom he fell in love left him after a week. (= the girl who he fell in love with... .)

Is he the very man from whom you borrowed the money?

c) We use **where** in a relative clause to talk about places:

I still remember the village where I spent my childhood.

Mr. Clark took the police where the crime was committed.

I would like to drive you to a place where there are a lot of flowers.

6. Prepositions + **whom** / **which**

Mr. Carter, *to whom I spoke on the phone last night*, is very interested in our plan.

Fortunately we had enough food, *without which we couldn't have survived.*

Jack has three brothers. All of them are married. = Jack has three brothers, all of whom are married.

Anastasia has a lot of books. She hasn't read most of them = Anastasia has a lot of books, most of which she hasn't read.

none of / many of / much of / (a) few of / some of / any of / half of / each of / both of / neither of / either of / one of / two of etc.	+ whom (people) + which (things)
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------

He tried on three jackets, **none of which** fitted him.

They have got three cars, **two of which** they never use.

Tom has a lot friends, **many of whom** he was at school with.

Two men, **neither of whom** I had seen before, came into my office.

7. Some clauses begin with **-ing** or **-ed**

Do you know the girl **talking to Tom**?

The policemen **investigating the robbery** are looking for the three men.

Who was that man **standing outside**?

The man **injured in the accident** was taken to the hospital.

None of the people **invited to the party** can come.

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Find the best way to complete each sentence.

1. A fashion model is someone	a. who breaks into a house and steals money.
2. An architect is someone	b. who puts on new clothes and stands in front of cameras
3. A Vegetarian is someone	c. who doesn't drink alcohol.
4. A customer is someone	d. who designs buildings.
5. A shoplifter is someone	e. who doesn't eat meat.
6. A burglar is someone	f. Who steals from a shop.
7. A teetotaler is someone	j. who buys something from a shop.

Ex. 2. Complete with: that, who, what, whose, whom, where, which

1. She gives her children everything ... they want. 2. Tell me ... you want and I'll try to help you. 3. Why do you blame me for the everything ... goes wrong? 4. I can't lend you any money. All ... I have got is a pound. 5. I don't agree with ... you've just said. 6. Nora is the only person ... understands me. 7. A widow is a woman ... husband is dead. 8. Do you remember the woman ... dog has bitten you. 9. The reason ... I am phoning you is to invite you to a party. 10. 1945 was the year ...the Second World War ended. 11. He came back to the town ... he was born. 12. The girl with ... I wanted to start a family is a Native American. 13. The film ... I saw last night was frightening. 14. A friend of mine ... father is the manager of a company, helped me to get a job. 15. The storm ... nobody had been expecting, caused a lot of damage. 16. He has got beautiful horses none of ... he never rides.

Ex. 3. Chose the most suitable ending from the list and make it into a relative clause.

he invented the telephone	it makes computers
she runs away from home	it gives the meanings of words
they are never on time	it won the race
they stole my car	it can support life
they used to hang on that wall	it was found last week

1. Gerry works for a company 2. The book is about a girl 3. What was the name of the horse. 4. The police have caught the man . 5. Alexander Bell was the man 6. Where are the pictures 7. The police are still trying to identify the body... . 8. A dictionary is book 9. I don't like people 10. it seems that Earth is the only planet

Ex. 4. Translate into English.

1. Kecha poygada g'olib bo'lgan otning laqabi "Bulut". 2. Izlayotgan kitobingizni topdingizmi? 3. Sen menga tanishtirgan odam hech qayerda ishlamas ekan. 4. Men

muzlatgich ishlab chiqaradigan zavodda ishlayman. 5. Algebradan imtihon topshirmoqchi bo'lgan abituriyentlar (applicants) ertaga kelishlari lozim. 6. Otasi vafot etgan do'stim boshqa shahrga ko'chib ketdi. 7. Mirshablar mashinasini urib olgan shafiyorni qidirishyapti. 8. O'tgan yili biz qolgan mehmonxona juda zamonaviy edi. 9. Har kuni senga telefon qilayotgan qiz kim? 10. Men qayerda tugilganligimni, qayerda savod chiqarganimni eslayolmayman. 11. Akasi meni urgan bola men yoqtirgan qiz bilan uchrashib yuribdi. 12. Sen uylanmoqchi bo'lgan qizning ota-onasi ajralishgan ekan, shuni bilasanmi? 13. Men har tong 10 chaqirim naridagi do'konga yugirib borib kelaman. 14. Bu mening ota-onam yashagan uy. Bu esa bolaligimda soyasida o'ynashni yoqtiradigan daraxt. 15. Onam sovg'a qilgan uzukni o'g'irlatib qo'ydim. 16. Doktorlar to'fonda jarohatlangan odamni operasiya qilishyapti.

SCOTLAND THE BEAUTIFUL

He who has not seen Scotland does not really know Great Britain.

Earliest **evidence** of human settlement in Scotland dates from the Middle Stone Ages. Hunters and fishermen on the west coast joined with farming communities who made as Shetland. The Romans were active in the first century AD⁷ but made so little **impact** on hostile tribes.

In 843 the Scots and the Picts united to found the kingdom of Scotland. A legal and administrative **uniformity** was established by David I whose 29-year **reign** ended in 1153.

1707 was the year that parliament of England and Scotland were united and formed United Kingdom. Since then Scotland is a part of the United Kingdom. Its symbol is **thistle**, and its **patron saint** is St. Andrew. The country is divided into Highlands and Lowlands. Most of the industry is **concentrated** in Lowlands, in the Clyde Valley. Glasgow is its largest and busiest town, Edinburgh is its capital. Glasgow and Edinburgh are the two great centers of Scotland. There is only 45

miles between them, and it will take you about an hour to get from Glasgow to Edinburgh by train but the cities are very different.

Glasgow is the heart of industry. It is the center of business and trade. It is very busy, prosperous, dirty in some parts and smart in others. It is beautiful and ugly with its large port and busy streets.

Edinburgh is rather cold but attractive, very **proud** but friendly and has a great past. Edinburgh is known as Athens of the North. It is an ancient city and if you walk around it you can touch on history at every step. Practically every building has a tale to tell. The two most interesting parts of the city are the Old Town and the New Town. The Old Town lies between the Castle and Holyrood Palace. The Castle hangs over the city like some Disney cartoon – but it is real.



The Castle, in fact, is older than the city. No one can say exactly when the first settlers came to live on the huge **rock** that stands high above Edinburgh. Later they built here a castle that used to be a fortress and then a royal palace.

It looks good in any weather but at night when it is floodlit⁸ it looks just like a castle in a fairy tale. It is not surprising that the Castle attracts a lot of tourists. Edinburgh **military tattoo**⁹ takes place every August and September and is known throughout the world. For 90 minutes on five or six nights a week, 600 people perform in the square in front of the Castle.



The performers play military music and march to it. At the same time as the tattoo, you can go to the famous Edinburgh festival. The festival started in 1947. Every year the best performers from all over the world are shown in Edinburgh.

⁸ Floodlit [flʌdlɪt] to lit with flame

⁹ Tattoo [tə'tu:] – an outdoor military show with music and dance usually at night

A line of streets, which runs from the Castle to Holyrood House, is called the Royal Mile. Holyrood House is a big royal palace which is the residence of the Queen when she is in Edinburgh. The most picturesque part of the Royal Mile is the Cannongate, which gives a good idea of what the Old Town was like. Closes (narrow passages) lead to little yards and attractive historical buildings. One of the most modest and yet one of the best known monuments in Edinburgh is a monument to a dog, that lived near his master's grave for 26 years and has become a symbol of devotion.



Princes Street which is connected with the name of the famous write Sir Walter Scott is the most beautiful street of the New Town. A monument 200 feet high rises between green trees. They call it a poem of stone. Inside it there is a marble statue of the writer, and of his favorite dog. The modern town is on the lower side, the old one - on the higher. They look at each other across the valley under Scotland's blue sky.

DIALOGUE

Barno: Hi, Rano, haven't seen you for a long time! What have you been doing? Where have you been hiding?

Rano: I've been working on my talk about Wales for the last week and spent my hours in the library.

Barno: Wales? What can be interesting about that part of Britain? Not big cities, no picturesque scenery, no interesting facts on the history of the country.



Rano: Aren't there? You can't imagine, Barno, how wrong you are here. The book I am reading says: "Though visitors don't need passports to cross the **border** from England into Wales, they soon realize that they are entering a country with its own geography, culture, traditions and language."

Barno: What do you mean? Don't the Welsh speak English?

Rano: They do. But the Welsh language is spoken widely, especially in the north of the country and it is still the first language for many people. **By the way** English is taught side by side with Welsh in schools.

Barno: Is Welsh different from English?

Rano: Very much so. Welsh is one of the Celtic languages, like Scottish and Irish Gaelic. Even if your English is fluent you won't be able to understand Welsh.

Barno: Interesting. And what about the cities? I hear that Wales is agricultural; there are few cities there, rather small and unimportant.

Rano: Let's not argue, but look up in the book I am reading. I know at least one big city in Wales. It is Cardiff. Its capital and the main port.

Barno: (looking through the book) You are right. It says: "Cardiff is an industrial city, which also has a castle, a cathedral, a university. There are other big towns in Wales too, Swansea and Newport among them." O.K. But what

about the scenery, the history, the culture?

Rano: The west coast, mid Wales and North Wales are wild and beautiful. Wales has high mountains, including Mount Snowdon, the second highest mountain in Britain.

Barno: I have always thought that Wales is a land of green fields, forests and farms.

Rano: And you have been right. But it is also a land of mountains and valleys, streams and waterfalls. In North Wales you can follow mountain paths for miles and miles.

Barno: Tell me a few words about Mount Snowdon.

Rano: Got interested? OK. In summer, when the sun is shining, Snowdon looks very peaceful and beautiful. A little train runs to the top and the walk is not at all hard. But in winter the mountain can become very dangerous.

Barno: But do climbers go there?

Rano: They do, but every year climbers **get lost** in bad weather or fall and injure themselves during the avalanches. But Mountain Rescue Service goes out to look for the climbers.

Barno: I see. And what about Wales traditions and the history of the country?

Rano: After the Roman evacuation, Wales divided into tribal kingdoms. Cunedda Wledig, a prince from southern Scotland, founded a dynasty in the north-west district of Gwynedd to become the centre point for Welsh unity. The Act of Union in 1536 made English law general and admitted Welsh representatives to Parliament.

Sorry I can not stay here any more. I am really short of time. Here are my notes. I made them during the lecture by Mr. Rodger Davis, a visiting professor from Wales. If you are interested you can look through my notes. Good bye.

VOCABULARY

evidence *n./v.* [evɪd(ə)ns] - 1) aniqlik, haqiqat, ochiq oydin, misol; dalil, tasdiq, ko'rsatma e.g. Evidence cannot be hidden. — Haqiqatni yashirib bo'lmaydi. - in evidence Syn: clearness, evidentness 2) asos; belgi, simptom; fakt on this evidence — shunga asosan / from all evidence — hamma faktlarga asoslanib / guvohlik bermoq e.g. I invoke Heaven and men to evidence my truth. (sudda guvohlik berishdan oldin aytiladigan qasamyod)

impact *n./v.* [ɪmpækt] - 1) turtki, impuls 2) ta'sir • - ecological impact - environmental impact statement - impact analysis - impact of system - impact study 2. 1) qattiq qismoq 2) urilmoq, turtmoq

uniformity [ˌjuːnɪˈfoːmɪti] 1) bir hillik 2) kelishuv

reign *n.* [reɪn] 1. 1) boshqaruv, qirollik, oily hokimiyat in the reign of smb. — kimningdir qirolligida. Syn: kingdom, sovereignty 2) hokimiyat, boshqaruv under v. 2. 1) hukumronlik qilmoq (over) Syn: rule 2) hokimiyatga ega bo'lmoq

thistle *n.* [θɪsl] qushqo'nmas (tikonli yovvoyi o'simlik) Shotlandiya ramzi, thistle dollar — James VI va Charles II davridagi shotland kumush tangasi

patron saint – homiy avliyo, xristianlar payg'ambari

concentrate *n.* [kɒns(ə)ntreɪt] 1. 1) qorishma 2) ozuqao

v. 2. 1) to'plamoq, jamlamoq, g'uj qilmoq, to'p (g'ij) qilmoq; diqqat e'tiborni bir yerga to'plamoq e.g. When the enemy's ships are all concentrated at the entrance to the harbor, it must mean trouble. We must concentrate our efforts on finding ways to reduce costs.

proud *adj.* [praʊd] 1) a) mag'rur; o'z kuchiga ishonadigan e.g. He might be poor but he's also proud. 6) fahr, g'urur, iftihar his qilmoq e.g. He's very proud of his daughter's achievements. Her performance with the chorus did us proud. It was a proud moment when he was presented with a medal. 2) g'ururli e.g. She knows she's lost, but she is too proud to admit it.. ** you do me proud —

rock *n.* [rɒk] 1) a) cho'qqi, teppalik b) qirrali tosh c) rif, suv osti toshi d) qimmatbaho tosh, brilyant Syn: diamond

v. 2 1) tebratmoq, tebrantirmoq, allalamoq e.g. The movement of the train was rocking me to sleep. b) silkitmoq, qimirlatmoq, titratmoq, qaltiratmoq e.g. A sudden hurricane blew out our lights and rocked our habitation. c) jumbushga keltirmoq, musiqiy janr rock'n'roll, rock festival, rock music

military *adj.* [milit(ə)rɪ] 1. 1) harbiy • military age — chaqiruv yoshi, military engineering — harbiy muhandislik, military execution — harbiy sud hukmini ijro etish, military information — razvedka ma'lumotlari, military oath — harbiy qasamyod, military post — harbiy pochta, military potential — harbiy potentsial, military rank — harbiy unvon, military service — harbiy xizmat Syn: martial 2.

1) harbiy kuch Syn: armed forces **devotion** *n.* [di'vəʊʃ(ə)n] 1) sadoqat; itoat to demonstrate, display, show devotion — sadoqat ko'rsatmoq absolute, blind, complete, deep, great, slavish, thorough, undying, unswerving, utter devotion — ko'r ko'rona, sidqidildan sadoqat 2) qurbonlik 3) e'tiqod, sig'inish Syn: worship

stone *n.* [stəʊn] 1) a) tosh; a house built of stone 2) qabr toshi Syn: gravestone • to leave no stone unturned — har bir tosh tagini qarab chiqmoq; barcha vositalarni ishga solmoq - stone age — tosh asri

v. 1) a) tosh otmoq e.g. Andy splashed about in the shallows, stoning the little fishes. b) tosh bilan urib oldirmoq c) tosh yotqizmoq (tosh bilan qoplamoq) e.g. A highway has been new stoned. — Shox ko'chaga yangitdan tosh yotqizildi.

marble *n.* [mɑ:bl] marmar tosh

border *n. /v.* [bo:də] 1) chegara (across, over, between) to draw, establish, fix a border — chegara o'rnatmoq to cross, slip across a border — chegaradan o'tmoq; to patrol a border — chegarani qo'riqlamoq; closed border — yopiq chegara; common border — umumiy chegara; disputed border — tortishuvli chegara hududi; fixed border — o'rnatilgan chegara; 1) chegarada bo'lmoq, chegaralanmoq e.g. The fields are bordered by large forests. Syn: fringe, hem • - border on

by the way – aytganday, aytgancha, aytmoqchi

path *n.* [pæθ] so'qmoq, yo'lak

climber *n.* [klaɪmə] alpinist - to climb v. tirmashib chiqmoq

get lost – adashib qolmoq

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Listen to the song “**My Bonnie Lies over the Ocean**”, and sing along.

One of the most famous Scottish songs, known all over the world is “My Bonnie Lies Over the Ocean”. It is a song about prince Charles Edward Steward who was known as Bonnie Prince Charlie because he was young and good-looking. (“Bonnie” means “good-looking”) he was also Scotland’s national hero who fought against the English in the 18th century trying to make Scotland independent, but Charlie’s army was defeated.

I

*My Bonnie lies over the ocean,
My Bonnie lies over the sea,
My Bonnie lies over the ocean,
Oh, bring back my Bonnie to me.*

Chorus:

*Bring back, bring back –
Bring back my Bonnie to me, to me
Bring back, bring back.
Oh, bring back my Bonnie to me.*

IV

*The winds have blown over the ocean,
The winds have blown over the sea,
The winds have blown over the ocean,
And brought my Bonnie to me.*

II

*Last night as I lay on my pillow,
Last night as I lay on my bed.
Last night as I lay on my pillow,
I dreamed that my Bonnie was dead.*

Chorus:

III

*Oh, blow you winds over the ocean,
Oh, blow you winds over the sea,
Oh, blow you winds over the ocean,
And bring back my Bonnie to me.*

Chorus:

Chorus:

*Brought back, brought back.
Brought back my Bonnie to me, to me.
Brought back, brought back,
Have brought back my Bonnie to me.*



Ex. 2. Which words have the same meaning as the words in the story? Circle the letter of correct answer.

1. Earliest **evidence** of human settlement in Scotland **dates** from the Middle Stone Ages.

a. fact

b. information

2. The Romans were active in the first century AD but **made** very little **impact** on hostile tribes.

a. impulse

b. motivation

3. A legal and administrative uniformity was established by David I who **reined** the country for 29 years.

a. ruled

b. manage

4. Its symbol is **thistle**, and its patron saint is St. Andrew.

a. a flower covered with thorn

b. a thorny plant

5. Edinburgh is rather cold but attractive, very **proud** but friendly and has a great past

a. supercilious

b. kind

6. Edinburgh **military** tattoo takes place every August and September and is known throughout the world.

a. navy

b. armed forces

Ex. 3. Fill in the sentences choosing the appropriate word: *evidence, impact, uniformity, reign, thistle, patron saint, concentrate, proud, rock, military, devote, devoted, devotion, stone, marble, border, by the way, path, climber, get lost*

1. If you walk along this ... you will get to your destination very soon. 2. St. Patrick is the ... of Ireland and its national emblem is shamrock. 3. Another strong queen was Queen Victoria (1819-1901), whose monument you can see in front of Buckingham Palace. Queen Victoria came to the throne as a young woman in 1837 and ... for 64 years.



4. Britain became independent of the Roman Catholic during the ... of King Henry VII. 5. In the North-East Uzbekistan ... - on Kazakhstan, in the East and South East - on Kyrgyzstan and Tajikistan, in the West – on Turkmenistan and in the South – on Afghanistan. 6. Many villagers ... during the avalanche last night. 7. Please, don't disturb me. I am ... all my efforts on my research. 8. We are very much ... of our motherland. 9. Henry's daughter, Elizabeth (1533-1603) passed the reformation that made a great ... on British economy. 9. Do you have any evidence to support your idea? 10. Climber is a person who climbs on the top of the dangerous 11. While I was running along the path ...slightly touched and injured my hand. 12. There is a ... statue to Sir Walter Scott inside the Scott Monument. 13. Breyfriars Bobby belonged to John Grey. When he died Bobby lived near his grave for twenty six years. Later Bobby was buried near his master and his statue in the Old Town has become a symbol of 14. She ... herself to serving God.15. ... , what was the name of the man who you are going to introduce me with? 16. A ... of weights and measures was established by the government. 17. Many teenagers like to put on ... uniform. 18. On both sides of the Princes Street there are many fairy houses built of ...

Ex. 4. Fill in with propositions.

1. He is very proud ... his talent. 2. The fields are bordered ... large forests. 3. The bottom of our garden borders ... the park. 4. This factory is making a serious impact ... ecology. 5. The book under the title of "The World Economic Crisis and its impact ... Uzbekistan" is being discussed with a great enthusiasm. 6. My uncle is devoted ... his family. 7. Duncan is devoted ... sports very much. 8. ... this evidence, he was arrested under the suspicion of murder. 9. Namangan State University is more ... evidence prestigious in Fergana valley. 10. The attorney called all witnesses ... evidence. 11. We must concentrate our efforts ... finding ways to reduce costs. 12. Please be quiet, I'm trying to concentrate ... my work. 13. The strikers threw stones ... the military forces and tried to destroy the boundary. 14. ... the way, did you buy the book I recommended. 15. The enemy's

military forces were concentrated ... the huge rock that stands high ... the city. 16. The cat fell into the hole and couldn't climb ... it. 17. It is dangerous to climb ... the rock in such weather. 18. I have lost the key ... the door of my flat.

Ex. 5. Translate into English.

1. Daraxtga chiqayotgan bolalarni ko'ryapsanmi? Sen ham o'shalar kabi bor kuchingni shu ishga yo'naltirishing kerak. 2. Martin yozish qo'lidan kelmasligini bilsa ham buni tan olgisi kelmaydi. U o'ta mag'rur. 3. Men O'zbekiston fuqarosi (citizen) ekanligimdan faxrlanaman. 4. U juda sadoqatli do'st. 5. Yo'lakda yugirayotgan kishini ko'ryapsanmi? O'sha kishi oyoq kiyimlar ishlab chiqaradigan korxonaning direktori. 6. O'tgan yili o'rmonga qo'ziqorin (mushroom) terгани bordik. Kechga yaqin sheriklarimizdan ikki nafari yo'qolib qolishdi. Janob Brayin baland daraxtga tirmashib chiqdi va atrofni kuzatdi. 7. Bu qal'a XI asrda William hukumronligi davrida toshdan qurilgan. 8. Edinburg shahri ko'chalarida marmar haykallar bor. Ularning eng mashhuri Volter Skot haykali. 9. Fikringizni tasdiqlovchi birorta dalil bormi? 10. Bolaligimda akamning harbiy formasini kiyishni orzu qilardim. Men han unga o'xshab harbiy xizmatni chegarada o'tashni xohlayman. 11. Aytganday, kelasi haftada Edinburgda harbiy qo'shiqlar festivali bo'ladi. 12. Buyuk Britanya qaysi davlatlar bilan chegaradosh? 13. Amir Temur hukumronligi davrida Samarqand shahrida ko'plam inshootlar qurilgan. 14. 1966 yilda Toshkent shahrida kuchli zilzila bo'lgan.

Lesson Seventeen

**Grammar: Some Verbs and Word Combinations
Followed by an Infinitive**

Text: Two American Presidents

Verb + infinitive

to afford	to fail	to learn (how)	to pretend	Verb + infinitive
to agree	to dare	to manage	to refuse	
to appear	to decide	to offer	to seem	
to arrange	to forget	to plan	to tend	
to attempt	to hope	to promise	to threaten	

a) If these verbs are followed by another verb, the structure is usually

verb + to + infinitive

- As it was late, we decided to take a taxi home.
- I like Alice but I think she tends to talk too much.
- How old were you when you learned to ride a horse?
- We agreed to lend him some money when he explained the situation.
- He pretended not to see me as he passed me in the street.

b) There is a continuous infinitive (**to be doing**) and a perfect infinitive (**to have done**). We use these especially after **seem**, **appear**, and **pretend**:

- I pretended to be sleeping. (=I pretended that I was sleeping)
- You seem to have lost weight. (= it seems that you have lost weight)

c) After the following verbs you can use a question word (**what / where / how** etc.) + **to + infinitive**: ask, decide, know, remember, forget, explain, show, tell and understand

- We asked how to get to the airport.
- Have you decided where to spend the weekend?

- David explained me how to fill the application form.
- I don't know whether to go to the party or not.
- Can you show me how to switch on the VCR?
- I will tell you what to do.

Verb + object + infinitive

a) After the verbs: **want, ask, expect, help, mean (=intend) would like, would prefer**

- I asked Bob to help me.
- We didn't expect him to be late.
- I would like you to come.
- Can somebody help me (to) move the chair?
- Do you want me to come early?
- We all wanted him to win the race.

b) After the verbs: **tell, order, remind, warn, force, invite, enable, teach (how), persuade, get (=persuade)**

- He reminded me to phone to Ann.
- He warned me not to drive too fast.
- Who taught you to swim?

c) After the verbs **advice, recommend, encourage, allow and permit** there are two possible structures. Compare:

He doesn't allow smoking in his room. → He doesn't allow anybody to smoke in his room.

I wouldn't recommend staying at this hotel. → I wouldn't recommend you to stay at this hotel.

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Complete the sentences with a suitable verb.

1. Dick refused ... me any money. 2. Nick has decided not ... a car. 3. The burglar got into the house because I forgot ... the window. 4. There was a lot of traffic but

we managed ... to the airport in time. 5. I've arranged ... tennis tomorrow afternoon. 6. One day I'd like to learn ... a helicopter. 7. Betty shouted to him. He pretended not ... her. 8. The dean was very strict. Nobody dared ... during his lecture.

Ex. 2. Change the sentences as in the model. Use the verbs to seem and to appear.

Model: Is he waiting for someone? → He appears to be waiting for someone.

Has she lost weight? → She seems to have lost weight.

1. Is Tom worried about something? 2. Does Ann like Jack? 3. Is that man looking for something? 4. Has that car broken down? 5. Have they gone out? 6. Have you divorced?

Ex. 3. Complete the sentences using **what** or **how** with one of the following verbs: do, say, get, use, ride, and cook.

Model: Do you know to Sam's cottage? → Do you know how to get to Sam's cottage?

1. have you decided ... for dinner this evening? 2. Can you show me ... the washing machine? 3. Do you know ... if there is a fire in the building? 4. You will never forget ... a bicycle once you have learned. 5. I was really astonished. I didn't know ...

Ex. 4. Change the sentences keeping the same meaning.

Model: "Don't forget to post the letter" Jack said to me. → Jack reminded me to post the letter.

1. "Don't touch anything", the man said to me. The man told me 2. She told me that it would be best if I told the police about the accident. She advised 3. I told you that you shouldn't tell him anything. I warned 4. I was surprised that it snowed. I didn't expect 5. "Would you like to have dinner with me?" Tom said to Ann. Tom invited Ann 6. At first I didn't want to play tennis but Jane persuaded me. Jane persuaded me 7. The sudden noise caused me to jump. The

sudden noise made 8. If you have got a car, you are able to travel around more easily. Having a car enables

Ex. 5. Translate into English.

1. Yo'l tirband bo'lganligi uchun piyoda ketishga qaror qildik. 2. O'qituvchi oldimga kelganida o'zimni kitob o'qiyotgandek tutdim. 3. Yozgi tatilni qayerda o'tkazishga qaror qildingizmi? 4. Changyutgichni qanday tuzatishni bilasizmi? 5. Men stansiyaga qanday borishni bilmayman. 6. Anna turmush o'rtog'iga haqiqatni aytishga jur'at qilolmadi. 7. Men olti yoshimda veloseped minishni o'rganganman. 8. Mashina sotib olishga qurbim yetmaydi. 9. Juanna dadasini aldashga botina olmadi. Shuning uchun unga hech narsa aytmalikka qaror qildi. 10. Men ukamni institutga kirishiga ishonaman. U juda tirishqoq. Ota-onam ham uni yaxshi o'qishiga undashyapti.

TWO AMERICAN PRESIDENTS

George Washington and Abraham Lincoln are the only American presidents whose birthdays are widely celebrated as **legal** holidays. Why these two presidents are especially **honored**? Both men lived during critical periods in American history, and both met the challenge of their times with great courage and **wisdom**. Washington helped the 13 American colonies win their independence from England. Less than 100 years later, Lincoln **declared** war on the southern states to keep the young nation from dividing in two.

George Washington



George Washington, commonly called the father of his country, was born in 1732. The son of a **wealthy** Virginia planter, he was privately educated and trained to be a surveyor (a person who measures land boundaries). But when serving as an officer in the French and Indian War (from 1753 to 1758), he learned to lead military **troops**.

In 1759, Washington married a widow Martha Curtis, who later became famous as a wonderful **hostess** in the first president's home. After his marriage, Washington returned to his Virginia plantation, Mount Vernon, to live the life of a gentleman farmer. In 1775, the Second Continental Congress decided to declare war on Great Britain and named Washington **commander in chief** of the Revolutionary Army. Washington's job was very difficult. His army was small, poorly fed and clothed. The men suffered greatly during terribly cold winters. Washington had to fight the Revolutionary War with poorly equipped, untrained soldiers.

French government's **assistance** enabled Washington's army to defeat the British. By 1781, it was evident that the British had given up. When the new country formed a stronger national government, George Washington was chosen as its first president. He took office in 1789 and was reelected in 1792. In 1796, he refused to become a president for the third term and retired from political life. He died 2 years later and was buried at Mount Vernon. Today more than a million tourists visit this beautiful site every year.

ABRAHAM LINCOLN

Although Americans admire George Washington, the greatest American hero is certainly Abraham Lincoln. He was born on February 12, 1809, in a log cabin in Kentucky. His parents were uneducated and poor and therefore his parents couldn't afford to send him to school.



Stories about Abraham Lincoln's youth demonstrate his honesty. (In fact, he earned the nickname "Honest Abe.") But he did have a brilliant mind and great moral **strength**. He had the courage to do what he felt was right, no matter how great the **sacrifice**.

In 1860, shortly before the Civil War, he said, "Let us have **faith** that right makes might; and in that faith let us,

to the end, dare to do our duty as we understand it.” Elected to the presidency in 1860 and reelected in 1864, Abraham Lincoln was the first successful presidential candidate **nominated** by the Republican Party. During his presidency, the American Civil War was fought. The issues were **slavery** and **secession**. In order to protect their right to keep slaves, the southern leaders decided to **secede** (separate) from the Union and form a new nation – the Confederate States of America.

Abraham Lincoln felt that the Union had to be saved. In 1858, Lincoln had said, “A house divided against itself can not stand. I believe this government can not **endure** permanently half slave and half free.” Lincoln preferred to lead the country into civil war rather than allow the South to secede. He encouraged his army to win the victory.

The Civil War began in April of 1861, only a few months after Lincoln’s **inauguration** as president. During the war, Lincoln’s **Emancipation Proclamation** declared all slaves in the Confederate States to be free. After the war, the thirteenth **Amendment** to the Constitution was adopted. It freed all slaves throughout the nation.

On April 14, 1865 Lincoln, his wife, and some friends attended a play at Ford’s Theatre in Washington, D.S. Shortly after 10:00 p.m., a **gunshot** was heard in the crowded auditorium. John Wilkes Booth, a well-known actor, had shot the president in the head. Lincoln was carried **unconscious** to a neighboring house, where he died early the following morning. He was the first American President to be **assassinated**, but, unfortunately, not the last.

VOCABULARY

legal *adj.* [li:g(ə)] - 1) qonuniy, yuridik legal advice — yurist maslahati legal aid bureau — yuridik maslahatxona Syn: lawful, juridical, juristic e.g. What I did was perfectly legal.

honor [‘onə] *v.* hurmat qilmoq, e’zozlamoq e.g. She was honored as a community leader. Yes, I honor Sparta, but I love Athens. *n.* hurmat, e’zoz, faxr, sharaf

wisdom *n.* [wɪzd(ə)m] - aql, tafakkur, donolik Syn: knowledge, enlightenment, learning, erudition

declare *v.* [dɪ 'kleə] - e'lon qilmoq e.g. The court declared the law to be unconstitutional. The president declared that the situation would improve. Syn: assert, proclaim, affirm

wealthy *adj.* [welθi] - boy, badavlat e.g. She is from a very wealthy family.

troop *n.* [tru:p] qo'shin, gala, to'p Syn: flock, group, crew, party, company

hostess *n.* [həʊstɪs] beak, ho'jayin, uy boshqaruvchi ayol

Commander-in-Chief - bosh qomandon, harbiy kuchlar komandiri

assistance *n.* [ə'sɪst(ə)ns] - yordam, ko'mak e.g. Any assistance gratefully received.

strength *n.* [streŋθ] - kuch / to find strength — kuch topmoq, to gain, gather strength — kuch to'plamoq e.g. Do you have the strength to lift this weight?

sacrifice *n.* [sækrɪfaɪs] - qurbonlik at the sacrifice of smth. — biror qurbonlik evaziga He gave his life as a sacrifice for his country. Syn: loss

v. to sacrifice a lamb to the gods e.g. He sacrificed his life to save the drowning child. Are you prepared to sacrifice the pleasures of nature to the convenience of city life Syn: forgo

faith *n.* [feɪθ] - 1) ishonch, e'tiqod to accept on faith — e'tiqod qabul qilmoq, to have faith in, to place one's faith in smth. to lose faith in — ishonchni yo'qotmoq / deep, strong, unshakable faith — kuchli e'tiqod Syn: confidence, trust, reliance

dare *v.* [deə] -1) haddi sig'moq, jur'at qilmoq, botinmoq (modal fel sifatida) e.g. I don't dare protest. I dare not protest. She didn't dare open her mouth.

nominate *v.* [nɒmɪneɪt] - nomzod korsatmoq - They nominated him for the best actor of the year.

slavery *n.* ['sleɪvəri] - quldorlik, qulchilik to establish, introduce slavery — quldorlik o'rnatmoq to abolish slavery — quldorlikni yo'q qilmoq

secession *n.* [sɪ'seʃ(ə)n] - bo'linish, ajrab chiqish

secede *v.* [sɪ'si:d] - ajrab chiqmoq, tarkibidan chiqib ketmoq e.g. There are fears that Quebec may secede from Canada.

endure v. [ˈɪndʒuə] - chidamoq, toqat qilmoq e.g. What can't be cured must be endured. (*proverb*) These writers had to endure the punishment. (Priestley). Syn: undergo, bear, sustain, tolerate

inauguration n. [ɪˌnɔːɡjuˈreɪʃ(ə)n] - 1) tantanali ochilish marosimi, marosim to hold an inauguration — tantanali ochilish marosimini o'tkazmoq 2) biror mansabga tayinlanish marosimi Inauguration Day — Yangi prezidentning taqdimot marosimi

Emancipation Proclamation – Ozodlik Deklarasiyasi

amendment n. [əˈmendmənt] - tuzatish, to'g'rilash, o'zgartirish amendment to the constitution — konstitusiyaga tuzatish Syn: correction, improvement

gunshot n. o'q ovozi, quoldan otilgan o'q ovozi

unconscious adj. [ʌnˈkɒnʃəs] - hushsiz, behush

assassinate v. [əˈsæsɪneɪt] - suiqasd qilmoq, mashxur siyosatchi yoku davlat arbobini o'ldirish

The Thirteen Original Colonies: Connecticut, Delaware, Georgia, Maryland, Massachusetts, New Hampshire, New Jersey, New York, North Carolina, Pennsylvania, Rhode Island, South Carolina, Virginia

The Union: California, Connecticut, Delaware, Illinois, Indiana, Iowa, Kansas, Kentucky, Maine, Maryland, Massachusetts, Michigan, Minnesota, Missouri, New Hampshire, New Jersey, New York, Ohio, Oregon, Pennsylvania, Rhode Island, Vermont, West Virginia, Wisconsin

The Confederacy (South): Alabama, Arkansas, Florida, Georgia, Louisiana, Mississippi, North Carolina, South Carolina, Tennessee, Texas, Virginia

(Although there were fifteen slave states, four of them – Delaware, Kentucky, Maryland, and Missouri – remained in the Union)

- | | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2. In 1775, the Congress decided to declare war on Great Britain | b. because he decided to keep the young nation from dividing in two. |
| 3. Lincoln declared war on the southern states | c. because they refused to free the slaves. |
| 4. The soldiers suffered greatly during | d. because they ruled the country with great courage and wisdom. |
| 5. The southern leaders decided to secede (separate) from the Union | e. because he decided to retire from political life. |
| 6. In 1796, George Washington refused to become a president for the third term | f. because they wanted to become independent. |

Ex. 3. Fill in prepositions

1. She brought honor ... her family. 2. He is an honor to his school. 3. The minister decided to give a reception ... ambassador's honor. 4. May I have the honor ... your company at dinner? 5. Mr. Mason has grown ... wisdom. He is a real person ... wisdom. 6. The Colonists declared war ... England in 1775. 7. The electors declared ... their former Member of Parliament and he had to retire. 8. He rescued the injured people ... the sacrifice of his life. 9. He decided to sacrifice a sheep ... the God. 10. They have a strong faith ... Islam. 11. She is a Buddhist ... faith. 12. They decided to nominate the day ... the celebration of nuptials (=wedding). 13. The confederacy states wanted to save their right to keep slaves and decided to secede ... the Union. 14. I can not endure ... such pain. 15. The Congress proposed an amendment ... the Constitution. 16. In the U.S. bill there is written: "... God we trust".

Ex. 4. Translate into English.

1. Biz presidentimizni e'zozlaymiz. Oliy Majlis 1991 yil, 1 Sentabrda Davlat Mustaqilligini e'lon qildi. 2. Islom Abdug'anievich Karimov O'zbekiston Raspublikasining birinchi Prezidenti. U o'ta shijoatli va dono prezident. U

O'zbekiston tarixida o'ta tahlikali davrda prezidentlikka saylandi va barcha qiyinchiliklarni aql va jur'at bilan yengdi. 3. Jorj Washington boy fermer oilasida tug'ilgan. Ota-onasi uni yer o'lchovchi bo'lishini istashgan. 4. Abram Linkolnning oilasi juda nochor bo'lgan. Ota-onasi kambag'al bo'lishgani uchun uni maktabga yuborishga qurbi yetmagan. Abram Linkolnning prezidentlikka nomzodi Respublikachilar partiyasi tomonidan ko'rsatilgan. 1865 yil, 14 Aprel kuni Abram Linkolnga suiqasd qilingan. 5. Otamga bor haqiqatni aytishga jur'at qilolmadim. Sababi, bilaman otam bunga chidolmaydi. Uning didnga e'tiqodi juda kuchli. 6. Qarindoshlarimning ko'magi meni talaba bo'lishimga imkon berdi.

Lesson Eighteen

Grammar: *Subjunctive Mood*

Text: *Family Life*

Study these rules:

a) Mood is a grammatical category which indicates the attitude of the speaker towards the action expressed by the verb from the point of view of its reality.

In Modern English there three moods:

- 1) The Indicative Mood. (*aniqlik mayli*) He went home early in the morning.
- 2) The Imperative Mood. (*buyruq mayli*). Be quite and hear what I tell you.
- 3) The Subjunctive Mood. (*istak mayli*). I wish I were ten years older.

b) The subjunctive Mood shows that the action or state expressed by the verb is presented as a non-fact, as something imaginary or desired. Mood is also used to express an emotional attitude of the speaker to real facts. E.g. I wish I didn't have to work.

Study these examples:

1 a. If we didn't go to their party next week, they would be very angry.

If he were not so absent-minded, he wouldn't have mistaken you for your sister.

If I were you, I would have helped her.

If they didn't accomplish the task on time, the manager would reduce their wage.

If I won a million dollar, I would travel around the world.

If you stopped smoking, you would probably feel healthier.

I would be very grateful if you would send me your brochure and price list.

They wouldn't come to the party, if you invited them.

They might be angry, if I didn't visit them

We could go out, if it stopped raining.

1 b. If we had played better, we might have won.

If I had gone to the part last night, I would have seen Ann.

If I had consulted my own wishes, I should never have come here.

We could have gone out, if the weather hadn't been so bad.

He would have gone to his native town, if he had graduated from the university.

If you had taken your medicine yesterday, you would be well now.

If I had seen you, I would have greeted with you.

If he had been driving carefully, he wouldn't have crashed the car.

Note: Unreal conditions may also be expressed in the following ways.

But for the rain, we should go down to the country.

If it were not for your help, I should not be able to finish my work in time.

2 a. I wish I had a car.

I wish it snowed much in Uzbekistan. / I wish I could speak English fluently.

He wishes Sue fell in love with him. / Do you ever wish you could fly?

2 b. The weather was awful. I wish it had been warmer.

I feel sick. I wish I hadn't eaten so much.

I wish I had studied science instead of languages.

I wish I had known that you were ill. I would have gone to see you.

3 a. Nick might come tonight. I don't want to go out in case he phones.

We will get the room ready in case Bob comes.

This letter is for Mr. Grey. Can you take it in case you see him?

He takes an umbrella in case it rains.

I'll draw you a map in case you can find our house.

3 b. I drew a map for her in case she couldn't find our house.

We bought some more food in case our relatives came.

I took the letter for Mr. Grey in case I met him.

Note: "In case of ..." is different **in case**. "In case of fire" means "if there is a fire"

- In case of fire, please leave the building as quickly as possible.

- In case of emergency, telephone this number. (=if there is an emergency)

4. Mrs. White can't hear unless you shout.

Don't tell Andrew what I said unless he asks you.

I will come tomorrow unless I have too much work.

We'll be late unless we hurry.

Unless you work harder, you will fail at the examinations.

The man said he would hit me unless I told him where the money was.

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Put the verb into the correct form.

1. If I was offered the job, I think I (to take) it. 2. I'm sure they will lend you some money. I would be surprised if they (to refuse). 3. Many people would be out of

work if that factory (close) down. 4. If I were rich, I (to donate) my money for UNICEF. 5. I wish it (to be) winter now. 6. If I didn't participated to their nuptial tomorrow they (to be angry) with me. 7. It is raining cats and dogs. I wish I (to have) an umbrella. 8. If I were you I (not to buy) that car. 9. If you arrived at the station a minute earlier you (to say goodbye) to Helen. 10. If only I could afford I (to send) my son to that school. 11. If I were you I (not to dare) protest. 12. I wish I (to be) taller. 13. Bill (not to enter) for the examination if he had known it would be so difficult. 14. I would have sent you a postcard while I was on holiday if I (to have) your address. 15. If Sarah hadn't reminded me about Tom's birthday, I (to forget) to go to his party.

Ex. 2. a. Read a situation and write a sentence with **if**...

Model: *We don't visit you very often because you live so far away. → But if you didn't live so far away, we would visit you more often.*

1. We are not going to move in a new flat because it is too far from the city center.
2. People don't understand him because he doesn't speak very clearly. 3. We can't go to camping because it is raining. 4. He is obese because he doesn't take any exercises. 5. She doesn't go out very often because she can't walk without help. 6. I am not going to buy this coat because it is too expensive.

b. write a sentence with **I wish** ...

Model: *I don't speak English (and I feel unimportant). → I wish I could speak English.*

1. Tina can't accept my proposal (she is engaged to my cousin). 2. I can not give up smoking (but I like to). 3. I have not any cigarettes (and I need one). 4. Linda is not here (and I need her). 5. I had to work tomorrow (but I like to stay in bed). 6. I can not afford to buy this ring (but I am quite willing to make it a present to my fiancée). 7. I have just painted the door red (and now I decided that it doesn't look very nice). 8. The music next door is very loud (and I want someone to turn it down).

c. write a sentence with **in case**...

Model: *It was possible that he would come to Tashkent one day. So I gave him my address.* → *I gave him my address in case he came.*

1. It was possible that Nina would phone me. So I didn't go out. 2. It was possible that my parents would worry about me. So I phoned them. 3. It was possible that I would forget the name of the street. So I wrote it down. 4. It was possible I would injure myself during the expedition. So I arranged a medical insurance. 5. We have fitted a burglar alarm to the house because it is possible that somebody will try to break in. 6. It was possible that he might commit a crime again. So the police arrested him.

Ex. 3. Translate into English.

1. Fotosuvratingizni yuborsangiz juda mamnun bo'lardim. 2. Agar tumsohni ko'rib qolsam juda qo'rqib ketgan bo'lardim. 3. Agar yosh bo'lganimda sizlar bilan toqqa borgan bo'lardim. 4. Agar kelasi hafta ularning to'yiga bormasak xafa bo'lishadi. 5. Sport bilan shug'ullanganingizda o'zingizni sog'lom his qilgan bo'lardingiz. 6. Jorj shu yerda bo'lgandaydi. Senga yordamlashgan bo'lardi. 7. Nizni o'rningizda bo'lganimda mashinani sekinroq haydagan bo'lradingiz. 8. Sizni o'rningizda bo'lagimda uzur so'ragan bolardim. 9. Qaniydi ishlashimni zarurati bo'lmaganda. Siz bilan sayohatga brogan bo'lardim. 10. Dadam kelib qoladi deb tashqariga chiqmadim. 11. Uzur siz bilan uzoq gaplasha olmayman, direktor qo'ng'iroq qilib qoladi. 12. Ularni biznikiga kelishlar ehtimoli borligi uchun davturhonni tashqariga tuzadik.

FAMILY LIFE

The family – one of the oldest institution – has **existed** for about 300,000 years, continuously changing with the times. Family life is the **basis** of individual security and cultural continuity. “We can chose our friends, but we can't chose our relatives,” people sometimes complain. Our relatives may **drive us crazy**, but they **are** also the first people we call to report good news or to ask for help.

Today's typical **household** is quite different from those of other times and places. Some older couples still have traditional marriages, with the man as breadwinner (breadwinner) and the woman as homemaker (homesitter). But today's young woman wants marriages, but she also wants to keep her own identity. Many women wish they were independent. They want to have a **permanent** job in case their husbands lose job. Some work because family needs money, others because they find it interesting than being **full-time homemakers**. Most women work for both reasons. The life of working mother is stimulating but also very **hectic** and stressful. Many working mothers wish they had **live-in servants**.

When mother is **employed**, the lives of her spouse and her children are **affected**. When Mother has less time for **child care** and housekeeping, her husband and older children usually become involved in these tasks. In some families the man is unemployed the woman earns enough sufficient money to support the family. As a result, many dads are doing mothering! In many families, the husband and the wife **share** both financial and domestic responsibilities.



Sharing money making and housekeeping responsibilities **provides** a better life for both parents. The wife enjoys being out in the working world. Her husband discovers that cooking and child care can be fun and can bring him closer to his family. He may also find that it is nice to have his wife's help in supporting the family. They wish they didn't have to work all the time. Of course, problems can develop in the **two-income family**. The husband wishes his working wife would be a perfect homemaker. The wife wishes her husband would help her with **household chores**. She also wishes her husband wouldn't smoke and drink.

Most women today will not tolerate a husband who considers himself the boss. A girl is given freedom and educated equal to a boy's. After completing her



"I'm glad we're married, Loretta... otherwise we'd been fighting with strangers."

education, she is able to get a job and support herself. She doesn't need to marry for **financial security**. She is **self-sufficient** and will not accept a **submissive** role in marriage. When husband and wife are able to share **decision making** and respect each other's **viewpoint**, their marriage is probably is closer than those of past generations.

VOCABULARY

exist v. [ɪg'zɪst] - mavjud bo'lmoq(by, on), yashamoq e.g. I exist by what I think... and I can't stop myself from thinking. Unfortunately, violence still exists in our life. We cannot exist without oxygen. Syn: be, live, subsist Ant: die

basis n. ['beɪsɪs] (bases) - 1) asos, fundament on a good neighborly basis — yaxshi qoshnichilik munosabatlari asosida Syn: base, foundation, ground, origin

drive smb. crazy – aqildan ozdirmoq Syn. - drive mad - drive out of senses - drive crazy E.g. The girl that's driving me mad is going away.

household n. [haʊshəʊld] - uy ishlari, ho'jalik, oila Syn. family, domestic

permanent adj. ['pɜ:mənənt] doimiy, uzoq muddatli E.g. Human institutions perish, but nature is permanent. Syn: constant, continual, stable Ant: brief, temporary, short-lived

full-time homemaker – to'liq uy bekasi, faqat uy ishlari bilan band kishi

hectic adj. [hek'tɪk] – sertashvish hectic life e.g. the hectic days before Christmas

live-in servants – birga yashaydigan hizmatkor

be employed [im'plɔɪd] - ishlamoq, ish bilan band bo'lmoq E.g. How long have you been employed at this job? employer – ish beruvchi, employee-ishchi full-time employee - part-time employee Ant. unemployed

affect v. [ə'fekt] - ta'sir qilmoq, ta'sir o'tkazmoq e.g. Shouting affects the voice.

child care – bola parvarishi

share n. [ʃeə] - 1) ulush, qisim; kvo'ta to have a share in the profits — daromaddan ulushi bo'lmoq share of the responsibility 2) ishtirok, ro'l e.g. All of us had a share in making the decision. 3) aksiya; hissa, pay, ulush (shareholder - hissador)

v. 1) bo'lishmoq, taqsimlamoq; bo'lmoq (share out) to share the money equally between two brothers, to share one's sandwich with smb., to share one's problems with smb., Bill and I shared an office for years. Shall we share the driving? All your neighbors share in your sorrow.

provide v. [prə'vaɪd] - 1) ta'minlamoq (with); yetkazib bermoq; to provide smb. with goods He provided a car with a radio. There is no way that we can provide another teacher for that class.

b) bermoq, imkon yaratmoq; to provide military aid,. (provide for) to provide a family for — oilani ta'minlamoq e.g. Has every member of the family been equally provided for?

two-income family – ikki tamonlama daromadli oila (ota-ona ishlaydi)

financial security – moliyaviy xavfsizlik

self-sufficient – iqtisodiy mustaqil

submissive adj. [səb'mɪsɪv] jim, quloq soladigan, bo'ysinuvchan, hokisor Syn. timid

decision making – qaror qabul qilish

viewpoint n. [vju:point] - fikr, qarash, mushohada

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Ex.1. Complete the sentences with some of the key vocabulary words.

1.If the workdays are very stressful, they are probably also_____.

2. If the mother is engaged in housekeeping responsibilities she is _____. 3. If the woman is timed and tolerates her husband who considers himself the boss, she is probably _____. 4. If the girl has a permanent job and earns enough money for her needs she is _____. 5. If the man earns money enough to provide his family he is _____. 6. If both husband and wife are employed the family is _____.
7. Our opinion and our thought is our _____. 8. If you have a stable job at a firm it means it is your _____ working place.

Ex.2. Fill in prepositions.

1. He exists ... bread and water. 2. Strange ideas existed ... his mind. 3. Our relationship with bordering countries has been established ... a good neighborly basis. 4. We integrate with foreign countries ... the basis of friendship. 5. She drives me crazy and I am romantically involved ... her. 6. Mrs. Anderson is the owner of a big factory. She has no time to care her children and the house so she has live ... servant at home. 7. Two girls were employed ... filling envelopes. 8. My father is ... the employ of a textile factory. 9. His father divorced and remarried and this affected ... his life. 10. My little son shares his sandwich ... his friends. 11. I don't want to share my problems ... anybody. 12. Our university provides the students ... all necessary learning materials and technical aids. 13. I wish my parents could provide me ... enough money for my study and pocket expenses. 14. All family members should participate ... decision making process.

Ex.3. Chose the right word that has the same meaning.

1. We cannot **exist** without oxygen. (*live / leave*)
2. Today's typical **household** is quite different from those of other times and places. (*family / firmly*)
3. They want to have a **permanent** job. (*stable / stainable*)
4. When mother **is employed**, the lives of her spouse and her children are affected. (*has a job / has a profession*)

5. Mrs. Larson is too submissive to speak about her family problems. (*timid / tamed*)
6. Childcare is a very important parental responsibility. (*to bring up a child / to support a child*)
7. They respect each other's viewpoints. (*opinion / dominion*)
8. After his father's death he became the only bread earner in the family. (*moneymaker / boot maker*)

Ex.4. Translate into English.

1. Oilali ayol uchun ish kunlari juda sertashvish. 2. Bis xursandchiligimizni birga baham ko'ramiz. 3. Ular juda baxtli oila, er ayolga uy ishlarida ko'maklashadi, ayol eriga oilani moliyaviy ta'minotida yordamlashadi. 4. U meni aqildan ozdiradi, lekin ba'zida juda muloyim. 5. Hozirgi qizlar yaxshi ta'lim olishadi, doimiy ish joyiga ega va iqtisodiy mustaqil. 6. Ishlaydigan onalar farzand parvarishiga oz vaqt sarflashadi. Agar ayol kun bo'yi tashqarida isda bo'lsa er va katta yoshdagi bolalar uy ishlariga o'ralashib qolishadi. 7. Mening xolam hech qayerda ishlamaydi, faqat uy ishlari bilan band. Uning turmush o'rtog'i oilani ta'minlash uchun yetarli pul topadi. Xolam non yopadi, kir yuvadi, bozor qiladi, bolalarga qaraydi va sigir sog'adi. U yeriga bo'ysinuvchan va ajoyib uy bekasi, lekin bazan erini uyda o'zini ho'jayin sanashiga toqat qilolmaydi. 8. Ular o'n yildan beri turmush qurishadi. Uy ishlari va moliyaviy masuliyatni teng taqsimlashadi, bir-birlarining fikrlarini qadrlashadi. 9. Oilamizda dadam qaror qabul qiladi. Lekin ba'zan bizning fikrimiz bialn ham hisoblashadi. 10. Bizning qishloqda g'alati urf odatlar (tradition) mavjud. Qishlog'imizda yuzdan oshiq ho'jalik bor. Hamma erlar non topuvchi, hamma ayollar uy bekasi va ular hamma narsaga ko'nikuvchan, va erlarini qarorlarini qadrlashadi, hech kim nolimaydi. Ayollar iqtisodiy muhtojlikda qolmaslik uchun turmushga chiqishadi.

Lesson Nineteen

Grammar: *Subjunctive Mood*

Text: *Market Economy*

Study these examples:

1. But for the rain, we should go down to the country.

But for you, I should participate in the contest.

Your face would have looked like the face of a girl, but for your mustache.

But for your help, I should not be able to become a student.

But for her husband's support, she wouldn't be able to do all home choruses.

2. Suppose he proposed marriage to you, would you accept?

Suppose she accepted your offer, where would you take her?

Suppose your parents didn't approve your marriage, what would you do?

Suppose you lost your job, how would you provide your family?

Suppose you discovered that she had been dating with Mr.X, would you divorce?

3 a. Juana can't hear unless you shout.

We'll be late unless we hurry. (*not "unless we will hurry"*)

Don't go to the party unless they invite you.

Unless you work harder, you are not going to pass the examination.

Unless you are fulltime homemaker, you will not become self-sufficient.

3 b. Traveling by car is convenient provided (that) you have somewhere to park.

Providing (that) she studies hard, she should pass the examination.

Providing (that) you follow my advice, you should recover soon.

Family outing is wonderful provided you have a recreational vehicle (R.V.)

Marriage can be joyful provided that there is a mutual understanding and respect between husband and wife.

4. I feel as if we were back seven years.

...now I feel as if you had never been away.

He cried so loudly as if somebody bit her.

The car looked as though it had been deserted for years.

It was as if she were angry with him.

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

Ex.1. Write a new sentence with the same meaning as in the model.

a) Model: *You must study more or you won't pass the examination. → You won't pass the examination unless you study more.*

1. You must explain me in details or I will not figure out how to do it.
2. We must hurry or we'll miss the train.
3. You must propose a marriage her or she'll get married to another one.
4. You must drive carefully or you crash the car.
5. We must try to decrease pollution or the air we breathe in and the water we drink will be harmful for our health.
6. She must apologize to me or I won't forgive her.
7. My wage must be increased or I'll look for another job.
8. You must give up smoking or you will have lung disease.

b) Model: *Will you speak the whole truth if she requests? → Suppose she required would you speak the whole truth?*

1. Will you punish your child if he misbehaves?
2. Will you spend your summer vacation on Manhattan if you win Green Card lottery?
3. Will your spouse forgive you if she discovers your unfaithfulness?

4. Will he escape from prison if he is arrested?
5. Will they postpone the expedition if the volcano explodes?
6. Shall we invite them to our nuptial party if they arrive from vocation?

Ex. 2. Chose the correct word or expression for each sentences.

1. I am playing tennis tomorrow (unless / providing) it is raining.
2. We're going to paint the house into yellow (unless / provided) the father agrees.
3. You can smoke in here (unless / as long as) you leave the window open to let the smoke out.
4. Mr. Donald doesn't trust anyone. He won't lend you any money (unless / as long as) you promise in writing to pay him back.
5. The students can stay here (unless / providing) they don't make too much noise.
6. I am going now (unless / provided) you want me to stay.
7. You can use my car (as long as / unless) you drive carefully.
8. We can't trust you (unless / providing) you swear an oath.

Ex. 3. Use the sentences in the box to make sentences with as if.

she had hurt her leg	he hadn't washed for	you had a good rest
she was enjoying	ages	he was half-asleep
you've seen a ghost	she was going to throw it	I'm going to be sick
	at him	
	they hadn't eaten for a	
	week	

1. Tom looks very tired. You say to him. You look
2. When you talked to Jack on the phone last night. He had difficult speaking. And he said some strange things. He sounded
3. Carol had a bored expression on her face during the concert. She didn't look
4. You could smell him from a long way away. He badly needed a bath. He smelt

5. Your friend comes into the room looking absolutely terrified. His face is white. You say what is the matter? You look
6. You've just eaten a whole box of chocolates. Now you are feeling ill. You say: I feel
7. When you saw Sue, she was walking in a strange way. She looked
8. They were extremely hungry and ate their dinner very quickly. They ate their dinner
9. Anita and Steven were having an argument. She was very angry. Suddenly she picked up a plate. She looked

Ex. 4. Translate into English.

a) 1. Dadamning ko'magisiz mashina minishni o'rgana olmasdim. 2. Qor bo'lmaganda edi, yangi ko'yilagimni kiyib olardim. 3. Yo'lda tirbandlik bo'lmaganda edi majlisga vaqtida etib borardik. 4. Undagi itoatgo'ylik bo'lmaganda edi erining injiqligiga (caprice) toqat qilolmagan bo'lardi.

b) 1. Faraz qilaylik u sizga xiyonat qildi, u bilan ajrashishga jur'at qilarmidingiz? 2. Aytaylik begona shaharda bor pulingizni o'g'irlatib qo'ydingiz, nima qilasiz? 3. Faraz qilaylik do'stingizni sizning qallig'ingiz bilan uchrashib yurganini bilib qoldingiz, nikoh to'yini to'xtatasizmi? 4. Aytaylik, o'g'lingiz mashinani avariya qildi uni kaltaklaysizmi?

c) 1. Ukam juda qaysar. So'rgan narsani bermasangiz u yig'idan to'xtamaydi. 2. Toki unga pora bermas ekansiz, janob Smis hujjatlaringizga imzo qoymaydi. 3. Uy vazifani bajarmaguningcha ko'chaga chiqishiga ijozat bermayman. 4. O'zingizga doimiy ish topmas ekansiz u sizning nikoh taklifingizni (proposal) qabul qilmaydi.

d) 1. Mashina qo'yishga joyingiz bo'lsa mashinada sayohat qilish qulay. 2. O'sha qizga uylanganingda edi u uyingda ajoyib beka bo'lardi. 3. Ota-onanga quloq solganingda edi, bunday muammolaring bo'lmasdi. 4. Aytaylik siz oilangizni

yaxshi ta'minladingiz, farzandlaringiz sizni hurmat qilishgan bo'lardi. 5. Aytaylik Juanna juda qattiq o'qidi, u institutga kirgan bo'lardi.

e) 1. U menga go'yo uni pulini o'g'irlab qoyganimdek tikilib qaradi. 2. U voqeani go'yo o'z ko'zi bilan ko'rgandek gapirib berdi. 3. Nega menga go'yo senga xiyonat qilganimdek qarayapsan? 4. U juda toliqqan ko'rinardi go'yo bir haftadan beri ishlayotgandek. 5. Bill uzoqdan yugurib kelgandek qiynalib nafas olayotgandi.

MARKET ECONOMY



In market economy, businesses are privately owned and operated. The government's role in business world is limited. Its main function is to protect each part of the economy – big business, small business, workers, and consumers – from abuse.

In market economy, prices vary with changes in supply and demand. Suppose there are more apples than people want to buy, the price of apples would go down. Providing there was a **shortage**, the price would go up.

A free economy is good for everyone unless there is an ideal condition and limited government control. Competition is an essential element of market economy. In order to compete, businesses must be operated **efficiently**, economically, and creatively. But for competition, consumers would receive high-quality **merchandise** at the lowest possible price.

A monopoly will develop unless there is no competition in an industry. This can happen when a company buys its competitors or when a company sells its

products below cost for a while in order to drive competitors out of business. To prevent monopoly there are laws prohibiting most monopolies.

Business need huge **amounts** of money to develop new products, **purchase** new equipments, build factories, and pay other **expenses** of doing business. This money is known as *capital*. Much of it comes from investors (**capitalists**), who expect to receive a **profitable** return on the money that they invest. But for the investors, European economy wouldn't be able to grow and produce the goods that consumers want.

Most investments take one of two forms – **stocks** or **bonds**. Stockholders purchase shares of a business. They share in the profits of the company by receiving **dividends**, provided that the business does well. On the other hand, people who purchase bonds lend their money to a business in exchange for a fixed rate of return known as **interest**.

Supposing that you wish to buy an expensive item such as a car or house, and you don't have enough money, what would you do? Of course in market economy you can borrow the money unless you **ensure** the bank to pay it back over a certain period. This money is called a **loan** and it **enables** you to buy the things you need, to study, and to start your own business.

VOCABULARY

consumer *n.* [kən'sju:mə] iste'molchi

consume *v.* [kən'sju:m] iste'mol qilmoq e.g. Such goods are consumed very quickly.

abuse *n.* [ə'bju:s] 1) o'zaro kelishmovchilik, bir-birini kamsitich, tahqirlash, kamsitish, hurmatsizlik E.g. She took a lot of abuse from him. 2) yomon, qattiq munosabat E.g. This car has taken a lot of abuse. 3) qasddan istemol qilish, ruju qo'yish, toksikomaniya drug abuse —drug and alcohol abuse

v. [əbju:z] 1) haqorat qilmoq, kamsitmoq, so'kmoq e.g. It is the characteristic of the drunkard to abuse his wife and family. to abuse smb. left and right — o'tirsa o'poq tursa so'poq tarzida munosabatda bo'lmoq

shortage n. [ʃo:tɪdʒ] kamomat, yetishmovchilik, taqchilik food shortage — housing shortage — labor shortage — teacher shortage Syn: lack

efficiently adv. [ɪfɪ(ə)ntli] - ta'sirchan, aqillilik bilan, sermahsul, yaxshi natija (effekt) beradigan

merchandise n. [mɜ:tʃ(ə)ndaɪz] - tovar, buyum, mol, mahsulot to buy, purchase merchandise — mol sotib olmoq, to order merchandise — molar buyurma qilmoq to sell merchandise — mol sotmoq to ship merchandise — molni yuklamoq to carry (a line of) merchandise — mollar (partiyasini) tashimoq assorted merchandise, general merchandise — har-hil mollar first-class merchandise, high-quality merchandise — oily sifatli molar

v. sotmoq, savdo qilmoq; bozorga mol (tovar) surmoq

merchant n. [mɜ:tʃ(ə)nt] savdogar Syn: trader, storekeeper, commercial

amount n. [ə'maunt] 1) sanoq, son, miqdor a large amount of work - enormous (huge, large, tremendous) amount — katta miqdordagi Syn: number, quantity v. miqdorda bo'lmoq E.g. The bill amounts to L40. This amounts to a refusal. What, after all, does it amount to?

purchase n. ['pɜ:tʃəs] xarid; to make some purchases — xarid qilmoq, purchase and sale — sotib olish va sotish, a purchase on credit/for cash — kreditga/ naqd pulga xarid, e.g. My last big purchase was a van which I crushed in last year. She opened the box and looked at her purchase.

v. sotib olmoq, xarid qilmoq Syn. buy

expense n. [ɪks'pens] xarajat, sarf, chiqim to go to great expense — katta xarajat qilmoq to put smb. to great expense — kimnidir xarajatga qo'yimoq to cut down (on), reduce expenses — xarajatlarni qisqartmoq; personal (pocket) expense — cho'ntak xarajatlari, traveling expense — yo'l xarajatlari; at my expense — mening hisobimdan; at government expense — hukumat hisobidan

profitable *adj.* [ˈprɒfɪtəbl̩] - foyda beradigan / keltiradigan Syn: beneficial, useful, serviceable, fruitful, valuable *v.* foyda ko'rmq

-able sifat yasovchi qo'shimcha: drinkable, readable, eatable, payable va h.

stock *n.* [stɒk] - aksiya, hissa, pay, fond stockholder - aksiyador

bond *n.* [bɒnd] - obligatsiya, to set bond — obligatsiya chiqarmoq long bond — uzoq muddatli obligatsiya

dividend *n.* [ˈdɪvɪdend] - dividend, aksiyadorlar o'rtasida taqsimlanadigan foyda qismi

interest *n.* [ɪntrɪst] - hissa, ulush to own an interest — ulushini olmoq (biznesda) Syn: share, part

ensure *v.* [ɪnˈʃʊə] ishontirmoq, kafolat bermq

loan *n.* [ləʊn] - ssuda, qarz to negotiate a loan — ssuda shartlari ustida kelishmoq to get, receive a loan — ssuda olmoq, to pay off, repay a loan — ssudani qaytarmoq, interest-free loan — foizsiz ssuda, long-term loan — uzoq muddatli ssuda, low-interest loan — kam foizli ssuda, short-term loan — qisqa muddatli ssuda, student loan — talabalar uchun ssuda

v. ssuda bermq e.g. Money which has been loaned to city councils by the central government can be repaid at a low rate of interest Syn: lend

enable *v.* [ɪneɪbl̩] - imkoniyat bermq, noil qilmoq, huquq bermq Syn: authorize, sanction, empower

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Complete these sentences with some of the vocabulary words.

1. People lend money to a business by purchasing 2. Suppose there is no competition ... would develop. 3. If there is a ... of goods the price will go up. 4. He received ... to buy a car. 5. If you buy a company's ... you will become a stockholder. 6. If a company makes a progress in business its stockholders will receive 7. I calculated all ... for my new business and decided to get a short term loan. 8. You will not receive a loan from this bank unless you ... them to repay it on time. 9. If you wish to buy an expansive ... you may receive a long

term loan. 10. The loans ... people to purchase expensive items. 11. The ... of students is increasing at our university. 12. My father gives me 20 000 sums a week for my pocket 13. But for the ... I would be able to complete my study at the university. 14. Suppose you received low-interest loan, what would you ...? 15. If I were you I would have bought as much stocks as I afford.

Ex. 2. Chose the correct word.

1. Your mortgage application has been approved, so you can buy a flat. The bank has agreed to _____ the money for the purchase. (*borrow / lend*) 2. You purchased 100 shares of Asal Candy Company stock. When the company had a jump in sales, you received _____. (*dividends / interest*) 3. You have \$1,000 in your saving account. The bank pays you 4% _____ annually on this money. (*dividends / interest*) 4. You own your own business, and two people work for you. They are your _____. (*employees / employers*) 5. The price of your Asal Candy Company stock went down below what you paid for it. If you sell this stock now, you will take a _____. (*profit / loss*) 6. You have a stable job at a company and you own the 10% stocks of it. You are _____ of the company. (*stockholder / investor*)

Ex. 3. Fill in prepositions.

1. The manager and the clerk bombarded each other ... (with / on) abuse. 2. Mr. Grey showered abuse ... (on / upon) his wife at the court. 3. She took a lot of abuse ... (upon / from) him. 4. Mrs. Morison used to abuse her daughter ... (in / of) law left and right. 5. The problem of shortage ... (of / in) cash will increase unless the customers get accustomed to use credit cards. 6. When people buy merchandise or service, they often do not pay for their purchase ... (with / in) cash. One popular method of making payments is ... (by / from) check. 7. When the amount ... (of / in) population increases the problem of housing shortage will become the issue of the day. 8. Some people prefer to purchase expensive items ... (for / on) credit. 9. Suppose you don't have enough money to pay for your purchase ... (in / for) cash,

would you buy it on credit? 10. I am sorry I have put you ... (to / on) great expense. 11. If you purchase a house by obtaining a loan you will have to repay it ... (with / off) interest over 10 years. 12. If the business does well the stockholders share ... (in / of) the profits of the company by receiving dividends.

Ex. 4. Translate into English.

1. Biznesda raqobatchilar bir-birlarini kamsitmasliklari lozim. 2. Iste'molchilar a'lo sifatli mahsulotni arzon narxda sotib olishni xohlaydi. 3. Mahsulotlat iste'molchilar talabiga qarab ishlab chiqariladi. 4. Aytaylik iste'molchilar mahsulot sifatidan qoniqishmadi, uni ishlab chiqarishda davom etasizmi? 5. Agar oziq-ovqat ta'minotida taqchillik bo'lsa, uning narxi ko'tariladi. 6. Biznesni ta'sirchan boshqarish uchun yangi va yuqori sifatli mahsulot ishlab chiqarish lozim. 7. Janob Grin xilma-xil molar sotadi. Agar siz undan mol sotib olmoqchi bo'lsangiz albatta savdolashing. U juda yaxshi savdogar. 8. Agar mahsulotimizga talab pasaysa ishchilar soni qisqartiriladi. 9. Biz shahar tashqarisidan uy sotib olmoqchimiz, lekin naqd to'lashga pulimiz yetmaydi deb xijolatdaman. 10. Uzur sizni ancha xarajatga qo'ydik. – Hechqisi yoq siz bisning doimiy mijosimissiz. 11. Agar siz bizning korxonamiz aksiyalaridan sotib olsangiz daromaddan ulushingizni o'z vaqtida olishingizna kafolatlaymiz. 12. Janob Waiyt juda omadli. U yaqinda kompyuter chiplari ishlab chiqaradigan zavodning obligatsylarani sotib olgandi, darrov boyib ketdi.

Ex. 5. a) Read the story below.

Misunderstood Husband

A husband was sitting disconsolately on the front stoop of his home, shaking his head. "What's the matter?" asked a passing neighbor. "Are you having trouble with your wife?"

The husband nodded. "I can not understand it," he said. "All of a sudden she blew up. I was reading a newspaper and she was telling me what she has been

doing – washed all the kids' clothes, vacuumed the entire house, shopped, baked, and weeded¹⁰ the flower bed.”

“And you ignored her, and she blew up, eh?” the neighbor added. “No.” the husband replied, “All I said was ‘And what did you do in the afternoon?’”

b) Retell the story.

c) Say why the wife lost her temper.

d) Make up a dialogue that might have taken place between the husband and the wife.

e) Give your criticism of the husband's attitude to his wife's housework.

Ex. 6. Sharing Ideas

A. Issues

Debate these issues in small groups. Then chose one and write about it.

1. Which is better: to borrow money from a bank in order to start your own business or to wait until you have enough to go into business with your own money?
2. Is it better to be employed by a company or self employed?
3. Should government employees (for example teachers, police, and firefighters) be allowed to go on strike, or is this too harmful to society?

B. On a Personal Note. Write about one of these topics.

1. Would you like to own your own business some day? Why and why not?
2. Do you think people should ever borrow money? Under what circumstances do you consider this a good idea?

¹⁰ weed - tozalamoq, olib tashlamoq, qutilmoq

Grammar: Participle I

Text: Orpheus and Eurydice

Study these examples:

1. Opening the door, he went out to the terrace.

Switching off the light, she went to sleep.

Leaving the room, he turned back and stood for a while as if he had forgotten something.

The climbers stood on top of the mountain, gazing at the splendid view.

She went out, worrying about her daughter.

2. Having garaged his car, he remembered that he hadn't lunched.

Having graduated from the university, he paid off the loan.

Having set the table, she went into the bedroom to do her hair.

Having read the message, he remembered that he hadn't locked the door.

Having divorced his wife, he realized that he had made a great mistake.

3. We admired the stars twinkling in the sky.

We decided to paint the fence surrounding the garden.

He tried to catch the butterflies flying over the flowers.

Approaching to the lake we saw white swans floating on the water.

We were eager to see the castle standing on the top of the rock.

4. Being left alone, Pauline and I kept silence for some time.

Being imprisoned the criminal attempt suicide.

Being operated my father became very fragile.

Being punished my little brother refused supper.

Being engaged to Victor, Sarah arranged a party for her friends.

5. Having already been informed that he always slept with a light in the room, I placed two candles on a little table.

Having been warned that Mr. Alfred was very aggressive, I tried to keep a distance.

Having been ensured that the young man was a perfect candidate, the minister appointed him to the position.

Having been awarded with a golden medal, he became an outstanding sportsman.

Having been appointed to the position he became very rude.

Having been removed from the office she decided to start her own business.

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Compose situations using the examples.

Ex. 2. Rewrite these sentences.

A. Use Example 1.

1. As soon as she came into the room, Mrs. Clark greeted to everybody. 2. While reading the book, she couldn't keep herself from smiling. 3. The boss gave some massage to his secretary while entering his office. 4. He cracked the door while garaging his car. 5. I chopped off my finger when I was trimming the hedges. 6. My father burned his hand while roasting turkey.

B. Use Example 2.

1. When he finished his work he remembered that he had forgotten to change his clothes. 2. After she had cooked the meal, she went out to call her husband. 3. He trimmed the saplings and began to weave a basket. 4. The doctor felt my pulse and prescribed a medicine to my illness. 5. Mr. Tomas bought the 10 percent stocks of

the company and became a stockholder. 6. They sold their house and moved abroad.

C. Use Example 3.

1. She went toward the car. It was standing under a high tree. 2. We climbed on the top of the mountain rock and watched the clouds. They were floating just around us. 3. Dick immediately put off his clothes and dove in to save a girl. She was losing her conscious. 4. All children were eager to paint the wall. It surrounded the backyard. 5. They wanted to rebuild the old barn. It was spoiling the view.

D. Use Example 4.

1. The boy was punished and he felt very miserable. 2. He was suspected under the robbery and taken to the court. 3. He was accepted to the team and in very short of time he became a chief player. 4. She was invited to the party, and decided to put on her new dress. 5. They painted the cottage and it looked like a restored one. 6. The police was radioed about the accident, and they closed the highway.

E. Use Example 5.

1. I was told the Mr. Green liked his coffee rather sweet, so I put a plate of sugar on the table. 2. I was informed that Shirley was going to have a baby, so I bought a baby carriage as a present. 3. We agreed to lend him \$100,000 because he offered us a very good interest. 4. Her parents were persuaded and they arranged the date for their wedding party.

Ex. 3. Translate into English.

1. Tashqariga chiqayotib Dik tog'asiga nimanidir tushuntirdi. 2. Xonaga kirayotib bolalar o'qituvchiga salom berishdi. 3. Chiroqni o'chirayotib ona qizchaga xayrli tun dedi. 4. Eshikni qulflayotib kalitni sindirib qo'ydim. 5. Universitetni tamomlab maktabga ishga kirdim. 6. Ssuda olib mashina sotib oldi. 7. Turmush qurishib boshqa shaharga ko'chib ketishdi. 8. Mashinada avariya sodir qilib qo'lini

shikastlab oldi. 9. Maktubni po'chta orqali jo'natib (post), tezda uyiga qaytdim. 10. Uyimiz orqasida turgan eski og'ilxonani qayta tamirladik. 11. Oynadan tashqariga qarab to'kilayotgan barglarni tomosha qildim. 12. Odamlar sohilga yaqinlashayotgan ulkan, qizil yelkanli kemani ko'rib hayratlanishdi. 13. U o'rmonda yugirib yurgan kiyiklarni o'z ko'zi bilan ko'rishni juda-juda istardi. 14. Amakimnikiga borib hovlida o'ynab yurgan bir necha bolalarni ko'rdim. 15. Uni haqoratlashganidan o'zini juda nochor his qildi. 16. Mehribonlik Uyiga tashlab ketilganligidan yuragi parchalangan edi. 17. O'zbekistonda tug'ilganimdan, shu yerda ta'lim olganimdan faxrlanaman. 18. Yuqoriroq lavozimga tayinlanib o'zini tutishni (behavior) o'zgartirdi. 19. Unga yaxshi ish taklif qilishgani uchun boshqa shaharga ko'cib ketmoqchi. 20. Jarohatlanib xushidan ketdi.



ORPHEUS AND EURYDICE

Retold by Padraic Colum

Many were the minstrels who, in the early days of the world, when amongst men, telling them stories of the gods, of their wars and their births, and of the beginning of things. Of all these minstrels, none was as famous as Orpheus; none could tell truer things about the gods; he himself was half divine, and there were some who said that he was in truth Apollo's son.

Having lost his bribe, Orpheus stopped his singing and his playing upon the lyre. His young wife, Eurydice, was taken from him. One day, walking in the garden, she was bitten on the heel by a serpent; straightway she went down to the

World of the Dead. Then everything in the world was dark and bitter for the minstrel of the gods; sleep would not come to him, and for him food had no taste. Then Orpheus said, "I will do that which no **mortal** has ever done before; I will do that which even the **immortals** might **shrink** from doing; I will go down into the World of the Dead, I will bring back to the living and to the light my bride, Eurydice."

Then Orpheus went on his way to the **cavern**, which goes down, down to the World of the Dead - the Cavern Tainaron. The trees showed him the way. As he went on, Orpheus played upon his lyre and sang; the trees heard his song and with their arms and their heads, they showed him the way to the deep, deep cavern named Tainaron.

Down, down, down by a winding path Orpheus went. He came at last to the great gate opening upon the World of the Dead. Seeing a living being the silent guards were astonished. And they would not let Orpheus approach the gate.

Having taken his lyre in his hands, the minstrel began to play upon it. As he played, the silent **watchers** gathered around him, leaving the gate unguarded. And as he played, the Rulers of the Dead came forth, Hades and Persephone, and listened to the words of the living man.

"The cause of my coming through the dark and fearful ways," sang Orpheus "is to **strive** to gain a **fairer fate** for Eurydice, my bride. All that is above must come down to you at last, O Rulers of the most lasting World. But before her time has, Eurydice been brought here. I have desired strength to endure her loss, but I can not endure it. And I have come before you, Hades and Persephone, brought here by love."

When Orpheus said the name of love, Persephone, the queen of the dead, **bowed** her young head, the bearded Hades, the king, bowed his head also. Persephone remembered how Demeter, her mother, had **sought** her all through the world, and she remembered the touch of her mother's tears upon her face. And Hades remembered how his love for Persephone had led him to carry him away

from the valley where she had been gathering flowers. He and Persephone stood aside, and Orpheus went through the gate and came amongst the dead.

Having been allowed Orpheus came in the cavern and saw Eurydice. She looked upon her husband, but she had not the power to come near him. But slowly she came when Hades, the king, called her. Then with joy, Orpheus took her hands.

It would be granted them – no mortal ever gained such **privilege** before - to leave, both together, the World of the Dead, and to **abide** for another space in the World of the Living. **One** condition there would be - that on their way up neither Orpheus nor Eurydice should look back.

They went through the gate and came out amongst the watchers that are around the **portals**. These showed them the path that went up to the World of the Living. That way they went, Orpheus and Eurydice, he going before her.

Up and through the darkened ways they went, Orpheus knowing that Eurydice was behind him, but never looking back upon her. As he went his heart was filled with things to tell her- how the trees were blossoming in the garden she had left; how the water was sparkling in the fountain; how the doors of the house stood open; how they sitting together, would watch the sunlight on the **laurel** bushes. All these things were in his heart to tell her who came behind him, silent and unseen.

And now they were nearing the place where the cavern opened on the world of the living. Orpheus looked up towards the light from the sky. Out of the opening of the cavern he went; he saw a white-winged bird fly by. Turning around he cried, "O Eurydice, look upon the world I have won you back to!"

He turned to say this to her. He saw her with her long dark hair and pale face. **Stretching** his arms he tried to **clasp** her. But in that **instant** she slipped back into the gloom of the cavern. And all minstrels he heard spoken were a single word, "Farewell!" Long, long had it taken Eurydice to climb so far, but in the moment of his turning around, she had fallen back to her place amongst the dead. For Orpheus had looked back.

Back through the cavern, Orpheus went again. Again, he came before the watchers of the gate. But now he was not looked at nor listened to; hopeless, he had to return to the World of the Living.

VOCABULARY

minstrel *n.* [ˈmɪnstr(ə)]– qoʻshiqchi, shoir, baxshi wandering minstrel — daydi qoʻshiqchi

divine *n.* [diˈvaɪn]– avliyo, ilohiy qudratga egasi, bashoratchi, ruhoniyyat. *v.* – bashorat qilmoq, oldindan aytmoq e.g. He could not divine the cause of this extraordinary change.

lyre *n.* [lɪə]– lira, arfaga oʻxshash musiqa asbobi

serpent [sə:p(ə)nt] *n.* - a) katta zaharli ilon Syn: snake б) qon soʻradigan shayton 2) vahshiy, qonxoʻr, qasoskor odam 3) serpent (qadimiy musiqa asbobi)

straightway *adv.* [sreɪtweɪ] toʻgʻri e.g. He saw a burglar and straightway he called the police.

mortal *n.* [ˈmo:tl] tirik mavjudot

adj. oʻldiradigan, oʻldiradigan darajada xavfli, qaqshatqich e.g. a mortal injury — jiddiy jarohat, mortal agony — qaqshatqich hujum Syn: fatal, deadly, cruel, implacable; mortal fear — dahshatli qoʻrqinch

immortal *adj.* – oʻlmas, oʻlmaydigan, umriboqiy

shrink *v.* [ʃrɪŋk] (shrank, shrunk) – qisqartmoq, kichraytmoq / to shrink from oʻzini olib qochmoq (chetga olmoq)

cavern *n.* [keɪvən] - kovak, gʻor, boʻshliq

watcher *n.* [wɒtʃə] - nazoratchi, kuzatuvchi, qorovul

strive [straɪv] strove - striven *v.* tirishmoq, kuchanmoq, harakat qilmoq; (for, after, towards) to strive for success Syn: try; kurashmoq (against, with - qarshi) to strive for peace — tinchlik uchun kurashmoq to strive against fate — taqdirga qarshi kurashmoq e.g. The minister begged the worshippers to strive against evil. Syn: struggle, compete, contend

fair *adj.* [feə] – 1) chiroyli, maftunkor, dilbar, jozibador, tiniq, musaffo

2) ko'rgazma, yarmarka, bozor

fate *n.* [feit] - taqdir, qismat to decide, seal smb.'s fate — kimningdir taqdirini hal qilmoq to meet one's fate — o'z qismatini uchratmoq, blind fate — ko'r taqdir cruel fate — shavqatsiz qismat Syn: destiny, fortune, lot, portion, doom (the Fates); grek mifalogiyasida uch ma'buda *v.* taqdiriga bitilmoq, qismatiga yozilmoq e.g. It was fated that England should be the theatre of the first of a series of Revolutions.

bow *n.* [bau] -1) ta'zim, egilish e.g. She received him with bows and smiles.

v. ta'zim qilmoq, egilmoq, egmoq (bow down) e.g. Take a tree and bow it.

(before, to) e.g. All the men in the court bowed before the king as he entered.

rozilik ma'nosida boshini egmoq

seek *v.* (sought) [so:t]— izlamoq, qidirmoq, axtarmoq e.g. For over 100 years, men have sought for gold in the hills. Syn: sue, look for, hunt e.g. She sought consolation. seek after - Many people spend years seeking after peace of mind. seek out - How can we seek out a really good person for the job? seek through — (tintib chiqmoq) The police sought through the house.

Privilege *n.* ['privildʒ] - imtiyoz, sharaf, rag'bat, ustunlik, afzallik award a privilege — give a privilege - grant a privilege *v.* imtiyoz bermoq, e.g. Representatives are privileged from arrests.

abide *v.* [ə'baɪd] (abode, abided) - 1) kutmoq (tinchgina) e.g. Sir Percivale had abode there till mid-day. 2) chidamoq to abide terrors which other people shrank from encountering — 3) to abide by the circumstances — vaziyatga ko'nikmoq abide at — yashab qolmoq e.g. The king went to visit his daughter and abode at her palace for ten days. abide by — so'zida turmoq, qat'iyyatli bo'lmoq e.g. I abide by what I said.

abide in — vaqtincha qolmoq e.g. Even so, said David firmly; I will abide in this place.

abide with — biror kim bilan qolmoq

portal *n.* [po:tl] - 1) portal, asosiy chiqish joyi; darvoza

laurel *n.* [lo:r(ə)l] - dafna (daraxti, yaprog'i) g'alaba sharafiga dafna barglaridan to'qiladigan chambarak

stretch *v.* [stretʃ] - cho'zmoq, cho'zilmoq, uzaytmoq e.g. He stretched his neck to see what was going on. Syn: strain, extend e.g. Broad plains stretching to the sea. Yastanmoq Syn: spread to stretch a wire between two posts — ikki stalba orasiga sim tortmoq - stretch out e.g. The boy out stretched his tongue.

clasp *v.* [kla:sp] - tutmoq, ushlab qolmoq, ilib qolmoq, mahkam tutib qolmoq Syn: grasp, press, squeeze

instant *n.* [instənt] - on, soniya at the instant of death — o'lim onlarida / at that very instant — huddi shu paytda / on the instant — osha zahotiy oq Syn: moment, twinkling e.g. At that instant I realized who had planned the whole scheme. In the same instant he flung open the car door. Come this very instant! - Zudlik bilan hoziroq keeling!

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Find the best way to complete each sentence. Write the letter of your answer on the line.

- | | | | |
|----|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. | Orpheus stopped his singing and his playing upon the lyre | a | because they saw a living being coming towards them. |
| 2. | Eurydice died | b | because he had a strong desire to bring back to the living and to the light his bride, <i>Eurydice</i> ." |
| 3. | Orpheus decided to go down into the World of the Dead;
The silent guards who keep watch | c | because, Hades, the king, gave them such privilege before-to leave, both. |
| 4. | there for the Rulers of the Dead were astonished | d | because Orpheus could not keep himself from looking back and talking to his beloved. |
| 5. | Orpheus managed to go through the gate and came amongst the dead | e | because she was bitten on the heel by a serpent. |

- Orpheus was granted to leave the World of the Dead, with his bride, Eurydice
6. *f* because Hades, the king, ordered that neither Orpheus nor Eurydice should look back.
- Up and through the darkened ways they went, Orpheus knowing that Eurydice was behind him, but never looking back upon her
7. *g* because his young wife, Eurydice, was taken from him.
- When they came out of the opening of the cavern Eurydice slipped back into the gloom of the cavern
8. *h* because as he played, the silent watchers gathered around him, leaving the gate unguarded.

Ex. 2. Translate the examples for some of the key vocabulary words in your native language.

1. He stretched himself out on the sands
2. You can stretch this rubber out to twice its length.
3. The years ahead seemed to stretch out for ever.
4. The ligaments were on the stretch.
5. He gave a yawn and a stretch.
6. She was wearing a robe clasped with a brooch.
7. He clasped her hand and smiled.
8. She clasped her won hands and took a deep breath.
9. Take a tree and bow it.
10. The ages bowed him.
11. I bow to your better judgment, and will take your advice.
12. The apple tree was bowed down with the weight of its fruit.
13. Aunt Helen spent years bowed down with grief after the death of her husband.
14. We shall never bow down to our enemies.
15. Leaving the room she bowed herself out.
16. Having learned about his opponent Jim bowed (himself) out of the competition.
17. The old leader decided to bow out instead of fighting to keep his position.
18. The owner of the restaurant bowed us in when we arrived.
19. Don't shrink away from danger.
20. Why do you always shrink back from the possibility of change?

Ex. 3. Which words have the same meaning as the words in the story? Circle the letter of correct answer.

1. Many were the **minstrels** who told people stories of the gods, of their wars and their births, and of the beginning of things.

a. poet singer

b. fortuneteller

2. He himself was half **divine**, and there were some who said that he was in truth Apollo's son.

a. godlike

b. predictor

3. She was bitten on the heel by a **serpent**.

a. devil

b. snake

4. I will do that which even the **immortals** might shrink from doing.

a. deathless

b. temporary

5. I will do that which even the **immortals** might shrink from doing.

a. bow out

b. avoid

6. "The cause of my coming through the dark and fearful ways is to strive to gain a fairer fate for Eurydice, my bride", sang Orpheus.

a. try

b. struggle

7. Persephone remembered how Demeter, her mother, had sought her all through the world.

a. search

b. look after

8. It would be granted them – no mortal ever gained such privilege before – to leave, both together, the World of the Dead, and to abide for another space in the World of the Living.

a. survive

b. live

Ex. 4. Translate into English

1. U juda mashhur qo'shiqchi shoir edi. 2. Juanna ilohiy shaxslar haqidagi kitobni oqib juda tasirlanib ketdi. 3. Qo'lida lirani olib Biatris qo'shiq kuyladi. Uning qo'shig'i ilohiy sanam muhabbati haqida edi. 4. Key to'satdan ilohiy kimsani ko'rdi, o'sha zahoti hushidan ketdi. 5. Momahavo qo'lini cho'zib olmani uzdi, ikkiga bo'lib yarmini Odamatoga berdi. 6. Biz yaxshi bilim olish uchun intilamiz,

va albatta O'zbekistonning porloq kelajagi uchun mehnat qilamiz. 7. Yelena Bilni uchratib o'z peshonasiga yozilgani aynan u ekanligini angladi. 8. Shavqatsiz qismat uni farzandidan ayirdi. 9. Mezbon bosh egib mehmonlarni ichkariga taklif qildi. 10. Amakim ish qidirib boshqa shaharga ketdi. 11. Harbiy xizmatni o'tagan abituriyentlarga (applicant) o'qishga kirishlarida imtiyoz beriladi. 12. Nik umrining ohirigacha qizi bilan qolishga qaror qilib ikkinchi marotaba uylanmadi. 13. Merri dafna yaproqlaridan chambarak yasab, g'alaba bilan qaytayotgan sevgilisini kutib olish uchun tashqariga chiqdi. 14. U orqasiga o'grilib do'stining qolidan mahkam tutub qoldi.

Lesson Twenty One

Grammar: Participle II

Text: High-Tech Communications

Study these examples:

1. He answered through the **locked** door.

It seems he has made the note with a broken pen.

They are going to rebuild the destroyed bridge.

Mr. Presley bought a used car.

He set on the newly painted chair.

2. **Accompanied** by his father she calmly entered the room.

Shocked by the news he looked at me with wide open eyes.

Acquainted with George she changed completely.

Associated with the crime he soon felt sorry.

Educated by his father Tom became an excellent speaker.

3. We are going to talk about the problem discussed at the meeting.

He prefers to buy a car **produced** in Uzbekistan.

Have you read the article **published** in "Halk Suzi"?

He is fond of pies **baked** in an oven.

I have been reading a novel **translated** by Usmon Nosir.

She admired the stage **hang** with beautiful curtains.

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

Ex.1. Compose situations using the examples.

Ex. 2. Write one sentence instead of two.

a) Use example 1.

1. She bought a car. It was used before. 2. He sat on the table. It was broken. 3. We saw an elephant. It was dead. 4. They swam in the pond. It was polluted. 5. She uses a computer. It is modernized. 6. He can not write with his right hand. He injured it.

b) Use example 2.

1. David and Arthur triumphantly marched towards the court building. The knights followed them. 2. He was awakened by a violent noise in midnight. At that very instant he jumped out of bed. 3. She was involved in her neighbors quarrel. At it prevented her from going shopping. 4. The company sponsored her study. And it enabled her to obtain a licensee for her invention. 5. Mr. Green was elected to the presidency of the committee. He promised to increase the members' celery.

c) Use example 3.

1. She was holding a newspaper. It was printed in Tashkent. 2. They are wearing colorful clothes. Their mother made these costumes for them as a present. 3. In the museum we saw golden and silver coins. They were issued during the rein of Amur Temur the Great. 4. Mr. Brain led him into the conservatorium. The building was constructed at the end of XIXth century. 5. They explored the island and discovered an ancient town there. The town was inhabited by ancient Indian tribes.

6. They demonstrated a new model of cell phone. It was invented by Uzbek scholars. 7. He gave me something. It was folded into a pretty paper.

Ex. 3. Translate into English.

1. U devorga yozilgan so'zlarni o'qishga intildi. 2. Biz singan stullarni to'pladik va tuzatdik. 3. Nina turli ranglarga bo'yalgan matodan o'ziga ko'ylak tikdi. 4. Ular to'q rangdagi pardalar osilgan deraza oldida to'xtashdi. 5. Chiroyli rasmlar bilan bezatilgan xonaga kirib hayratlanib qoldi. 6. Siz yaxshisi minilgan mashina oling. Boshqarishni mukammal o'rganib olganingizdan so'ng yangi mashina olganingiz ma'qul. 7. Sizing o'rningizda bo'lganimda qaynatilgan tuhum yerdim. U sizning sog'lig'ingizga foydali. 8. Qovurilgan baliq quritilgan baliqdan bazaliroq, lekin unda vitaminlar kam. 9. Iltimos, devorga yopishtirilgan gulqog'ozlarni olib tashlang. 10. Dugonalari hamroh bo'lib, kelinchak to'y bazmiga keldi. 11. Xolasidan tahsil olib buyuk rassom bo'ldi. 12. Farzandlariga va uy ishlariga bog'lanib qolib ishidan bo'shshga majbur bo'ldi. 13. Juana o'zining eng yaxshi ko'rgan, O'zbekistonda tikilgan ko'ylagini kiyib olgandi. 14. Jane tatilda olgan rasimlarini dugonalariga ko'rsatishni juda xohlayotgan edi.

HIGH-TECH COMMUNICATIONS

Computers control almost every part of our life. They are in places most people don't even realize. Computers regulate cars, microwave ovens, and telephones, even newer models of refrigerators or dishwashers. The growth in computer usage came about only recently. In the 1970s, only large businesses and governments had computers. They were extremely expensive and very large. Today, there are computers even in homes.



Among many other tasks, computers send and receive messages, do research, keep track of finances, make and check on investments, and purchase goods of all kinds – books, antiques, groceries, cars, homes, airplane tickets, and more computers. Almost anything that can be purchased at a store or by mail order can now be obtained by computer. Computers have revolutionized medicine. They have made possible such devices as the CT* scanner and the MRI* machine, both of which are used to diagnose medical conditions. Educational programs on CD-ROM disks teach reading, geography, and virtually all other academic subjects. Teenagers communicate with their friends by e-mail (electronic mail) and meet people with similar interests all over the world on the Internet. Some children play exciting (and sometimes scary) computer games. On the other hand wide usage of computers may cause other problems. Attracted by computer games some teenagers get into trouble academically. Misguided by horror, thriller, and shameless films some children are being involved in crime.

Perhaps no invention has affected daily life as much as the telephone. In its early years, it enabled people to talk to each other without having to travel long distances. Later it provided a means of transmitting news and other important information all around the world instantly. And today it provides the means of millions of people to communicate with each other directly or via the Internet.

Wireless portable phones (usually called cellular or cell phones) provide people with a quick contact in case of emergency. Many people chat with friends or check in on their kids as they walk along the street or shop. Cell phone usage has increased because the cost has decreased to the point where most people can afford it. When first introduced, cell phones cost more than \$ 1000, and the per-minute rate made them impractical for most individuals. The quality of cell phones has also significantly improved. In the past, people speaking from wireless telephones were often difficult to hear and, frequently, the signal would be lost. Today's phones produce sound quality equal to wired telephones.

* Computed tomography.

* Magnetic resonance imaging

Cell phones can be also **nuisances**. Many theatres and libraries have signs asking that cell phones be turned off. People using cell phones while driving can be dangerous. Being **engrossed** in conversation, drivers usually crash their car. Some states are considering laws to **prohibit** talking on the phone while driving. Speaking too loudly and rudely, some people disturb others and **violate** discipline.

VOCABULARY

obtain v. [əb'tein] - omoq, qo'lga kiritmoq; erishmoq to obtain a reward — mukofot olmoq e.g. I climbed to obtain a general view of the surrounding scene.

Syn: get, receive, catch

similar adj. [sɪmɪlə] - aynan, bir hil, o'xshash (to); similar in color — a similar opinion — on similar occasions —to be in a similar situation —similar in every respect —similar to smth. Syn: alike, parallel 2. Ant: contradictory, different, dissimilar, diverse, contrasting

scary adj. [skeəri] qo'rqinchli, dahshatli, vahimali Syn. frightening, horrible

attract v. [ətɹækt] - 1) jalb qilmoq, o'ziga tortmoq e.g. Anything with strong gravity attracts other things to it.. 2) rom qilmoq, maftun qilmoq, o'ziga asir qilmoq e.g. In spite of her hostility, she was attracted to him. Syn: captivate, fascinate 3) jalb qilmoq (e'tiborni, investitsiyani..) e.g. He shouted to attract attention. A crowd was attracted to the scene of the accident. President Mwinyi said his country would also like to attract investment from private companies.

transmit v. [træz'mɪt] - 1) uzatmoq, berib qo'ymoq 2) jo'natmoq, yubormoq Syn: dispatch 3) habar bermoq e.g. Water transmits electricity — suv tok o'tkazadi • - transmit to Syn: send

via prep. [waɪə] 1) orqali, orasidan, ichidan e.g. I was ever so glad to hear, via Helen, of you. (R. Fry) Syn: by way of 2) nimaningdir ko'magida, nimaningdir vositasida e.g. any deal would have to be concluded via contracts and attorneys. Syn: by means of, with the aid of

wireless adj. [waɪələs] - simsiz, simga ulanmagan wireless communication

significantly adj. [sɪg'nɪfɪkəntli] – ahamiyatga mollik, sezilarli darajada

nuisance *n.* [nj:sns] 1) noxushlik, ko'ngilsizlik, noqulaylik to cause, create a nuisance — noxushlik keltirmoq confounded, damned, perpetual nuisance — doimiy ko'ngilsizlik e.g. It was a nuisance to move during the semester. It's a nuisance that there's no hot water. She was an intolerable little nuisance. Syn: inconvenience, discomfort

engross *v.* [ɪn'grəʊs] - berilib ketmoq, chuqur kirishib ketmoq, bor vujudi bilan sho'ng'ib ketmoq, domiga tushib qolmoq (- in) e.g. The writer was so engrossed in her work that she did not hear the visitor enter the room.

prohibit *v.* [prə'hɪbɪt] - 1) ta'qiqlamoq, man qilmoq e.g. Visitors are prohibited from feeding the animals. Syn: outlaw, forbid, interdict Ant: endorse, permit 2) to'sqinlik qilmoq (from) Syn: prevent

violate *v.* ['vaɪələt] - buzmoq, poymol qilmoq, toptamoq to violate a law (oath, promise) — qonunni buzmoq (qasamni, va'dani)

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Insert the most suitable word. (*obtain, violate, prohibit, attract, engross, transmit*)

1. Mr. Murdock was so ... in his research that he completely forgot to feed his dog.
2. I have never ... my oath. I abide by what I said.
3. The students ... the collage discipline and were sent down.
4. Father punished his son and ... him to go out.
5. The operator ... the message via the Internet.
6. Such films ... millions of people like a magnet.
7. Having ... a master's degree, Bill went to his hometown.
8. It is ... to speak on cell-phones here. Please, switch off you cell-phones.

Ex. 2. Insert the most appropriate preposition.

1. When the children obtain the age ... self-confidence they chose their careers.
2. I was too engrossed ... my thoughts and didn't hear their call.
3. We will do our best to attract investments ... abroad.
4. The juveniles* are prohibited ... watching shameless films.
5. Violating the exciting discipline rules, he spoke ... his cell-

* juvenile - balog'atga yetmagan

phone very rudely. 6. The room was accurately designed. The curtains were similar ... color ... the carpet. 7. If I were ... a similar situation, I would have obtained a long term loan. 8. You would better consult your advocate ... similar occasions. 9. It is nuisance to smoke ... asking permission. 10. It would have been a very nice of you to send a letter ... Internet.

Ex. 3. Chose the right word and complete the sentences.

1. They drank much alcohol and _____ in the traffic. (violate / violence / violent)
2. She was awakened from a _____ noise at midnight. (violate / violence / violent)
3. He did a personal _____ to his wife in front of the children. (violate / violence / violent)
4. Gun ownership is _____ in Uzbekistan. (prohibit / prohibition)
5. _____ of gun ownership decreases the number of crimes. (prohibit / prohibition)
6. A teacher should have a talent to _____ his (or her) students. (attract / attraction / attractive)
7. She felt a strong _____ to him. (attract / attraction / attractive)
8. Betty has an _____ smile. (attract / attraction / attractive)
9. The offer is very _____ to us. (attract / attraction / attractive)
10. Social _____ of this project is very high. (significant / significantly / significance)
11. He made a _____ contribution to the science. (significant / significantly / significance)
12. The new technology was _____ effective. (significant / significantly / significance)
13. _____ by his friend's trick, Tom burst out crying. (scare / scary)
14. Having seen a _____ film, I couldn't sleep. (scare / scary)

Ex. 4. Translate into English.

1. Hozirgi kunda kompyuter texnologiyalaridan (computer technologies) deyarli barcha sohada foydalaniladi.
2. Bu idorada mobil telefonlardan foydalanish taqiqlanadi (prohibit).
3. Avtomobily boshqarayotganda haydovchi mobil telefonini (cell-phone) o'chirib qo'yishi shart.
4. U suhbatga juda berilib ketib (engross) farzandini bog'chadan olishni unutib qo'ydi.
5. Siz to'g'ringizda Anvardan (via) eshitib juda xursand bo'ldim.
6. O'zbekistonlik sportchilar turli xalqaro musobaqalarda qatnashib medallar qo'lga kiritishmoqda (obtain).
7. Bu mashinalarning rangi bir xil (similar), lekin ular bir biridan sezilarli darajada (significantly) farq qiladi.
8. Simsiz (wireless) telefonlar juda qulay.
9. Haydoveh yo'l qoidasini buzganligi (violate) uchun jarima (pay a fine) to'lashga majbur bo'ldi.
10. Kompyuter o'yinlari ko'plab o'spirinlarni o'ziga tortadi.
11. Turli xabarlarni Internet orqali istalgan joyga bir zumda yetkazish (transmit) mumkin.
12. O'qituvch talabalarga imtihon paytida uyali telefonda gaplashishni taqiqladi.

Ex. 5. Debate these issues in small groups. Then chose one and write about it.

1. Every person knows how to use a telephone. Some people say that everyone should also know how to use a computer. Do you agree?
2. The Internet is a sociable place. It has chat rooms, special-interest groups, auctions, and games. Some people become computer addicts. They communicate with people from all over the world via the Internet, but they forget to communicate with family members in their own living room. Have computers encouraged people to substitute virtual (online) relationships for real, personal human relationships? What will be the result of this?
3. When people put messages on the Internet, do they risk a loss of privacy? Is it risky to send credit card information on the Internet?
4. Where do you think high technology will take us in the future? Write your predictions.

SECTION 1

to get in / to get on: chiqmoq (transport vositasiga)

To get in is used for cars, *to get on* is used for all other forms of transportation.

E.g. 1. It's easiest to *get in* the car from the driver's side. The door on the other side doesn't work well. 2. I always *get on* the bus to work at 34th Street.

to get out of / to get off: tushmoq (transport vositasidan) *To get out of* is used for cars, *to get of* is used for all other forms of transportation.

E.g. 1. Why don't we stop and *get out of the car* for a while? 2. Helen *got off* the train at the 42nd Street terminal.

to put on: kiymoq (odatda kiyim kechakni)

E.g. 1. Mary *put on* her coat and left the room. 2. *Put your hat on* before you leave the house.

to take off: echmoq (=to remove) (odatda kiyim kechakni)

E.g. 1. John *took off* his jacket as he entered the office. 2. *Take your sweater off.* The room is very warm.

to call up: telefon qilmoq (= to telephone; **to give someone a call**)

To call = *to call up*

E.g. 1. I forgot to *call up* Mr. Jones yesterday. I'd better *call* him now. 2. *Call me up* tomorrow, Jane. We'll arrange a time to have lunch together. 3. I promise to *give you a call* as soon as I arrive in New York.

to turn on: (= **to switch on**): yoqmoq (biror narsani muruvvatini burash orqali ishga tushirmoq)

E.g. 1. Please *turn on* the light; it's too dark in here. 2. Do you know who *turned* the air conditioning *on*?

to turn off: (= **to switch off, to shut off**) o'chirmoq

E.g. 1. Please *turn off* the light when you leave the room. 2. Are you really listening to the radio, or should I *turn it off*?

right away: (= at once; very soon; immediately) darhol; zudlik bilan; o'sha zahoti
E.g. 1. Dad says that dinner will be ready *right away*, so we'd better wash our hands and set the table. 2. Tell Will to come to my office *right away*. I must see him immediately. 3. Stop playing that loud music *at once!*

to pick up: (=to lift from the floor, table, etc., with one's fingers) terib olmoq, yig'ishtirib olmoq (odatda barmoqlar bilan poldagi, yerdagi, stol ustidagi narsa(lar)ni)

E.g. 1. Harry *picked up* the newspaper that was on the front doorstep. 2. Could you *pick up* your toy *up* before someone falls over it?

sooner or later: (= eventually, after a period of time) vaqti kelib, ma'lum bir vaqt ichida

E.g. 1. If you study English seriously, *sooner or later* you'll become fluent. 2. I'm too tired to do my homework now; I'm sure I'll do it *sooner or later*.

to get up: (= to arise, to rise from a bed) o'rindan turmoq

to get smb. up -- biror kishini o'rindan turg'izmoq

E.g. 1. Carlo *gets up* at seven o'clock every morning. 2. At what time should we *get* the children *up* tomorrow?

at first: (= in the beginning, originally) avvaliga, oldiniga

E.g. 1. *At first* English was difficult for him, but later he made great progress. 2. I thought *at first* that it was Sheila calling, but then I realized that it was Betty.

EXERCISES

A. Choose the appropriate idiomatic expression to substitute for the italicized word or words in each sentence below.

1. His alarm clock is always set for six o'clock. He *arises* at the same time every day.

a. turns off	b. gets up	c. puts on
--------------	------------	------------

2. She *telephoned* her friend to tell him about the meeting. They decided to drive there together.

a. turned on	b. took off	c. called up
--------------	-------------	--------------

3. It's 4 P.M. now, and this important letter must be mailed today. Can you take it to the post office *immediately*?

a. at first	b. right away	c. sooner or later
-------------	---------------	--------------------

4. Be sure to *switch off* the light before you leave the house.

a. to turn off	b. to take off	c. to get off
----------------	----------------	---------------

5. Pat *placed* her new hat *on her head* while looking in the mirror.

a. picked up	b. put on	c. gets on
--------------	-----------	------------

6. *Remove* your jacket and sit down for a few minutes.

a. Turn on	b. Get on	c. Take off
------------	-----------	-------------

7. I want to stay unmarried for a while, but I hope to get married *eventually*.

a. sooner or later	b. right away	c. at first
--------------------	---------------	-------------

8. *In the beginning* I thought that it was Bob who was in the car.

a. To get on	b. At once	c. At first
--------------	------------	-------------

9. He *boarded* the bus at Broadway and 79th Street.

a. got off	b. got on	c. picked up
------------	-----------	--------------

10. John *took* the pencil *with his fingers* and began to write a note.

a. turned on	b. got off	c. picked up
--------------	------------	--------------

B. Fill in each blank with the appropriate form of an idiomatic expression from this unit.

Jean's alarm clock makes a loud ringing noise. She _____ the alarm clock immediately after it rings each morning. However, she doesn't rise from bed _____. She waits a few minutes before she _____. Jean enjoys lying in bed for a while, but _____ she gets up. Then she _____ the bedroom light and goes to her closet. She _____ her pajamas and _____ her work clothes.

SECTION 2

to dress up: (= to wear formal clothes, to dress very nicely) rasmiy / chiroyli / risoladagidek kiyinmoq E.g. 1. We should definitely *dress up* to go to the theater. 2. You don't have to *dress up* for Mike's party.

at last: (= finally, after a long time) nihoyat E.g. 1. We waited for hours and then the train arrived *at last*. 2. Now that I am sixteen, *at last* I can drive my parents' car.

as usual: (= as is the general case, as is typical) odatdagidek E.g. 1. George is late for class *as usual*. This seems to happen every day. 2. *As usual*, Dora received first prize in the swimming contest. It's the third consecutive year that she has won.

to find out: (= get information about, to determine) bilib olmoq; aniqlamoq E.g. 1. Will you please try to *find out* what time the airplane arrives? 2. I'll call right now to *find it out*.

to look at: (= give one's attention to; to watch) biror narsaga / kimsaga qaramoq; ko'z tashlamoq E.g. 1. The teacher told us to *look at* the blackboard and not at our books. 2. I like to walk along a country road at night and *look at* the stars.

to look for: (= to try to find, to search for) qidirmoq; izlamoq; ahtarmoq *all over* ravish iborasi fe'l va predlog o'rtasida kelishi mumkin. E.g. 1. He's spent over an hour *looking for* the pen that he lost. 2. So there you are! We've *looked all over for* you.

all right: (= acceptable, fine; yes, okay) ma'qul; yahshi (rozilik alomati) norasmiy suhbatda *alright* shaklida ishlatsa ham bo'ladi E.g. 1. He said that it would be *all right* to wait in her office until she returned. 2. Do you want me to turn off the TV? *Alright*, if you insist.

all along: (= all the time, from the beginning (without change)) avvaldan; oldindan E.g. 1. She knew *all along* that we'd never agree with his plan. 2. You're smiling! Did you know *all along* that I'd give you a birthday present?

little by little : (= gradually, slowly, step by step) oz-ozdan; sekin asta; qadamma qadam E.g. 1. Karen's health seems to be improving *little by little*. 2. If you study regularly each day, *step by step* your vocabulary will increase.

to tire out; (= to make very weary due to difficult conditions or hard effort; to wear out) zo'riqtirmoq; qiynab qo'ymoq; qiyin vaziyatga solib qo'ymoq

E.g. 1. The hot weather *tired out* the runners in the marathon. 2. Does studying for final exams *wear you out*? It makes me feel *worn out*!

to call on: (to ask for a response from; to visit; to drop in on) savol so'rab murojaat qilmoq; yo'l yo'lakay kirib o'tmoq; kirib ketmoq E.g. 1. Jose didn't know the answer when the teacher *called on* him. 2. Last night several friends *called on* us at our home. 3. Why don't we *drop in on* Sally a little later?

never mind: (= don't be concerned about it; ignore what was just said) hechqisi yo'q; tashvishlanishga arzimaydi E.g. 1. When he spilled his drink on my coat, I said, "*Never mind*. It needs to be cleaned anyway." 2. So you weren't listening to me again. *Never mind*; it wasn't important. 3. Never mind your mistake. (Hatoyingizdan tashvishlanmang.)

EXERCISES

A. Choose the appropriate idiomatic expression to substitute for the italicized word or words in each sentence below. Idioms from previous sections are indicated by number.

1. Nan is *trying to find* the purse that she lost yesterday.

a. finding out	b. looking at	c. looking for
----------------	---------------	----------------

2. *As is typical*, Doug is late for the meeting.

a. At last	b. All along	c. As usual
------------	--------------	-------------

3. Were you able *to determine* what his occupation is?

a. to find out	b. to pick up (section 1)	c. to call on
----------------	---------------------------	---------------

4. I am *very weary* after all that physical exercise today.

a. turned off (section 1)	b. tired out	c. never mind
---------------------------	--------------	---------------

5. John's mother knew that he wasn't telling the truth *from the beginning*.

a. all along

b. all right

c. little by little

6. Some old friends of mine *visited* us last night.

a. called on

b. called up (section 1)

c. wore out

7. *Eventually*, Mario will be able to speak English better than he does now.

a. Never mind

b. Sooner or later

c. At last

8. Is it *acceptable* for Mary to borrow our car for a few hours?

a. right away (section 1)

b. all right

c. step by step

9. Would you please *give your attention to* me while I'm talking?

a. dress up

b. look at

c. wear out

10. They waited for forty-five minutes until *finally* the waiter brought their food.

a. at last

b. little by little

c. at first (section 1)

B. Fill in each blank with the appropriate form of an idiomatic expression from this unit only.

Bob: Jim, should we _____ for the party tonight?

Jim: No, informal clothes are fine I'm _____ my shoes. Have you seen them?

Bob: No. Did you check that closet by the front door?

Jim: Of course, I did! Gosh, my legs hurt. I'm really _____ from playing so much soccer today.

Bob: What did you say?

Jim: Oh, _____. It wasn't important.

Bob: Sorry, I'm _____ the TV news. It's about the robbery.

Jim: Have the police _____ who stole the million dollars?

Bob: No, they haven't.

Jim: _____ I've found my shoes! They were in that closet by the door _____!

Bob: I told you so!

SECTION 3

to pick out: (= to choose, to select) tanlamoq / saralamoq E.g. 1. Ann *picked out* a good book to give to her brother as a graduation gift. 2. Johnny, if you want me to buy you a toy, then *pick one out* now.

to take one's (my, his, your, etc.) time: (= to do without rush, not to hurry) shunchaki vaqtni o'tkazmoq; shosh(il)masdan harakat qilmoq

E.g. 1. There's no need to hurry doing those exercises. *Take your time*. 2. William never works rapidly. He always *takes his time* in everything that he does.

to talk over: (= to discuss or consider a situation with others) vaziyatni boshqalar bilan muhokama qilmoq; kelishmoq

E.g. 1. We *talked over* Carlo's plan to install an air conditioner in the room, but we couldn't reach a decision. 2. Before I accepted the new job offer, I *talked the matter over* with my wife.

to lie down: (= to place oneself in a flat position, to recline) yotmoq

E.g. 1. If you are tired, why don't you *lie down* for an hour or so? 2. The doctor says that Grace must *lie down* and rest for a short time every afternoon.

to stand up: (= to rise from a sitting or lying position (also: to get up) o'rindan turmoq E.g. 1. When the president entered the room, everyone *stood up*. 2. Suzy, stop rolling around on the floor; *get up* now.

to sit down: (= to be seated; to take a seat) o'tirmoq E.g. 1. We *sat down* on the park bench and watched the children play. 2. There aren't any more chairs, but you can *take a seat* on the floor.

all (day, week, month, year) long: (= the entire day, week, month, year) butun kun (hafta, oy, yil) davomida E.g. 1. I've been working on my income tax forms *all day long*. I've hardly had time to eat. 2. It's been raining *all week long*. We haven't seen the sun since last Monday.

by oneself: (= alone, without assistance) hech kimning ko'magisiz (yordamisiz) E.g. 1. Francis translated that French novel *by himself*. No one helped him. 2. Paula likes to walk through the woods *by herself*, but her brother prefers to walk with a companion.

on purpose: (= for a reason, deliberately) ataylab; ma'lum bir maqsadda

Bu ibora biror kishi bir ishni atayin, bir maqsadni ko'zlab noto'g'ri yoki nohaqlik bilan amalgam oshirganda ishlatiladi. E.g. 1. Do you think that she didn't come to the meeting *on purpose*? 2. It was no accident that he broke my glasses. He did it *on purpose*.

to get along with someone (something): (= to associate or work well with; to succeed or manage in doing; to get on with someone or something) biror kishi bilan yahshi munosabat o'rnatmoq; kirishib ketmoq E.g. 1. Terry isn't *getting along with* her new roommate; they argue constantly. 2. How are you *getting on with* your studies?

to make a difference (to someone): (= to be of importance (to), to affect) ahamiyati bor bo'lmoq; farqi bor bo'lmoq

Bu ibora biror hodisa yoki narsaning muhimlik darajasiga e'tibor qaratilganda ishlatiladi. E.g. 1. *It makes a big difference to me whether he likes the food I serve.* 2. Does it *make any difference to* you where we go for dinner? 3. No, it doesn't *make any difference.* 4. *It makes no difference to* Lisa either.

to take out : (= to remove, to extract; to go on a date with) (also: **to go out with**) tashqariga olmoq / olib chiqmoq

E.g. 1. Students, *take out* your books and open them to page twelve. 2. Did you *take Sue out* last night? 3. No, she couldn't *go out with* me.

EXERCISES

A. Choose the appropriate idiomatic expression to substitute for the italicized word or words in each sentence below.

1. I think that you should *remove* the last two sentences in the paragraph.

a. take out	b. pick out	c. talk over
-------------	-------------	--------------

2. If you *don't hurry* in completing your schoolwork, you'll do a better job.

a. get off (section 1)	b. lie down	c. take your time
------------------------	-------------	-------------------

3. How are you *succeeding in* your new job?

a. getting on with	b. making a difference to	c. picking out
--------------------	---------------------------	----------------

4. I don't like to go to the movies *alone*.

a. as usual (section 2)

b. by myself

c. on purpose

5. Do you have a moment to *try to find* my keys with me?

a. to talk over

b. to look for (section 2)

c. to get up

6. The child said that she *didn't break* the window *deliberately*.

a. on purpose

b. all day long

c. making a difference

7. Did you *go on a date with* your new girlfriend again today?

a. get along with

b. stand up

c. go out with

8. It's cold outside; you'd better *place a sweater on yourself*.

a. sit down

b. put on (section 1)

c. take out

9. Fortunately, Marie is *associating well with* her new co-workers.

a. calling on (section 2)

b. talking over

c. getting along with

10. Don't sit on the dirty ground like that; *rise right now!*

a. get up

b. lie down

c. sit down

B. Fill in each blank with the appropriate form of an idiomatic expression from this unit only.

Jean: Hi, Pete. Did you come _____?

Pete: Yes, Sarah wasn't able to come. She's at the dentist's office.

Jean: Oh? Why is that?

Pete: The dentist has to _____ one of her teeth. She has been complaining of pain _____ week _____.

Jean: That's too bad. Well, I'm glad you're early.

Pete: Why? I didn't come early _____.

Jean: I know, but now we have time to _____ that important matter about the new employee.

Pete: You mean the employee who's not _____ her co-workers?

Jean: Exactly. But please, take off your coat first and _____ on the couch.

Pete: Thanks.

SECTION 4

to take part in: (= to be involved in, to participate in; **to be in on**) qatnashmoq, ishtirok etmoq E.g. 1. Martin was sick and could not *take part in* the meeting yesterday. 2. I didn't want to *be in on* their argument, so I remained silent.

at all : (= to any degree; in the least) umuman; mutlaqo E.g. 1. Larry isn't *at all* shy about expressing his opinions. 2. When I asked Donna whether she was tired, she said, "Not *in the least*. I'm full of energy."

to look up: (= to locate information in a directory, dictionary, book, etc.) qarab olmoq (ma'lumotnomaga, lug'otga, ...) E.g. 1. Ellen suggested that we *look up* Lee's telephone number in the directory. 2. Students should try to understand the meaning of a new word from context before *looking* the word *up* in the dictionary.

to wait on someone: (= to serve in a store or restaurant) biror kishini kutib olmoq va unga hizmat ko'rsatmoq E.g. 1. A very pleasant young clerk *waited on* me in that shop. 2. The restaurant waitress asked us, "Has anyone *waited on* you yet?"

at least : (= a minimum of, no fewer (or less) than) hech bo'lmaganda, kamida E.g. 1. I spend *at least* two hours every night on my studies. 2. Mike claims that he drinks *at least* a quart of water every day.

so far: (until now, until the present time; up to now, as of yet) shu paytgacha, hozirga qadar

Bu ibora odatda tugallangan hozirgi (present perfect) zamonda ishlatiladi.

E.g. 1. *So far*, this year has been excellent for business. I hope that the good luck continues. 2. How many idioms have we studied in this book *up to now*? 3. *As of yet*, we have not had an answer from him.

to take a walk, stroll, hike, etc.: (= to go for a walk, stroll, hike, etc)

A *stroll sekin asta, ohista odimlash*, a *hike* jiddiy, qat'iy qadam tashlashni anglatadi. E.g. 1. Last evening we *took a walk* around the park. 2. It's a fine day. Would you like to *take a stroll* along Mason Boulevard? 3. Let's *take a hike* up Cowles Mountain this afternoon.

to take a trip (to): (= to go on a journey, to travel) sayr (sayohat) qilmoq

E.g. 1. I'm so busy at work that I have no time to *take a trip*. 2. During the summer holidays, the Thompsons *took a trip* to Europe.

to try on: (= to wear clothes to check the style or fit before buying) kiyib ko'rmoq (biror kiyimni sotib olishdan oldin uslubi va o'lehamining mos kelishini tekshirib olish uchun) E.g. 1. He *tried on* several suits before he picked out a blue one. 2. Why don't you *try* these shoes *on* next?

to think over: (= to consider carefully before deciding) o'ylab ko'rmoq, mushohada qilib ko'rmoq (biror to'htamga yoki qarorga kelishdan oldin) E.g. 1. I'd like to *think over* your offer first. Then can we talk it over tomorrow? 2. You don't have to give me your decision now. *Think* it over for a while.

to take place: (= to occur, to happen according to plan) sodir bo'lmoq; ro'y bermoq; bo'lib o'tmoq E.g. 1. The regular meetings of the committee *take place* in Constitution Hall. 2. I thought that the celebration was *taking place* at John's house.

to put away: (= to remove from sight, to put in the proper place) chetga / bir chekkaga olib qo'yimoq (biror buyumni) E.g. 1. Please *put away* your papers before you open the test booklet. 2. John *put* the notepad *away* in his desk when he was finished with it.

EXERCISES

A. Choose the appropriate idiomatic expression to substitute for the italicized word or words in each sentence below.

1. You'll have to *locate* his number in the telephone book.

a. to think over	b. to wait on	c. to look up
------------------	---------------	---------------

2. Let's go *on a serious walk* in the mountains this weekend.

a. take a hike	b. take a trip	c. take a stroll
----------------	----------------	------------------

3. You ought to spend *a minimum of* an hour outside in the fresh air.

a. in the least	b. as usual (section 2)	c. at least
-----------------	-------------------------	-------------

4. Would you like me to help you *choose* a new dress for the dance?

a. pick out (section 3)	b. try on	c. put away
-------------------------	-----------	-------------

5. I've always wanted to *journey* to Alaska during the summer.

a. to take a walk

b. to take a trip

c. to take a stroll

6. It took a long time for the store clerk to *serve* us.

a. to call on (section 2)

b. to take part in

c. to wait on

7. I don't enjoy this hot, humid weather to *any degree*.

a. at all

b. up to now

c. at last (section 2)

8. Our guest will arrive soon; please *remove* your dirty clothes from *sight*.

a. try on

b. put away

c. get off (section 1)

9. I'd better *switch on* the light so that we can see better in here.

a. be in on

b. turn on (section 1)

c. try on

10. James didn't want to *be involved in* the preparations for the conference.

a. to take part in

b. to take place

c. to try on

B. Fill in each blank with the appropriate form of an idiomatic expression from this unit only.

Mara:	Where's the store clerk?
Ted:	I don't know. It's taking him too long to _____ us.
Mara:	I don't like the service in this store _____. I feel like leaving right now.
Ted:	Oh, no, let's not do that. How many dresses have you tried on _____?
Mara:	Oh, I've tried on about eight dresses.
Ted:	Well, after all that time and effort, you should buy _____ one, don't you think?
Mara:	No, never mind. I'm so upset that I need to _____ outside in the fresh air.
Ted:	Mara, I think that you're making the wrong decision. You should _____ it _____ first. This is really a nice dress at a great price.
Mara:	Well ... I guess a few more minutes of waiting won't make a difference.

SECTION 5

to look out: (= to be careful or cautious; to watch out) hushyor bo'lmoq, ehtiyot bo'lmoq,... Ikkala ibora ham gapda *for* predlogi bilan ishlatiladi.

E.g. 1. "Look out!" Jeffrey cried as his friend almost stepped in a big hole in the ground. 2. Look out for reckless drivers whenever you cross the street. 3. Small children should always watch out for strangers offering candy.

to shake hands: (= to exchange greetings by clasping hands) qo'l berib so'rashmoq, salomlashmoq E.g. 1. When people meet for the first time, they usually shake hands. 2. The student warmly shook hands with his old professor.

to get back: (= to return) qaytmoq, qaytib kelmoq E.g. 1. Mr. Harris got back from his business trip to Chicago this morning. 2. Could you get the children back home by five o'clock?

to catch cold: (= to become sick with a cold of the nose or throat) shamollab qolmoq E.g. 1. If you go out in this rain, you will surely catch cold. 2. How did she ever catch cold in such warm weather?

to get over: (= to recover from an illness; to accept a loss or sorrow) sog'aymoq; o'ziga kelmoq E.g. 1. It took me over a month to get over my cold, but I'm finally well now. 2. It seems that Mr. Mason will never get over the death of his wife.

to make up one's (my, his, your, etc.) mind: (= to reach a decision, to decide finally) so'ngi qarorga kelmoq, bir to'htamga kelmoq E.g. 1. Sally is considering several colleges to attend, but she hasn't made up her mind yet. 2. When are you going to make up your mind about your vacation plans?

to change one's (my, his, your, etc.) mind: (= to alter one's decision or opinion) fikrdan qaytmoq, fikrni o'zgartmoq E.g. 1. We have changed our minds and are going to Canada instead of California this summer. 2. Matthew has changed his mind several times about buying a new car.

for the time being: (= temporarily; for now) hozircha, vaqtincha E.g. 1. For the time being, Janet is working as a waitress, but she really hopes to become an actress soon. 2. We're living in an apartment for now, but soon we'll be looking for a house to buy.

for good: (= permanently, forever) bitinlay, doimiy E.g. 1. Ruth has returned to Canada *for good*. She won't ever live in the United States again. 2. Are you finished with school *for good*, or will you continue your studies some day?

to call off: (= to cancel) bekor qilmoq (ushrashuvni, oyinni, majlisni, ...)
E.g. 1. The referee *called off* the soccer game because of the darkness. 2. The president *called the meeting off* because she had to leave town.

to put off: (= to postpone) kechiktirmoq, kiyinroqqa qoldirmoq, muddatni keyinroqqa belgilamoq E.g. 1. Many students *put off* doing their assignments until the last minute. 2. Let's *put the party off* until next weekend, okay?

(to be) **in a hurry:** (= hurried, rushed; in a rush) shoshilinch vaziyatda bo'lmoq, shoshilib qolmoq E.g. 1. Alex seems *in a hurry*; he must be late for his train again. 2. She's always *in a rush* in the morning to get the kids to school.

EXERCISES

A. Choose the appropriate idiomatic expression to substitute for the italicized word or words in each sentence below.

1. Will you *return* in time for dinner or will you be home late tonight?

a. put off	b. get back	c. take place (section 4)
------------	-------------	---------------------------

2. It took me a long time *to recover from* the sadness of losing my girlfriend.

a. to get over	b. to look out	c. to change my mind
----------------	----------------	----------------------

3. Do you think it's too early *to telephone* Cindy this morning?

a. to call off	b. to call on (section 2)	c. to call up (section 1)
----------------	---------------------------	---------------------------

4. James dislikes his smoking habit so much that he wants to quit *forever*.

a. for the time being	b. for good	c. in a hurry
-----------------------	-------------	---------------

5. At the last moment, Judy *altered her decision* about getting married so quickly.

a. changed her mind	b. made up her mind	c. never mind (section 2)
---------------------	---------------------	---------------------------

6. Judy wanted *to postpone* the wedding for another two or three months.

a. to call off	b. to put off	c. to turn off (section 1)
----------------	---------------	----------------------------

7. I'd like you to *remove* those toys from sight before they get broken.

a. to put away

b. to take out (section 3)

c. to look out

8. If you don't wear a sweater in this cold weather, you'll *become sick*.

a. get over

b. catch cold

c. tire out (section 2)

9. I still have a lot of work to do, but I feel like stopping *temporarily*.

a. in a hurry

b. to shake hands

c. for now

10. If you don't *be careful*, you'll cut your hands on that sharp knife.

a. look up (section 4)

b. watch out

c. make up your mind

B. Fill in each blank with the appropriate form of an idiomatic expression from this unit only.

Todd:	Mark! I was wondering when you would _____ home!
Mark:	Hi, Todd. I'm sorry, but I had a late meeting today.
Todd:	Usually you leave a note in the morning when you'll be late.
Mark:	I know, but I had to leave _____ to catch the bus to work I almost missed it.
Todd:	Say, what do you think? Should I go to a movie tonight with Sheila and Dick, or shouldn't I? I need to _____ soon.
Mark:	What do you mean? You haven't _____ your cold yet, have you?
Todd:	No, I haven't, but I feel much better.
Mark:	I think that you feel better _____ only because you stayed home all day.
Todd:	I guess you're right. Do you think that I should _____ going with them until another time?
Mark:	That would be my advice.

SECTION 6

under the weather: (= not feeling well, sick) yomon / kasal his qilmoq

E.g. 1. John stayed home from work because he was feeling *under the weather*. 2. When you catch cold, you feel *under the weather*.

to hang up: (= to place clothes on a hook or hanger, to replace the receiver on the phone at the end of a conversation) ilib qo'ymoq (kiyimni ilgakka, telefon go'shagini qosqonga, ...) E.g. 1. Would you like me to *hang up* your coat for you in the closet? 2. The operator told me to *hang the phone up* and call the number again.

to count on: (= to trust someone in time of need; **to depend on**) kimningdir zarur paytda yordam berishi mumkinligini hisobga olmoq, kimningdir ko'magiga tayanmoq E.g. 1. I can *count on* my parents to help me in an emergency. 2. Don't *depend on* Frank to lend you any money; he doesn't have any.

to make friends (with): (= to become friendly with others) do'st tutinmoq, do'st ortirmoq E.g. 1. Patricia is a shy girl and doesn't *make friends easily*. 2. During the cruise Ronald *made friends with* almost everyone on the ship.

out of order: (= not in working condition) nosoz holatda, ishlamaydigan (ishga yaroqsiz) holatda E.g. 1. The elevator was *out of order*, so we had to walk to the tenth floor of the building. 2. We couldn't use the soft drink machine because it was *out of order*.

to get to: (= to be able to do something special; to arrive at a place, such as home, work, etc.) yetib bormoq, yetib kelmoq (uyga, ishga, ...) E.g. 1. The children *got to* stay up late and watch a good movie for the family. 2. I missed the bus and couldn't *get to* the office until ten o'clock. 3. When are you planning to *get home* tonight?

few and far between: (= not frequent, unusual, rare) har zamonda, goh-gohida, kamdan-kam hollarda E.g. 1. The times that our children get to stay up late are *few and far between*. 2. Airplane travel is very safe because accidents are *few and far between*.

to look over: (= to examine, to inspect closely; **to go over, to read over, to check over**) yaxshilab tekshirmoq; qaytadan ko'rib chiqmoq E.g. 1. I want to *look* my homework *over* again before I give it to the teacher. 2. The politician *went over* his speech before the important presentation. 3. You should never sign any legal paper without *checking it over* first.

to have (time) off: (= to have free time, not to have to work; **to take time off**) bo'sh vaqti bo'lmoq; ish qilnimaydigan vaqtda bo'lmoq E.g. 1. Every morning the company workers *have time off* for a coffee break. 2. Several workers *took the afternoon off* to go to a baseball game.

to go on: (= to happen; to resume, to continue; **to keep on**) davom etmoq; sodir bo'lmoq E.g. 1. Many people gathered near the accident to see what was *going on*. 2. I didn't mean to interrupt you. Please *go on*. 3. The speaker *kept on* talking even though most of the audience had left.

to put out: (= to extinguish, to cause to stop functioning) o'chirmoq E.g. 1. No smoking is allowed in here. Please *put out* your cigarette. 2. The fire fighters worked hard to *put* the brush fire *out*. 3. Please *put out* the light before you leave. Okay, I'll *put it out*.

all of a sudden: (= suddenly, without warning; **all at once**) birdan, to'sattan, ogohlantirmasdan E.g. 1. *All of a sudden* Ed appeared at the door. We weren't expecting him to *drop by*. 2. *All at once* Millie got up and left the house without any explanation.

EXERCISES

A. Choose the appropriate idiomatic expression to substitute for the italicized word or words in each sentence below.

1. The businessman *inspected* the contract *carefully* before signing it.

a. looked over

b. looked out (section 5)

c. counted on

2. What's *happening*, John? The smoke alarm is ringing but there's no fire!

a. putting out

b. going on

c. hanging up

3. The dark clouds rolled in quickly and it began to rain *without warning*.

a. all along (section 2)

b. out of order

c. all of a sudden

4. When do you think that we'll *arrive at* the hotel this evening?

a. get on (section 1)	b. go on	c. get to
-----------------------	----------	-----------

5. I'm busy this week, but I hope to *have time free* next week.

a. to take my time	b. to have time off	c. to check over
--------------------	---------------------	------------------

6. *Gradually* I'm learning how to play tennis, thanks to my kind instructor.

a. Little by little	b. All at once	c. Few and far between
---------------------	----------------	------------------------

7. It's nice to know that I can *trust* you to help me when I need it.

a. count on	b. check over	c. make friends
-------------	---------------	-----------------

8. The phone is making noise because you forgot to *replace* the receiver.

a. to go over	b. to take place (section 4)	c. to hang up
---------------	------------------------------	---------------

9. He's so careful when he plays sports that injuries are *unusual* for him.

a. under the weather	b. few and far between	c. out of order
----------------------	------------------------	-----------------

10. The students were happy because they *were able to* leave class early.

a. took time off to	b. went on	c. got to
---------------------	------------	-----------

B. Fill in each blank with the appropriate form of an idiomatic expression from this unit only.

Tina:	What's wrong, Matt? You look _____.
Matt:	I know. I don't feel well.
Tina:	You looked fine an hour ago. It must have happened _____.
Matt:	It did. I was talking to Mike on the phone, and after I _____ the receiver, it hit me.
Tina:	Wow. Do you think that you can still _____ my paper for me later? You're good at finding my mistakes.
Matt:	Of course, Tina. You can _____ me to do that for you. First, though, I'd like to lie down.
Tina:	Okay. Would you like me to _____ the light?
Matt:	Thanks. I'll be fine in a while.

SECTION 7

to point out: (= to show, to indicate, to bring to one's attention) ko'rsatib o'tmoq, kimningdir e'tiborini biror narsaga qaratmoq E.g. 1. What important buildings did the tour guide *point out* to you? 2. The teacher *pointed out* the mistakes in my composition. 3. A friend *pointed* the famous actor *out* to me.

to be up: (= to expire, to be finished) Bu ibora faqat *time* so'zi gapda ega vazifasida kelganida ishlatiladi. E.g. 1. "The time *is up*," the teacher said at the end of the test period. 2. We have to leave the tennis court because our hour *is up*; some other people want to use it now.

to be over: (= to be finished, to end; **to be through**) tamom bo'lmoq, nihoyasiga yetmoq E.g. 1. After the dance *was over*, we all went to a restaurant. 2. The meeting *was through* ten minutes earlier than everyone expected.

on time: (= exactly at the correct time, punctually) aniq belgilangan / kelishilgan vaqtda E.g. 1. I thought that Margaret would arrive late, but she *was right on time*. 2. Did you get to work *on time* this morning, or did rush hour traffic delay you?

in time to (do something): (= before the time necessary to do something) vaqtida (biror ishni bajarishga ulgurishga) E.g. 1. We entered the theater just *in time to see* the beginning of the movie. 2. The truck was not able to stop *in time to prevent* an accident.

to get better (worse, etc.): (= to become better, worse, etc.) sog'aymoq, yaxshilanmoq E.g. 1. Heather has been sick for a month, but now she is *getting better*. 2. This medicine isn't helping me. Instead of *getting better*, I'm *getting worse*.

to get sick (well, tired, busy, wet, etc.): (= to become sick, well, tired, busy, wet, etc.) kasal bo'lib (charchab, ho'l bo'lib, band bo'lib) qolmoq E.g. 1. Gerald *got sick* last week and has been in bed since that time. 2. Every afternoon I *get* very *hungry*, so I eat a snack.

had better (do something): (= should, ought to, be advisable to) ma'qul bo'lmoq; yaxshi bo'lmoq E.g. 1. *I'd better* take a taxi. 2. I think *you'd better speak*

to Mr. White right away about this matter. 3. The doctor told the patient that *he'd better go home and rest.*

would rather (do something): (= prefer to; **would just as soon (do something) as (do something else)**) ma'qul ko'rmoq, afzal ko'rmoq

E.g. 1. *Would you rather have* the appointment this Friday or next Monday? 2. *I would just as soon go* for a walk *as watch* TV right now.

to call it a day/night: (= to stop working for the rest of the day/ night) biror ishni bir kundan (bir oqshomdan) keyinga qoldirmoq

E.g. 1. Herb tried to repair his car engine all morning before he *called it a day* and went fishing. 2. We've been working hard on this project all evening; let's *call it a night.*

to figure out: (= to solve, to find a solution; to understand) yechimini topmoq, anglamoq E.g. 1. How long did it take you *to figure out* the answer to the math problem? 2. I was never able *to figure it out.*

to think of: (= to have a (good or bad) opinion of) biror fikrda bo'lmoq
Bu ibora odatda bo'lishsiz gaplarda yoki *much* va *highly* sifatлари bilan ishlatiladi.
E.g. 1. I don't *think much of* him as a baseball player; he's a slow runner and a poor hitter. 2. James *thinks highly of* his new boss, who is a kind and helpful person.

EXERCISES

A. Choose the appropriate idiomatic expression to substitute for the italicized word or words in each sentence below.

1. We *were able to* visit the zoo when the animals were very active.

a. would rather	b. had better	c. got to (section 6)
-----------------	---------------	-----------------------

2. All of this work in the garden has tired me out; let's *stop working.*

a. be over	b. call it a day	c. be up
------------	------------------	----------

3. I can't *understand* Professor Jones at all; he's a very good teacher, but sometimes he talks foolishly.

a. figure out	b. make up my mind about (section 5)	c. point out
---------------	--------------------------------------	--------------

4. I *prefer to* eat in tonight than to eat out; what do you think?

a. would rather	b. had better	c. so far (section 4)
-----------------	---------------	-----------------------

5. The police officer put a parking ticket on the car because the time on the meter *had expired*.

a. was over	b. was not on time	c. was up
-------------	--------------------	-----------

6. I don't *have a good opinion* of our new neighbors; they're not very friendly.

a. make friends with (section 6)	b. get better with	c. think much of
----------------------------------	--------------------	------------------

7. This problem is too difficult for me *to solve* by myself.

a. to point out	b. to be over	c. to figure out
-----------------	---------------	------------------

8. We were late to the party, but we got there *before the time to eat* dinner.

a. to wait on	b. in time to	c. on time
---------------	---------------	------------

9. Jan couldn't wait for the meeting *to end* so that she could go home.

a. to call off (section 5)	b. to be through	c. to get worse
----------------------------	------------------	-----------------

10. It was supposed to be a surprise, but Larry knew about the birthday party *from the beginning*.

a. all along (section 2)	b. on time	c. to call it a night
--------------------------	------------	-----------------------

B. Fill in each blank with the appropriate form of an idiomatic expression from this unit only.

Sue:	Kay, if we're going to get to a movie _____ find good seats, we _____ hurry to decide what to see.
Kay:	But we can't agree on the two possibilities!
Sue:	I know. I want to see the old Humphrey Bogart film, but you _____ see the movie with the famous actor Guy Matson in it.
Kay:	I can't _____ your taste in men, Sue. All the women that I know just love Guy Matson!
Sue:	Kay, let me _____ again that I'm not a typical American woman. My mother is German, you know.
Kay:	You like to remind me of that, don't you! Anyway, I don't _____ much _____ old movies, so forget about Humphrey Bogart.
Sue:	Okay, okay! Let's go down to the car and make up our minds while driving.
Kay:	Good idea!

SECTION 8

to be about to do something: (= to be at the moment of doing something, to be ready.) biror ishni bajarishga shaylanib turmoq E.g. 1. I *was just about to leave* when you telephoned. 2. Oh, hi, John. *We're just about to eat dinner.*

to turn around: (= to move or face in the opposite direction; to completely change the condition of) burmoq, yo'nalishni boshqa tarafga burmoq, oldi tarfini orqaga qaratmoq E.g. 1. The man *turned* his car *around* and drove back the way he came. 2. The company has been very successful since the new business manager was able to *turn it around.*

to take turns (doing something): (= to alternate, to change people while doing something) biror ishni bajarish jarayonida o'rin almashmoq; navbatma navbat ish bajarmoq E.g. 1. During the trip, Darlene and I *took turns driving* so that neither of us would tire out. 2. I have to make sure that my two sons *take turns playing* the video game.

to pay attention (to): (= to look at and listen to someone while they are speaking, to concentrate) e'tibor bermok / qaratmoq; diqqat bilan tinglab kuzatmoq E.g. 1. Please *pay attention to* me while I'm speaking to you! 2. You'll have to *pay more attention* in class if you want to get a good grade.

to brush up on something: (= to review something in order to refresh one's memory) xotirani yangilab olish maqsadida biror narsani qayta ko'rib chiqmoq E.g. 1. Before I traveled to Mexico, I *brushed up on* my Spanish; I haven't practiced it since high school. 2. In order to take that advanced mathematics class, Sidney will have to *brush up on* his algebra.

over and over (again): (= repeatedly; time after time, time and again) qayta-qayta, takror-takror E.g. 1. The actress studied her lines in the movie *over and over* until she knew them well. 2. Children have difficulty remembering rules, so it's often necessary to repeat them *over and over again.* 3. *Time and again* I have to remind Bobby to put on his seatbelt in the car.

to wear out: (= to use something until it has no value or worth anymore, to make useless through wear) biror narsadan toki u hech narsaga arzmaydigan darajaga kelib qolguncha foydalanmoq; po'stagi chiqquncha ishlatmoq E.g. 1. When I *wear out* these shoes, I'll have to buy some that last longer. 2. What do you do with your clothes after you *wear them out*?

to throw away: (= to discard, to dispose of) tashlab yubormoq E.g. 1. I generally *throw away* my clothes when I wear them out. 2. Don't *throw* the magazines *away*; I haven't read them yet.

to fall in love: (= to begin to love) sevib qolmoq, oshiq bo'lib qolmoq E.g. 1. Ben and Sal *fell in love* in high school, and got married after graduation. 2. Have you ever *fallen in love at first sight*?

to go out: (= to stop functioning; to stop burning; to leave home or work: to step out) ochib qolmoq, to'htab qolmoq, oydan chiqmoq E.g. 1. The lights *went out* all over the city because of an electrical problem. 2. The campers didn't have to put out the fire because it *went out* by itself. 3. Gary isn't here right now; he *went out* to the store for a moment. 4. I have to *step out of* the office briefly to pick up a newspaper.

out of the question : (= impossible, not feasible) mumkin bo'lmagan / iloji yo'q narsa; u haqida gap ham bo'lishi mumkin emas E.g. 1. Stephen told Deborah that it was *out of the question* for her to borrow his new car. 2. Don't expect me to do that again. It's *absolutely out of the question*.

to have to do with: (= to have some connection with or relationship to) hech qanday aloqasi yo'q yoki biror aloqadorlik tomoni bor bo'lmoq E.g. 1. Ralph insisted that he had *nothing to do with* breaking the window. 2. What does your suggestion *have to do with* our problem?

EXERCISES

A. Choose the appropriate idiomatic expression to substitute for the italicized word or words in each sentence below.

1. Don't *discard* those old cardboard boxes; Jim can use them for packing his things when he moves to a new apartment.

a. put away (section 4)	b. throw away	c. wear out
-------------------------	---------------	-------------

2. If you had *concentrated on* what I said, I wouldn't have to repeat myself.

a. paid attention to	b. had to do with	c. turned around
----------------------	-------------------	------------------

3. I plan to stay in school *temporarily* and take more coursework.

a. out of the question	b. over and over again	c. for the time being
------------------------	------------------------	-----------------------

4. How do our children *make* their pants *useless* in such a short time?

a. take turns	b. dress up (section 2)	c. wear out
---------------	-------------------------	-------------

5. Before George takes a college-level biology class, he should *review* his biology from high school.

a. brush up on	b. look over (section 6)	c. be about to
----------------	--------------------------	----------------

6. I liked that movie so much that I could watch it *repeatedly*.

a. out of the question	b. taking turns	c. over and over again
------------------------	-----------------	------------------------

7. Betty can't *understand* why she's having trouble with the engine of her car.

a. turn around	b. figure out (section 7)	c. step out
----------------	---------------------------	-------------

8. This message from Tom *has no connection with* plans for the party tonight.

a. is out of the question	b. doesn't fall in love with	c. has nothing to do with
---------------------------	------------------------------	---------------------------

9. Sally *was ready to* take a shower when the phone rang, so she answered it

a. was about to	b. took turns to	c. had better (section 7)
-----------------	------------------	---------------------------

10. I'm tired of working; let's *leave home* for a while and shop for groceries.

a. turn around	b. go out	c. call it a day (section 7)
----------------	-----------	------------------------------

B. Fill in each blank with the appropriate form of an idiomatic expression from this unit only.

Lee:	Jan, you've _____ these shoes completely. Why do you keep them?
-------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------

Jan:	Don't ask me again, Lee! I've told you _____ — they are my favorite pair.
Lee:	I know, I know. Every time we _____ somewhere, you wear them.
Jan:	It's terrible, isn't it? I know that I should _____ such bad-looking shoes, but they're so comfortable, I can't!
Lee:	What if I said that I would buy a new pair for you — would you discard them then?
Jan:	That's completely _____! This situation doesn't _____ money; it's connected to my feeling for the shoes.
Lee:	Feeling for the shoes! Is it possible that you have _____ with them?
Jan:	Yes, I guess I love them more than I love you!

SECTION 9

to wake up: (= to arise from sleep, to awaken) uyqudan uyg'onmoq

E.g. 1. Marge *woke up* this morning very early, but she did not *get up* until about ten o'clock. 2. My alarm clock *wakes me up* at the same time every day.

to be in charge (of something): (= to manage, to have responsibility for) mas'ul bolmoq; asosiy ish boshqaruvchi yoki yurituvchi bo'lmoq E.g. 1. Jane *is in charge* of the office while Mrs. Haig is on a business trip. 2. Who *is in charge* of arrangements for the dance next week?

as soon as: (= just after, when) darhol, o'sha zahoti, ... bilanoq

E.g. 1. *As soon as* it started to snow, the children ran outside with big smiles on their faces. 2. I'm busy now, but I'll meet you *as soon as* I've finished this work.

to get in touch with: (= to communicate with, to contact) aloqada bo'lmoq, aloqa ornatmoq E.g. 1. You can *get in touch with* him by calling the Burma Hotel. 2. I've been trying all morning *to get in touch with* Miss Peters, but her phone is always busy.

to have a good time: (= to enjoy oneself) vaqtini yaxshi / maroqli o'tkazmoq

E.g. 1. We all *had a good time* at the class reunion last night. 2. Did you *have a good time* at the park? I really enjoyed it

in no time: (= very quickly, rapidly) juda tez, bir zumda E.g. 1. Mac said that he'd be ready to leave *in no time*. 2. We thought that the meeting would take two hours, but it was over *in no time at all*.

to cut down on: (= to reduce, to lessen: **to cut back on**) qisqartmoq, kamaytirmoq E.g. 1. In order to lose weight, you have *to cut down on* your intake of sugar. 2. The doctor told me *to cut back on* exercise until my back injury heals.

quite a few : (= many) ko'plab, ko'pgina E.g. 1. *Quite a few* students were absent yesterday, in fact, more than half of them were not there. 2. We did not expect many people to attend the affair, but *quite a few of* our friends actually came.

used to: (= formerly did, had the habit of) o'tgan zamonda ma'lum bir muddat davomida sodir bolib turgan lekin hozirda to'htagan ish harakatini ifodalash uchun ishlatiladi E.g. 1. I *used to* live in New York, but I moved to California two years ago. - Men Nyu Yorkda yashardim, lekin ikki yil oldin Kaliforniyaga ko'chib kelganman. 2. Kim *used to* smoke cigarettes, but she stopped the habit last month. - Kim sigareta chekardi, lekin o'tgan hafta bu odatini tashlagan.

to be used : (= to be accustomed to) odatlanib qolmoq E.g. 1. He *is used to* this climate now, so the changes in temperature do not affect him much. 2. I *am used to* studying in the library, so it's difficult for me to study at home now.

to get used (to something): (= to become used to, to become adjusted to) moslashmoq (biror vaziyatga yoki holatga), odatlanmoq

E.g. 1. It took Yoshiko a long time *to get used to* the food that her American host family served her. 2. Mark can't seem *to get used to* wearing contact lenses, recently he's been wearing his glasses a lot.

back and forth : (= in a backward and forward motion) orqaga va oldinga yo'nalishda harakatlanmoq, tebranmoq e.g. 1. The restless lion kept pacing *back and forth* along the front of its cage. 2. Grandmother finds it relaxing to sit in her rocking chair and move *back and forth*.

EXERCISES

A. Choose the appropriate idiomatic expression to substitute for the italicized word or words in each sentence below.

1. When we finally decided to eat out, we got ready *rapidly*.

a. in no time

b. on time (section 7)

c. as soon as

2. Joe has never been able to *become adjusted to* getting up early in the morning.

a. used to

b. to be used to

c. to get used to

3. I have a lot of trouble breathing well when I run, so I guess that I should *reduce* smoking.

a. be in charge of

b. throw away (section 8)

c. cut down on

4. While I was reading in bed last night, the phone in the kitchen rang, so I had to *arise* to answer it.

a. to wake up

b. to get up (section 1)

c. to be used to

5. *Many people* at the beach were wearing jackets because the wind was cool.

a. Quite a few

b. As soon as

c. Few and far between

6. Would you *contact* the Jacksons and tell them that we've put off the garage sale?

a. get in touch with

b. be in charge of

c. have a good time

7. *When* my parents were ready to leave, we went out to dinner.

a. At first (section 1)

b. As soon as

c. All of a sudden

8. Jack *made* the engine of his car *useless* by forgetting to add oil to it regularly.

a. got worse (section 7)

b. used to

c. wore out (section 8)

9. The boat was moving *in backward and forward motion* because of the large waves on the ocean.

a. at least (section 4)

b. back and forth

c. on purpose (section 3)

10. Vera *had the habit to* bite her nails until they were very short, but now she's stopped doing that.

a. has been used to

b. used to

c. cut back on

B. Fill in each blank with the appropriate form of an idiomatic expression from this unit only.

Abe:	Zeke! It's already 8 A. M. It's time for you to _____.
Zeke:	What do you mean? It's the weekend, and I _____ sleeping until at least 10 A M. on Saturdays!
Abe:	Don't you remember? We're organizing a beach picnic for our sports club today.
Zeke:	Oh, I forgot about that. Just give me fifteen more minutes. I can be ready _____.
Abe:	Look, there's a lot to take to the beach and to set up, like the volleyball net. We need to do it together.
Zeke:	Can't you _____ the other students and tell them that the picnic will start later?
Abe:	Zeke, I can't call everybody. _____ people are planning to come.
Zeke:	Boy, why did you agree that we would _____ the picnic? It's too much responsibility.
Abe:	I didn't agree. You did!

SECTION 10

to make sure: to be sure, to ascertain (also: **to make certain (of)**) E.g. 1. Please *make sure* that you turn off the radio before you go out. 2. Could you *make certain of* the time? I don't want to miss that TV show.

now and then: occasionally, sometimes (also: **now and again, at times, from time to time, off and on, once in a while**) Both *now and then* and *once in a while* can be preceded by the adjective *every*. Another idiom with the same meaning and form is *every so often*. E.g. 1. I don't see him very often, but (*every*) *now and then* we arrange to have lunch together. 2. Gary gets a cold (*every*) *once in a while* even though he takes good care of himself. 3. *Every so often* my brother and I get together for a camping trip. 4. I like to sleep late in the morning *from time to time*.

to get rid of: to eliminate, to remove; to discard, to throw away E.g. 1. Jerry tried hard to *get rid of* the stain on his shirt, but he never succeeded. 2. The stain was so bad that Jerry finally had to *get rid of* his shirt.

every other (one): every second (one), alternate (ones) E.g. 1. I play tennis with my father *every other Saturday*, so I usually play twice a month. 2. There were twenty problems in the exercise, but the teacher told us only to do *every other one*. Actually, doing ten problems was difficult enough.

to go with: to match, to compare well in color or design; to date, to accompany (also: **to go out with**) For the first definition, adverbs such as *well* and *poorly* are often used. E.g. 1. That striped shirt *goes well with* the gray pants, but the pants go poorly with those leather shoes. 2. Eda *went with* Richard for about six months, but now she *is going out with* a new boyfriend.

first-rate: excellent, superb E.g. 1. The food served in that four-star restaurant is truly *first-rate*. 2. The Beverly Hills Hotel provides *first-rate* service to its guests.

to come from: to originate from

This idiom is commonly used in discussion of one's hometown, state, or country.

E.g. 1. What country in South America does she *come from*? She *comes from* Peru. 2. I just learned that he really *comes from* Florida, not Texas. 3. Where did this package *come from*? The mail carrier brought it.

to make good time: to travel a sufficient distance at a reasonable speed

The adjective *excellent* can also be used. E.g. 1. On our last trip, it rained the entire time, so we didn't *make good time*. 2. We *made excellent time* on our trip to Florida; it only took eighteen hours.

to mix up: to stir or shake well (S); to confuse, to bewilder (S)

For the second definition, the passive forms *to be mixed up* or *to get mixed up* are often used. E.g. 1. You should *mix up* the ingredients well before you put them in the pan. 2. The teacher's poor explanation really *mixed* the students *up*. 3. The students think it's their fault that they *are mixed up* so often.

to see about: to give attention or time to (also: **to attend to, to see to**) E.g. 1. Who is going to *see about* getting us a larger room for the meeting? 2. I'll *see to* arranging music for the wedding if you *attend to* the entertainment.

to make out: to do, to succeed, to progress E.g. 1. Charlie didn't *make out* very well on his final examinations. He may have to repeat one or more classes. 2. How did Rachelle *make out* on her acting audition in Hollywood yesterday?

by heart: by memorizing E.g. 1. He knows many passages from Shakespeare *by heart*. 2. Do you know all the idioms you have studied in this book *by heart*?

EXERCISES

A. Choose the appropriate idiomatic expression to substitute for the italicized word or words in each sentence below.

1. Jack has been too busy with his work *to date* anyone recently.

a. to see about	b. to make out	c. to go out with
-----------------	----------------	-------------------

2. The manager wanted her assistant *to ascertain* when the products would be delivered.

a. to make good time	b. to get rid of	c. to make sure
----------------------	------------------	-----------------

3. You should *stir* the milk and eggs before you add the butter.

a. cut down on (section 9)	b. mix up	c. come from
----------------------------	-----------	--------------

4. I was so nervous about giving the speech that I learned every word *by memorizing*.

a. by myself (section 3)	b. by heart	c. now and then
--------------------------	-------------	-----------------

5. The weather is so bad today that we should definitely *postpone* the picnic.

a. put off (section 5)	b. call off (section 5)	c. see about
------------------------	-------------------------	--------------

6. George never seems to study. How is he *progressing* in his coursework?

a. making out	b. coming from	c. looking over (section 6)
---------------	----------------	-----------------------------

7. The test instructions were so poorly written that the students *were confused* about what to do.

a. were attended to	b. paid attention	c. were mixed up
---------------------	-------------------	------------------

8. This yellow tie doesn't *match* your blue jacket at all.

a. go with

b. get rid of

c. come from

9. John enjoys going hiking with his friends. They take a hike together *every second* weekend.

a. every now and then

b. every other

c. all weekend long (section 3)

10. This tablecloth is too old to use anymore; would you mind if we *discard* it?

a. get rid of

b. come from

c. see to

B. Fill in each blank with the appropriate form of an idiomatic expression from this unit only.

Jean:	Hi, Helen. I really like your blouse. It _____ your eyes.
Helen:	Thanks, Jean, but haven't you seen it before? I've had it for years, and I was planning to _____ it!
Jean:	Oh, no, it still looks fine. Tell me, how are you _____ with your final class presentation? Are you still writing it?
Helen:	I'm all finished. Tomorrow I'm going to practice until I know it _____.
Jean:	Why don't you practice in front of me right now?
Helen:	May be later. Right now I'd like to _____ having dinner. I'm really hungry.
Jean:	Do you want to cook here, or eat out?
Helen:	Let's eat out. I just heard about a new Italian restaurant that is supposed to be _____.
Jean:	Sounds great. But it's almost 9 P.M.. When does it close?
Helen:	I think that Jim said 9:30. It's easy to _____ on city streets at night, so I'm sure we can get there in time.
Jean:	Let's go!

SELF-STUDY COURSE

To lesson – 1

DESCRIBING PEOPLE – CHARACTER

A. Intellectual ability

Ability:	intelligent / bright / clever / smart / shrewd / able / gifted / talented / brainy (colloquial)
Lacking ability:	stupid / foolish / half-witted / simple / silly / brainless / daft / dumb / dim

B. Attitudes towards life

Looking on either the bright or the black side of things: optimistic / pessimistic

Outward-looking or inward-looking: extroverted / introverted

Calm or not calm with regard to attitude to life: relaxed / tense

Practical, not dreamy in approach to life: sensitive / down-to-earth

C. Attitudes towards other people

enjoying other's company: sociable / gregarious

disagreeing with others: quarrelsome / argumentative

taking pleasure in other's pain: cruel / sadistic

relaxed in attitude to self and others: easy-going / even-tempered

not polite to others: impolite / rude / ill-mannered / discourteous

telling the truth to others: honest / trustworthy / reliable / sincere

unhappy if others have what one does not have oneself:

jealous / envious

D. One person's meat is another person's poison

Some characteristics can be either positive or negative depending on your point of view. The words in the right-hand column mean roughly the same as the word; in the left-hand column except that they have negative rather than positive connotations.

- determined → obstinate stubborn pig-headed
thrifty/ecumenical → miserly mean tight-fisted
self-assured → self-important arrogant full of oneself (colloquial)
assertive → aggressive bossy (colloquial)
original → peculiar weird eccentric odd
frank/direct/open → blunt abrupt brusque curt
broad-minded → unprincipled permissive
inquiring → inquisitive nosy (colloquial)
generous → extravagant
innocent → naive
ambitious → pushy (colloquial)

Ex. 1. Match these words with their opposites.

- | | |
|---------------|--------------|
| 1 clever | introverted |
| 2 extroverted | tight-fisted |
| 3 rude | courteous |
| 4 cruel | gregarious |
| 5 generous | kind-hearted |
| 6 unsociable | half-witted |

Ex. 2. Do you think that the speaker likes or dislikes the people s/he is talking about?

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1 Dick is very thrifty. | 5 Dick's quite bossy. |
| 2 Molly's usually frank. | 6 I find Dave self-important. |
| 3 Liz's quite broad-minded. | 7 Don't you think Jim's nosy? |
| 4 Sam can be aggressive. | 8 Jill is very original. |

Ex. 3. Reword the sentences above to give the opposite impression. **E.g:** *Dick is very stingy.*

Ex. 4. Can you complete each of these word forks?

.....
1 self-.....	2- tempered	3 -minded
.....

Ex. 5. Chose five or six adjectives from the opposite page which you think best describe either your own or a friend's character. How do you or your friend demonstrate these characteristics? **Example:** *sociable - I am sociable because I love being with other people.*

Ex. 6. Phrases and idioms for relationships

Jo and I get on well with each other. [have a good relationship]

Adrian and Liz don't see eye to eye. [often argue/disagree]

I've fallen out with my parents again. [had arguments]

Tony and Jane have broken up / split up. [ended their relationship]

George is having an affair with his boss. [a sexual relationship, usually secret]

Children should respect their elders. [adults/parents, etc.]

Let's try and make it up. [be friends again after a row]

She's my junior / I'm her senior / I'm senior to her, so she does what she's told.

(refers to

position length of service at work)

To lesson – 2 At home

A. Places in the home

You probably already know the names of most rooms and locations in a typical home. Here are some less common ones and what they are for.

utility room: usually just for washing machine, freezer, etc.

shed: small building separated from the house usually for storing garden tools

attic: room in the roof space of a house (could be lived in)

loft: space in the roof of a house usually used only for storage

cellar: room below ground level, no windows, used for storage

basement: room below ground level, windows, for living/working

landing: flat area at the top of a staircase

hall: open area as you come into a house

porch: covered area before an entrance-door

pantry or larder: large cupboard (usually big enough to walk into) for storing food

terrace or patio: paved area between house and garden for sitting and eating, etc.

study: a room for reading/writing/studying in

B. Small objects about the home

Ordinary, everyday objects are often difficult to name and are often not listed in dictionaries. Here is a just a sample of such words.



remote control



power-point
and plug



table-mat



coaster



corkscrew



tea-towel



washing-up
liquid



grater



ironing-board



dust-pan and brush



bin-liners



mop

C. Types of house/places people live

detached house: not joined to any other house

semi-detached house (informal: semi-): joined to one other house

terraced house: joined to several houses to form a row

cottage: small house in the country or in a village

bungalow: house with only one storey (no upstairs)

bedsit: bedroom and living room all in one

villa: large house with big gardens or a rented house in a holiday resort/ tourist area

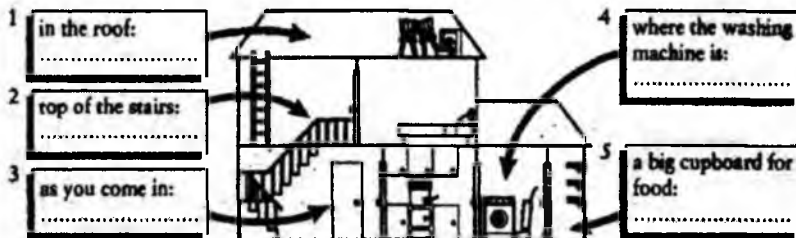
time-share: holiday flat or house where you have the right to live one or two weeks a year

Tip: If you visit an English-speaking country, go to a supermarket and look at the names of ordinary, everyday things for the home. This is often a good way of getting vocabulary that just does not appear in dictionaries.

Ex. 1. Where is a typical house you look for the following things?

1. a rake	4. a coat hunger	7. a power point	10. old empty boxes
2. cutlery	5. suitcases	8. a porch	
3. dental floss	6. a tumble dryer	9. a grater	

Ex. 2. Fill in the room and place labels on the plan of the house.



Ex. 3. Fill the gaps with a suitable word.

1. I've got a darkroom in the where I develop films. It's perfect because there are no windows down there.
2. Is there a where I can plug in this radio?
3. You'd better have a under your drink in case you mark that side-table. It's an antique.
4. The waste-bin's full again. I'll empty it. Are there any more? Where are they?
5. We keep our skis up in the during the summer. They're out of the way up there.
6. You'll find the garden-chairs in the at the bottom of the garden. Bring them up and we'll have a drink on the and watch the sunset.
7. The light-switch for the stairs is on the as you come out of your bedroom.
8. I've moved to a now as I found I couldn't manage the stairs any more at my age.

Ex. 4. Answer these questions about yourself and, if possible, find out how someone else would answer them.

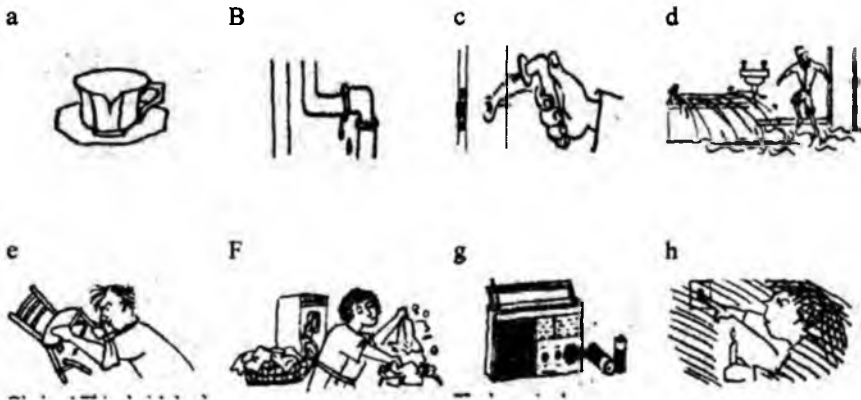
1. Is your house detached? What sort is it if not?
2. Are time-shares common in any part of your country?
3. Do houses still have pantries in your country?
4. Is it common to rent bedsits in your country? If so, what sorts of people do so?

Ex. 5. Everyday objects.

1. How can you make very small pieces of cheese to sprinkle on a dish?
2. What might you fetch if someone dropped a saucer and it broke into small pieces on the floor?
3. What could you put under a dinner plate to prevent it marking the table?
4. How can you switch off the TV without leaving your chair?

Ex. 6. Match the sentences with the pictures below.

1. The lights are not working there must be a power-cut.
2. Oh no! The bathroom's flooded! Get a mop quick!
3. The kitchen door-handle's come off.
4. The batteries have run out. I'll have to get some more.
5. The washing machine broke down the other day. I'll have to wash by hand.
6. Oh dear! This chair has broken. I wonder how that happened?
7. This pipe is leaking.
8. I am sorry, your cup's chipped.



To lesson – 3 What your body does?

This unit deals with some interesting words used to describe things your body does.

A. Verbs connected with the mouth and breathing

breathe: A nurse gave the old man the kiss of life and he started breathing again.

yawn: If one person yawns everyone else seems to start too.

cough: It was so smoky in the room that he couldn't stop coughing.

sneeze: Dust often makes me sneeze.

sigh: She sighed with relief when she heard his plane had landed safely.

hiccough: Some people say that drinking out of the wrong side of a cup can help to stop you hiccoughing. (Note: pronunciation = ['hɪkʌpɪŋ])

snore: She snored all night with her mouth wide open.

B. Verbs connected with eating and the digestion

burp: He patted the baby's back to make it burp after its feed.

chew: My granny used to say you should chew every mouthful ten times.

rumble: It's embarrassing if your stomach rumbles during an interview.

swallow: Take a drink of water to help you swallow the pills.

suck: You're too old to suck your thumb!

lick: After having a meal, the cat licked herself clean.

bite: He always bites his nails when he's nervous.

C. Verbs connected with the eyes and face

blink: She blinked several times to try and -not the dust out of her eye.

wink: He winked at me across the room to try and make me laugh.

frown: Why are you frowning? What's the problem?

grin: She was so delighted with the present that she grinned from ear to ear.

blush: He blushed with embarrassment when she smiled at him.

D. Verbs connected with the whole body

perspire / sweat: When it's hot you sweat/perspire. [perspire is more formal]

tremble: My hands tremble when I've been drinking too much coffee.

shiver: Look at him! He's so cold that he's shivering!

shake: She laughed so much that her whole body shook.

Ex. 1. Find the word to match the dictionary definitions given below.

E.g.: to draw the eyebrows together to express displeasure or puzzlement *to frown*

1 to go pink from embarrassment

2 to tremble especially from cold or fear

3 to hold something in the mouth and lick it, roll it about, squeeze it etc. with the tongue and teeth.

4 to shut and open both eyes quickly

5 to deliberately shut and open one eye

Ex. 2. Say what must be happening in each of the situations below.

E.g: (Parent to child) Take your thumb out of your mouth! *The child is sucking its thumb.*

1. Listen to that! I can't sleep in the same room as him.

2. Am I boring you?

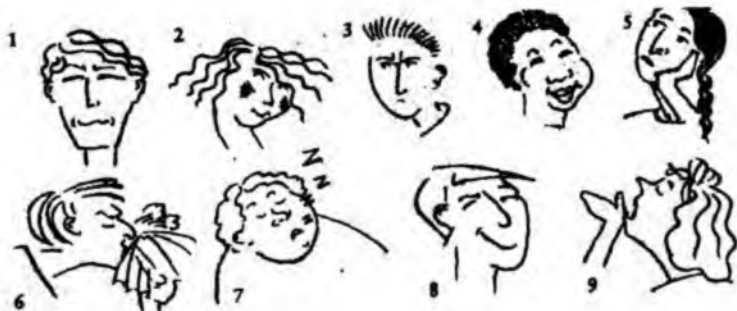
3. If you have a drink of water, it might stop!

4. I'd have a honey and lemon drinks if I were you!

5. Are you hungry?

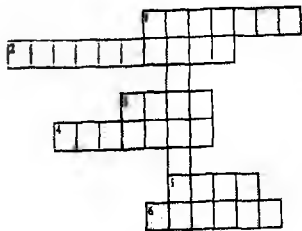
6. You shouldn't eat so much so quickly!

Ex. 3. Which of the words on the opposite page do these pictures illustrate?



Ex. 4. Complete the puzzle. If you answer correctly, the central letters going downwards will form a word from the left-hand page.

- 1 a special kind of gum
- 2 a more formal word for sweating
- 3 what you need to do to a stamp
- 4 try to do this quickly with pills
- 5 smile broadly
- 6 James Bond liked to have his drinks
not stirred.



To lesson – 4 Food

A.

Vegetables: cabbage potatoe broccoli spinach cucumber courgettes

(Am. Eng: zucchini) aubergines (Am. Eng: egg plants) leeks

meat: venison liver kidneys veal

fish: cod hake plaice whiting mackerel herring sardine trout salmon ['sæmən]

seafood: prawns shrimps crab lobster crayfish squid cockles mussels oysters

herbs: parsley rosemary thyme chives oregano tarragon sage

spices: curry cinnamon ginger nutmeg

B. Flavors and tastes - adjectives and some opposites

sweet + bitter [sharp/unpleasant] sour [e.g. unripe fruit] hot, spicy [e.g. curry] +
mild bland [rather negative] salty [a lot of salt] sugary [a lot of sugar] sickly [too
much sugar]

savory [pleasant, slightly salty or with herbs]

tasty [has a good taste/flavor] - tasteless [no flavor at all]

C. General appearance, presentation and quality

These chips are terribly greasy. (too much oil/fat)

This meat is over-cooked/overdone / under-cooked/underdone.

British cooking can be very stodgy. [heavy, hard to digest]

Mm, this chicken's done to a turn. [just perfect, not overdone]

These pistachio nuts are terribly more-ish. [informal; you want to eat more]

D. Courses and dishes – a typical menu

Dinner			
	Starters	Fish	
	<i>Prawn cocktail</i>	<i>Dover sole</i>	
courses	<i>Chilled melon</i>	<i>Grilled trout</i>	
	<i>Garlic mushrooms</i>	<i>Cod and cheese sauce</i>	
	Main course	Children's Portions	
	<i>Rumpsteak</i>	<i>Burger 'n' beans</i>	
dishes	<i>Pork chop</i>	<i>Fish fingers 'n' chips</i>	
	<i>Lamb casserole</i>	Desserts	
	<i>Chicken Kiev</i>	<i>Chocolate fudge cake</i>	
		<i>Ice cream (various)</i>	
		<i>Apple pie with cream</i>	
	Prices include vegetables, chips or	<i>Tea, coffee</i>	

E. Ways of cooking food



boil



Fry



bake



roast



grill

Shall I stew the beef? [boiled with vegetables in the same pot], or would you prefer it as a casserole? [similar, but in the oven]

These lamb chops would be nice barbecued. [done over hot coals, usually outdoors] Have you seasoned the stew? [added herbs/spices/salt/pepper]

Ex. 1. To learn long lists of words, it is sometimes helpful to divide them up into groups. Try dividing these vegetable names into groups, in any way you like, e.g. 'vegetables which grow underground' (potatoes, carrots etc.). If possible, compare your answers with someone else's. There are some words not given opposite.

aubergine	leek	cucumber	spinach	carrot	potato	cauliflower
green/red pepper		courgette	sweetcorn	lettuce	onion	rice
pea	cabbage	garlic	radish	bean	shallot	turnip
asparagus	beetroot	celery				

Ex. 2 Use the taste and flavor words opposite to describe the following.

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| 1 Indian curry | 5 a cup of tea with five spoonfuls of sugar |
| 2 pizza | 6 strong black coffee with no sugar |
| 3 sea water | 7 factory-made white bread |
| 4 an unripe apple | |

Ex. 3. Sort these dishes out under the headings starters, main courses or desserts.

chicken casserole / coffee gateau / fresh fruit salad / sorbet / Irish stew / pate and toast prawn cocktail / rump steak / chocolate fudge cake / grilled trout / shrimps in garlic

Ex.4. What might you say to the person/people with you in a restaurant if ...

- 1 your chips had too much oil/fat on them?
- 2 your dish had obviously been cooked too much/too long?
- 3 your piece of meat was absolutely perfectly cooked?
- 4 your dish seemed to have no flavor at all?

Ex. 5. How do you like the following foods prepared? Use words from D opposite and look up others if necessary. What do you like to put on the foods from the list in the box? *a leg of chicken / eggs / potatoes / cheese / sausages / a fillet of cod / prawns / mushrooms*

salt / pepper / vinegar / mustard / brown sauce / ketchup / salad-dressing / oil
mayonnaise / lemon juice

Ex. 6.

A. Which are *fish* and which are usually called *seafood*?

prawns / sardines / squid / oysters / mackerel / mussels / hake / crab / plaice / trout
/ lobster cod / sole / whiting

B. What do we call the *meat* of these animals?

calf / deer / sheep (two names) / pig (three names)

C. Which of these fruit grow in Uzbekistan? Are there others not listed here?

peach / plum / grapefruit / grape / nectarine / star-fruit / blackcurrant / raspberry /
melon lime / kiwi-fruit / mango

To lesson – 5 Seasons and weather

A. Cold weather

In Scandinavia, the **chilly** (1) days of autumn soon change to the cold days of winter. The first **frosts** (2) arrive and the roads become icy. Rain becomes **sleet** (3) and then snow, at first turning to **slush** (4) in the streets, but soon **settling** (5), with severe **blizzards** (6) and **snowdrifts** (7) in the far north. Freezing weather often continues in the far north until May or even June, when the ground starts to **thaw** (8) and the ice **melts** (9) again.

(1) cold, but not very (2) thin white coat of ice on everything (3) rain and snow mixed (4) dirty, brownish, half-snow, half-water (5) staying as a white covering (6) snow blown by high winds (7) deep banks of snow against walls, etc. (8) change from hard, frozen state to normal (9) change from solid to liquid under heat

B. Warm/hot weather

close [klaus] (warm and uncomfortable) **stifling** (hot, uncomfortable, you can hardly breathe) **humid** (hot and damp, makes you sweat a lot) **scorching** (very hot, often used in positive contexts) **boiling** (very hot, often used in negative contexts) **mild** (warm at a time when it is normally cold) *Note also:* We had a **heatwave** last month. (very hot, dry period)

C. Wet weather

This wet weather scale gets stronger from left to right. damp + drizzle + pour down / downpour -, torrential rain -, flood Autumn in London is usually chilly and damp with rain and drizzle. It was absolutely pouring down. *or* There was a real downpour. In the Tropics there is usually torrential rain most days, and the roads often get flooded. *or* There are floods on the roads. This rain won't last long; it's only a shower. (short duration) The storm damaged several houses. (high winds and rain together) We got very wet in the thunderstorm. (thunder and heavy rain) Hailstones were battering the roof of our car. [small balls of ice falling from the sky]. Note also hail (uncountable). The sky's a bit overcast; I think it's going to rain. (very cloudy) We had a drought /dram/ last summer.

D. Mist and fog

Nouns and adjectives: haze / hazy (light mist, usually caused by heat) mist / misty (light fog, often on the sea, or caused by drizzle) fog /foggy (quite thick, associated with cold weather) smog (mixture of fog and pollution (smoke + fog))

E. Wind

There was a gentle breeze on the beach, just enough to cool us. There's a good wind today; fancy going sailing? It's a very blustery day; the umbrella will just blow away. There's been a gale warning; it would be crazy to go sailing. People boarded up their windows when they heard there was a hurricane on the way.

Ex. 1. Match each word with a word from the box.

1. thunder 2. torrential 3. down 4. heat 5. hail 6. snow 7. gale

Ex. 2. Fill the gaps with words from the left-hand page.

My first experience of real winter weather was when I went to Northern Canada. I was used to the sort of snow that falls in London, which quickly turns into brown (1) with all the people walking on it. In fact, most of the time I was in London, it didn't really snow properly, it was mostly (2). Apart from that, British winters meant a bit of white (3) on my garden and occasionally having to drive very carefully on icy roads early in the morning. I had never experienced the (4) and (5) that can paralyze a whole city in less than an hour and close roads completely. However, when the earth finally (6) and all the snow (7) away in spring, everything comes to life again and looks more beautiful than ever.

Ex. 3. What kinds of weather do you think caused the following to happen? Write a sentence which could go *before* each of these.

1. We had to sit in the shade every afternoon.
2. The sweat was pouring out of us.
3. I can hardly breathe; I wish it would rain to cool us down.
4. Cars were skidding out of control.
5. Even the postman had to use a boat to get around.
6. They had to close the airport; the snow was a meter deep.
7. We were able to sit in the garden in the middle of winter.
8. The earth became rock-hard and a lot of plants died.
9. It blew the newspaper clean out of my hands.
10. A row of big trees had been uprooted like matchsticks.
11. I could hardly see my hand in front of my face.

Ex. 4. What types of weather are bad and good for doing these things?

Example: Skiing *bad:* mild weather which makes the snow melt, *good:* cold, clear days

1. Planting flowers in a garden 2. Having an evening barbecue 3. Going out in a small sailing boat 4. A day of sightseeing in a big city 5. Camping out in a tent 6. Looking at ships through binoculars

Ex. 5. This chart shows anyone who wants to visit the West of Ireland what weather to expect at different times of the year. Make a similar chart for your country or home region.

<i>Dec-Mar</i>	<i>April-June</i>	<i>July-Aug</i>	<i>Sep-Nov</i>
coldest months; usually quite wet; snow on high ground	generally cool, often wet and windy but improving	warmest months; bright with showers; cool sea breezes	often mild becoming cold; mist and fog

To lesson – 6 Education

A. Exams and qualifications



take/do/sit/resit an exam pass/do well in an exam fail/do badly in an exam

Before an exam it's a good idea to revise for it. If you skip classes/lectures, you'll probably do badly in the exam. (informal; miss deliberately)

Some schools give pupils tests every week or month to see if they are making progress. The school-leaving exams are held in May/June. In some schools, colleges and universities, instead of tests and exams there is continuous assessment, with marks, e.g. 65%, or grades, e.g. A, B+, for essays and projects during the term. If you pass your university exams, you graduate [grædʒueɪt] (get a degree), then you're a graduate ['grædʒuət].

B. Stages in a person's education

Here are some names that are used to describe the different types of education in Britain.



Note: Comprehensive schools in the UK are for all abilities, but grammar schools are usually by competitive entry. Public schools in the UK are very famous private schools. Polytechnics are similar to universities, but the courses tend to be more practically-oriented. Colleges include teacher-training colleges, technical colleges and general colleges of further education.

C. Talking about education

Asking somebody about their country's education system.

What age do children start school at?

What's the school-leaving age?

Are there evening classes for adults?

Do you have state and private universities?

Do students get grants for further education?

Note: A professor is a senior university academic, not an ordinary teacher. University and college teachers are usually called lecturers or tutors.

Ex. 1. Make a table for the various stages and types of education in your country, like the table at A opposite. How does it compare with the UK system and with the system in other countries represented in your class or that you know of? Is it possible to find satisfactory English translations for all the different aspects of education in your country?

Ex. 2. Fill the gaps in this life story of a British woman.

At 5, Nelly Dawes went straight to (1) school, because there were very few (2) schools for younger children in those days. When she was ready to go on to secondary school, she passed an exam and so got into her local (3) school. Nowadays her own children don't do that exam, since most children go to a(4) school. She left school at 16 and did not go on to(5) education, but she goes to (6) once a week to learn French. She would like to take up her education again more seriously, if she could get a(7) or scholarship from the government. Her ambition is to go to a (8) and become a school-teacher.

Ex. 3. Correct the mis-collocations in these sentences.

1. I can't come out. I'm studying. I'm passing an examination tomorrow. 2. Congratulations! I hear you succeeded your examination! 3. You can study a lot of different careers at this university. 4. I got some good notes in my continuous assessment this term. 5. She's a professor in a primary school. 6. He gave an interesting 45-minute conference on Goethe. 7. She got a degree in* personnel management from a private college.

Ex. 4. What questions could you ask to get these answers?

1. No, they have to finance their own studies.
2. There isn't much difference; it's just that the courses are more practical in a polytechnic instead of being very academic.

- Well, they learn one or two things, like recognizing a few numbers, but most of the time they play around.
- Because I wanted to be a teacher, no other reason.
- It's sixteen, but a lot of kids stay on until eighteen.
- Well, I've been up all night revising for an exam.
- No, ours are given in grades, you know, B+, A, that sort of thing.
- No, I was ill. I didn't miss it deliberately.

Follow-up: The education system in the USA is a bit different from in the UK. How could you find out what the following terms mean in the US education system?
high-school college sophomore graduate school

To lesson – 7 The Environment

A.

There are many different words referring to features of the environment. Here are some arranged on small to large scales.

brook → stream → river hillock → hill → mountain
cove → bay → gulf copse → wood → forest
puddle → pond → lake footpath → lane → road

B.

Look at this encyclopedia entry about Iceland and note any words that refer to particular features of the environment.

Iceland An island republic in the North Atlantic. The landscape consists largely of barren plains and mountains, with large ice fields particularly in the south west. The island has active volcanoes and is known for its thermal springs and geysers. With less than 1% of the land suitable for growing crops, the nation's economy is based on fishing, and fish products account for 80% of the exports. Area: 103,000 km². Population: 227,000. Capital: Reykjavik.

C.

Here are some other nouns which are useful when talking about the environment.

Check their meanings with a dictionary if necessary.

Where land meets sea: coast / shore / beach / estuary / cliff / cape / peninsula

Words connected with rivers: source / tributary / waterfall / mouth / valley / gorge

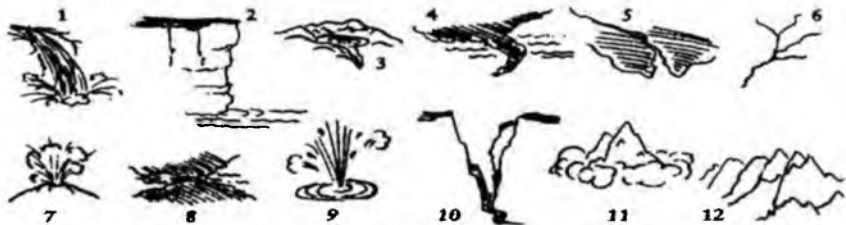
Words connected with mountains: foot / ridge / peak / summit / glacier

B.

There are many environmental problems in the world today. Check with a dictionary if you do not know any of the terms below.

air, river and sea pollution	overfishing	the greenhouse effect
the destruction of the ozone layer		destruction of the rainforests
battery farming	waste disposal	overpopulation

Ex. 1. Label the pictures below.



Ex. 2. In the paragraph below all the instances of the have been omitted. Insert them wherever they are necessary.

Brazil is fifth largest country in world. In north densely forested basin of River Amazon covers half country. In east country is washed by Atlantic. Highest mountain chain in South America, Andes, does not lie in Brazil. Brazil's most famous city is Rio de Janeiro, former capital. Capital of Brazil today is Brasilia.

Ex. 3. Can you answer the following general knowledge questions about the environment?

1. What is the highest mountain in Africa?

2. What is the longest river in Europe?
3. Where is the highest waterfall in the world?
4. Name another country, apart from Iceland, which has geysers and hot springs.
5. What is a delta and which famous river has one?
6. Where are the Straits of Gibraltar and the Cape of Good Hope?

Ex. 4. Complete the paragraph below about your own country, or any other country that interests you. Remember to use 'the' whenever it is necessary.

..... (1) is a (2) in (3). The countryside is..... (4) in the north and (5) in the south. The country's economy is based on (6). The best-known river in (7) is (8). The most famous chain of mountains is 9 and the highest mountain in that chain is(10). (11) is a major environmental problem in (12) today.

Ex. 5. Give two nouns from the opposite page to go with the adjectives below. Try not to repeat any of the nouns you chose. *E.g: sandy beach/shore*

1 sandy 2 steep 3 shallow 4 rocky 5 turbulent 6 dangerous

Ex. 6. Why do environmentalists say we should avoid spray cans, practice organic farming and use unleaded petrol, recycled paper and bottle banks? What else are they in favor of?

To lesson – 8 Illnesses and their treatment

A. What are your symptoms?



rash



Bruise



limp



spots



a black eye

B. What do doctors do?

They take your temperature, listen to your chest, look in your ears, examine you, take your blood pressure, ask you some questions and weigh and measure you before sending you to the hospital for further tests.



C. What's the diagnosis?

You've got flu / chickenpox / mumps / pneumonia / rheumatism / an ulcer / a virus / a bug something that's going round.

You've broken your wrist and sprained / dislocated your ankle.

You're pregnant / a hypochondriac.

He died of lung cancer / a heart attack / a brain hemorrhage / AIDS.

D. What does the doctor prescribe?

- Take one three times a day after meals.
- Take a teaspoonful last thing at night.
- Rub a little on before going to bed each night.
- We'll get the nurse to put a bandage on.
- You'll need to have some injections before you go.
- I'll ask the surgeon when he can fit you in for an operation.
- You'll have to have your leg put in plaster.
- I think you should have total bed rest for a week.

E. What might the doctor ask you?

What would you say if the doctor asked you the following questions?

Do you have health insurance?

Have you ever had any operations?

Are you taking any medication?

Are you allergic to anything?

Ex. 1. Match the diseases with their symptoms.

1. flu swollen glands in front of ear, earache or pain on eating
2. pneumonia burning pain in abdomen, pain or nausea after eating
3. rheumatism rash starting on body, slightly raised temperature
4. chickenpox dry cough, high fever, chest pain, rapid breathing
5. mumps headache, aching muscles, fever, cough, sneezing
6. an ulcer swollen, painful joints, stiffness, limited movement

Ex. 2 What does the doctor or nurse use the following things for?

E.g.: stethoscope → For listening to a patient's chest.

1 thermometer

2 scales

3 tape measure

4 scalpel

Ex. 3 Look at statements (a) to (g) in **D** opposite. Which do you think the doctor said to each of the following patients?

1. Anne with bad sunburn.
2. Liz with a bad cough.
3. Jo who's broken her leg.
4. Sam who needs his appendix out.
5. John who's off to the Tropics.
6. Rose suffering from exhaustion.
7. Paul with flu.
8. Alf who's sprained his wrist.

Ex. 4 Complete the following table.

<i>noun</i>	<i>adjective</i>	<i>verb</i>
.....	breathless	.....
.....	faint	.....
.....	shivery	.....
.....	dislocated	.....
ache	.....	.....
treatment	.....	.....
.....	swollen	.....

Ex. 5. What medical problems might you have if ...

1 you wear shoes that rub?

2 you eat too fast?

3 you smoke a lot?

4 you play football?

5 you go skiing?

6 you stay too long in the sun?

7 you eat food you're allergic to?

8 you run unusually fast for a bus?

9 you eat food that is bad?

10 a mosquito bites you?

11 you get wet on a cold day?

12 you think you're ill all the time?

Ex. 6. Read this label from a bottle of aspirin. Then read each statement below.

Check (✓) true or false.



For temporary relief from headache, muscular aches and pains and fever due to colds and flu

Dosage: Adults, 1 to 2 tablets 3 to 4 times daily

DO NOT GIVE TO CHILDREN UNDER 12 YEARS OF AGE

1. This medicine does not relieve aches and pains.

2. This drug helps reduce fever.

3. Aspirin doesn't help a cold or the flu.

4. An adult can take as many as 8 tablets a day.

5. Children under 12 should not take this medicine.

True

False

_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

Ex. 7. Helena has the flu. She has many aches and pains. Look at the pictures of Helena. On the lines below, write the sickness each picture describes. Chose your answer from the Word Box.



Word Box

backache

earache

headache

stomachache

sore throat

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____

To lesson – 9 Sport

A. Common sports



hang-gliding



windsurfing



bowls



darts



riding



snooker/pool/billiards



motor-racing

B. Equipments – what you hold in your hands

golf → club squash/tennis/badminton → racket darts → dart archery
→ bow cricket / table-tennis / baseball → bat hockey → stick snooker /
pool / billiards → cue canoeing → paddle rowing → oar fishing →
rod/line

C. Athletics – some field events



discus



Javelin



high-jump



long-jump



pole-vault

She is a good sprinter. (fast over short distances)

He is a great long-distance runner. (e.g. 5000 meters, marathon)

Jogging round the park every Saturday is enough for me.

D. Verbs and their collocations in the context of sport

Our team won / lost by three goals / points.

She broke the Olympic record last year.

He holds the record for the 100 meters breast-stroke.

Liverpool beat Hamburg 4-2 yesterday.

The team have never been defeated. (more formal than beat)

How many goals / points have you scored this season?

I think I'll take up bowls next spring and give up golf.

E. People who do particular sports

-er can be used for many sports, e.g. footballer, swimmer, windsurfer, high-jumper, cricketer, golfer, etc. Player is often necessary, e.g. tennis-player, snooker-player, darts-player; we can also say football-player, cricket-player. Some names must be learnt separately, e.g. canoeist, cyclist, mountaineer, jockey, archer (not archerer), gymnast.

Ex. 1. Which of the sports opposite are these people probably talking about?

1 'The ball has a natural curve on it so it doesn't go in a straight line on the grass.'

2 'Provided it's not too windy at the top, there's no problem.'

3 'It is incredibly noisy, fast and dangerous, but it's really exciting to watch.'

4 'You get sore at first and can hardly sit down, but you get used to it after a while.'

5 'It's all a matter of balance really.'

6 'You need a good eye and a lot of concentration.'

Ex. 2. Look at the sports page of one or two newspapers (either in English or in your own language). Are there any sports mentioned not listed at A opposite? If so, what are their English names? Use a bilingual dictionary if necessary.

Ex. 3. Name one other piece of equipment necessary to play these sports apart from the item given, as in the example. What special clothing, if any, is worn for each sport?

E.g.: golf: clubs, *balls*

- 1 archery: bow,
- 2 badminton: racket,
- 3 hockey: stick,
- 4 baseball: bat,
- 5 darts: darts,

Ex. 4. Collocations. Fill the gaps with suitable verbs.

- 1 Were many records at the Olympics?
- 2 We've been so many times we deserve to be bottom of the league!
- 3 Congratulations! How many points did you by?
- 4 You should jogging. That would help you lose weight.
- 5 Who the world record for the 1000 meters? Is it a Russian?
- 6 I only ever once a goal, and that was sheer luck.

Ex. 5. What do you call a person who ... ?

- | | |
|--------------------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1 does the long-jump? <i>a brig-jumper</i> | 5 does gymnastics? |
| 2 rides horses in races? | 6 plays hockey? |
| 3 drives cars in races? | 7 plays football? |
| 4 throws the discus/javelin? | 8 does the pole-vault? |

Ex. 6. Make sure you know which sports these places are associated with, as in the example. Use a dictionary if necessary.

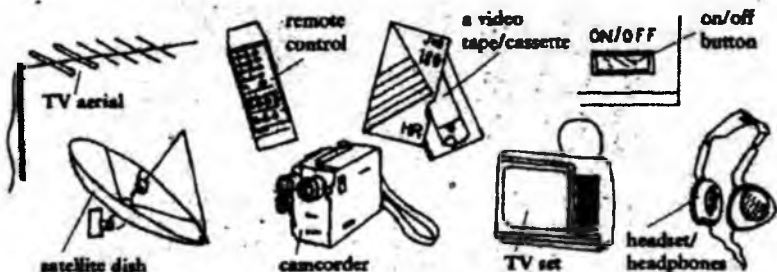
- | | |
|--------------------------------------|----------|
| 1. court <i>tennis, squash, etc.</i> | 5. rink |
| 2. course | 6. alley |
| 3. ring | 7. piste |
| 4. pitch | |

A.

The term the mass media in English refers basically to TV, radio and newspapers: means of communication which reach very large numbers of people. This page looks at some useful words for talking about the mass media and about publishing in general.

B. Radio and television

Types of TV programmes: documentaries news broadcasts current affairs programmes soap operas quizzes sitcoms drama chat shows detective stories sports programmes weather forecasts music programmes game shows variety shows commercials A serial is a story that continues from one programme or episode to the next. A series is about the same characters or has the same format each week but each programme is complete in itself.



C. Newspapers and publishing

Parts of the newspaper: headlines news reports the editorial feature articles, e.g. about fashion or social trends / horoscope / cartoons / crossword / small ads / business news/ sports reports / scandal / the letters page

A popular or tabloid newspaper focuses more on sensation than real news whereas a quality newspaper professes to be more interested in real news than in sensation.

A tabloid usually has a smaller format than a quality paper, it has larger headlines

and shorter stories and, in Britain, it prefers stories about film stars, violent crimes and the royal family.

A journal is the name usually given to an academic magazine. A color supplement is a magazine which comes out once a week (often on Sundays) as an addition to a newspaper.

A comic is a magazine, usually for children or teenagers, with lots of picture stories and/or cartoons.

D. Make sure you know the verbs in these sentences.

The BBC World Service broadcasts throughout the world.

I can receive / pick up broadcasts from Moscow on my radio.

They're showing a good film on TV tonight.

This book was published by CUP but it was printed in Hong Kong.

The film was shot / made on location in Spain.

They cut / censored the film before showing it on TV.

This article / programme has been badly edited.

Ex. 1. What sort of TV programmes do you think these would be?

- | | |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. Murder at the Match | 4. The \$10,000 Question |
| 2. The Amazing Underwater World | 5. Last Week in Parliament |
| 3. World Cup Special | 6. Hamlet from Stratford |

Ex.2. Give the name of one programme you know in your country of each type listed in B.

Ex. 3. Write definitions explaining what jobs each of these people involved in the media do? *E.g: A make-up artist makes up the faces of people who are to appear on TV.*

- | | | |
|---------------------------|----------------|---------------------|
| 1 a foreign correspondent | 4 an editor | 7 a publisher |
| 2 a sub-editor | 5 a librarian | 8 a columnist |
| 3 a continuity person | 6 a bookseller | 9 a camera operator |
| | | 10 a critic |

Ex. 4 Fill in the gaps in the sentences below with the most appropriate word from the opposite page.

1. He doesn't even get up from the sofa to change channels; he just presses theon the
2. You can hear BBC news all over the world.
3. A short wave or a VHF radio can many interesting stations.
- 4 Although our was expensive, we've taken some priceless film of our children.
5. Children often prefer looking atto reading books.

Ex. 5. Chose any newspaper (it could be in your own language if you can't find an English one) and complete the following sentences.

1. The main story today is about
2. The editoria1 is about
3. There are readers' letters on page and they deal with the following topics:
4. The most interesting feature is about
5. There is some scandal on page, a crossword on page , a cartoon on page..... and some small ads on page
6. The most interesting business story is about and the largest sports article is about
7. The most striking photograph shows
8. There are advertisements for.....,and

Ex. 6. Look at the TV page of an English language paper and or listen to the News on the BBC World Service. Make a note of any other useful vocabulary on this theme.

A.

Look at this description of Cork, one of Ireland's main towns. Underline any words or phrases that might be useful for describing your own or any other town.

Cork city is the major metropolis of the south; indeed with a population of about 135,000 it is the second largest city in the Republic. The main business and shopping centre of the town lies on the island created by two channels of the River Lee, with most places within walking distance of the centre. (The buses tend to be overcrowded and the one-way traffic system is fiendishly complicated.) In the hilly area of the city is the famous Shandon Steeple, the bell-tower of St Anne's Church, built on the site of a church destroyed when the city was besieged by the Duke of Marlborough. Back across the River Lee lies the city's cathedral, an imposing 19th century building in the French Gothic style. Cork has two markets. Neither caters specifically for tourists but those who enjoy the atmosphere of a real working market will appreciate their charm. The Crawford Art Gallery is well worth a visit. It regularly mounts adventurous exhibitions by contemporary artists. The fashionable residential districts of Cork city overlook the harbor. There are other residential areas on the outskirts.

B.

Towns can be convenient places to live in because they have many facilities. Check with a teacher or a dictionary if you are not sure what anything means.

Sports: swimming pool / sports centre / golf course / tennis courts /
football pitch / skating rink

Cultural: theatre / opera house / concert hall / radio station / art gallery

Educational: school / college / university / library / evening classes / museum

Catering and Restaurant / cafe / nightclub / take-away / hotel / B and B (bed

night-life: and breakfast) / youth hostel / dance-hall / disco

- Transport: bus service / taxi rank / car hire agency / car park / parking meters
- Other: health centre / law courts / registry office / citizens' advice bureau / job centre / bottle bank / department store / chemist's / estate agent / garden centre / police station / Town or City Hall / suburbs / housing estate / industrial estate / pedestrian precinct

C.

Towns also have their own special problems. Here are some to be found in London now.

- Traffic jams: every day, particularly in the rush-hour, the streets get so packed with traffic that travel is very slow or even comes to a standstill. This is particularly stressful for commuters, people who travel to work in the town
- Slums: certain parts of the city which are poor and in a very bad condition
- Vandalism: pointless destruction of other people's property
- Overcrowding: too many people live in too small a place
- Pollution: the air and the water are no longer as pure as they were

D.

Here are some useful adjectives for describing towns.

picturesque / historic / spacious / elegant / magnificent / atmospheric / quaint / lively / hectic / deserted (e.g. at night) / bustling / crowded / packed / filthy / run-down / shabby

Ex. 1. Check that you understand the text about Cork by answering the following questions.

1. Where is Cork?
2. Where is the shopping and business centre of Cork?
3. What is Cork's traffic system like?
4. What is special about the site of St Anne's Church?

5. In what style is the architecture of Cork Cathedral?

6. Can you buy souvenirs at the markets?

7. Is the Crawford Gallery worth visiting and why?

8. Where do Cork people live?

Ex. 2. The description of Cork comes from a guidebook for tourists. Write sentences about a town of your choice, using the following expressions from the text.

the second/third/fourth ... est

within walking distance of

built on the site

cater for

to overlook

well worth a visit / visiting

a working market / museum / steam

railway / model

the main ... area of the town lies

in the Victorian / Georgian / Classical /

Baroque / French Gothic style

tend to be

whether or not it merits

those who enjoy

on the outskirts

to mount an exhibition

to appreciate the charm

Ex. 3. Look at the list of facilities listed in B opposite. Tick all those which your town, or any town you know well, has.

Ex. 4. Suggest three words which would collocate well with each of the nouns below, as in the examples.

1.

..... museum

.....

2. leisure

..... centre

.....

3.

..... college

.....

4.

..... court

.....

5. night

..... club

.....

6.

..... agency

.....

Ex. 5. What facilities would your ideal town have? Name the three most important facilities for you in each of the categories listed in B opposite. You may choose facilities other than those listed opposite if you wish.

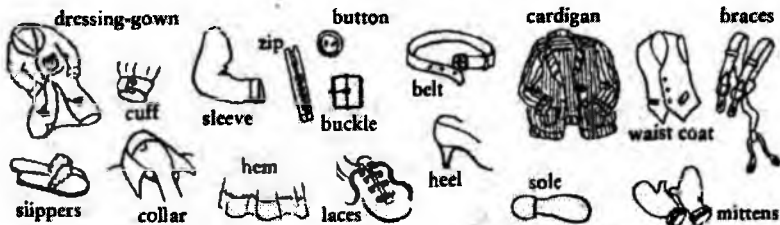
Ex. 6. Are any of the problems mentioned in C opposite to be found in your city or a city you know well? Could you suggest a solution for these problems?

Ex. 7. Write sentences about any towns you know, using each of the adjectives in D. *E.g: The most picturesque part of my town is the old market-place.*

To lesson - 12 Clothes

A.

At this level you probably already know most of the everyday words for clothes. Here are some items of clothing or parts of them which are perhaps less familiar.



B.

Notice that most items of clothing covering the legs are plural words only and, if you wish to count them, you need to say, e.g. 'Six pairs of trousers'.

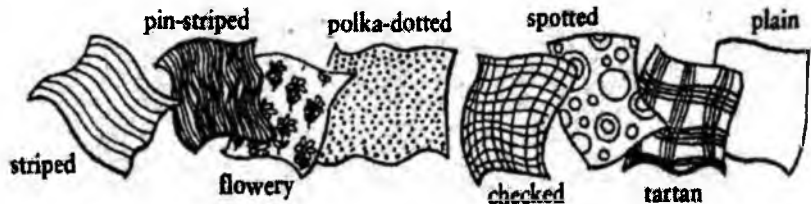
C.

Here are some words used to describe materials which clothes are often made of. These words can be either nouns or adjectives.

silk / cotton / velvet / corduroy / denim / leather / wool/woolen / suede

D.

Here are some adjectives used to describe the patterns on materials.



E.

Here are some verbs associated with clothing.

He undressed / got undressed, throwing all his clothes on the floor.

She quickly dressed the child.

I love dressing up for parties as I normally wear jeans.

Can I try on those grey shoes in the window?

The skirt is too tight and too short - it needs letting out and letting down.

The dress is too loose and too long - it needs taking in and taking up.

She took off her shoes and put on her slippers.

He changed out of his weekend clothes into his uniform.

Red usually doesn't suit people with ginger hair.

Her black bag matches her shoes.

Those shoes don't fit the boy any more. He's grown out of them.

F.

Here are some adjectives for describing people's clothing.

How things fit: baggy / loose / tight / close-fitting

Style: long-sleeved / V-neck / round-neck

General: elegant / smart / scruffy / chic / trendy / with-it

Appearance: well-dressed / badly-dressed / old-fashioned / fashionable

Ex. 1. Which of the words illustrated in A fit best in the following sentences?

1. I must get my black shoes repaired. One is broken and both the have holes in them.
2. Do up your or you'll fall over.
3. There's someone at the door. You'd better put your on before you open it.
4. Put your on - this floor is very cold.
5. I've eaten too much - I'll have to loosen my

6. I've almost finished making my dress for the party but I've still got to sew up the and sew on some

Ex. 2. Complete these sentences with any appropriate word. Use 'pair' where it is necessary.

1. Many women wear nighties in bed whereas most men and children wear

2. Blue are a kind of international uniform for young people.

3. People with ugly knees shouldn't wear

4. I need some new underwear. I'm going to buy three new today.

5. Bother! I've got a hole in my tights. I'll have to get a new

6. Bother! I've got a hole in my tights. I'll have to get some new

Ex. 3. Match the following materials with the item which they are most likely to be associated with from the box. *E.g: velvet ribbon*

1 silk	2 cashmere	3 leather	4 corduroy	5 velvet	6 cotton
sweater	trousers	T-shirt	ribbon	evening blouse	boots

Ex. 4. Describe in as much detail as possible what the people in the pictures are wearing.



Ex. 5. Put the right verb, *match*, *suit* or *fit*, into each of these sentences.

1. The blue dress her properly now she's lost some weight.
2. The blue of her dress the blue of her eyes.
3. That blue dress the girl with the blonde hair.

Ex. 6. Describe in as much detail as you can how (a) you and (b) someone else you can see are dressed.

To lesson - 13 Transport

A.

Look at the table of some basic travel vocabulary. Highlight any of the words that you are not sure about and look them up in your dictionary.

<i>transport type</i>	<i>different kinds of vehicle</i>	<i>parts of vehicle</i>	<i>people working with it</i>	<i>associated facilities</i>
road	sports car, estate car, bus, coach, tram, van, lorry	boot, engine, gears, steering-wheel, brakes, tyres	driver, mechanic, chauffeur, bus-conductor	petrol station, garage, service station
rail	passenger train, freight train, local train, express	sleeping-car, buffet, restaurant-car, compartment	engine-driver, ticket collector, guard, porter	waiting-room, ticket office, signal-box
sea	yacht, rowing-boat, fishing-boat, liner, ferry, trawler	engine-room, deck, bridge, gangplank, companionway	captain, skipper, purser, docker, steward(ess)	port, buoy, quay, customs shed, light-house, docks
air	airplane, jet, helicopter, supersonic aircraft	cockpit, nose, tail, wings, fuselage, joystick	pilot, ground staff, steward, air traffic controller	duty-free shop, departure-lounge, hangar, runway

B. Words at sea

Traditionally sailors use different words at sea - a bedroom is a cabin, a bed is a bunk, the kitchen on a ship is a galley, right is starboard and left is port and the group of people who work on the ship is called the crew. These terms are also now used in the context of an aircraft. Sailors also refer to their vessels as 'she' rather than 'it'.

C. Some international road signs



There's a hump
bridge ahead



There's going to be a
steep hill downwards.



There may be
cattle on the road
ahead.



There's a cycle
route ahead.

D. Some words connected with travel

Last week he flew to New York. It was an early-morning flight. The plane was to take off at 6 a.m. and land at 7 a.m. local time. He was stranded at the airport overnight. The plane was delayed by fog. Air passengers often suffer such delays.

Trains always run on time here. You have to change trains at Crewe.

We are sailing on the QE2. It sets sail at noon. It will dock in New York at 6 p.m. and we shall disembark as soon as we can.

The ship was wrecked. The passengers were marooned on a desert island.

Our car does 10 km to the liter. It goes quite fast. We can usually overtake other cars.

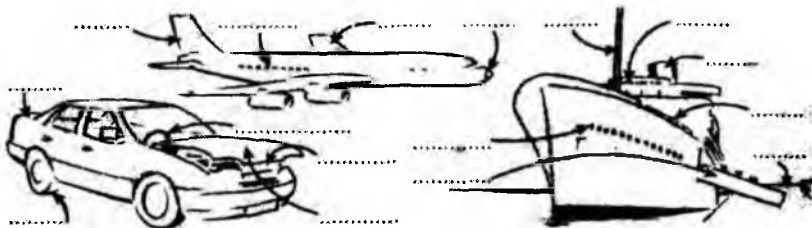
The car swerved into the middle of the road to avoid the cyclist.

He backed the car into the drive and parked in front of the house.

Ex. 1. Here are some more words which could have been included in the table in A opposite. Where would they fit into the table?

bonnet	balloon	deck-chair	guard's van
mast	petrol pump	bus driver	Anchor
glider	oar	rudder	left luggage lockers
check-in desk	control tower	canoe	dual carriageway

Ex. 2. Label the diagrams below. Use a dictionary to help you if necessary.



Ex. 3. Here are some more road signs. Write an explanation of their meaning similar to the explanations given in C opposite.



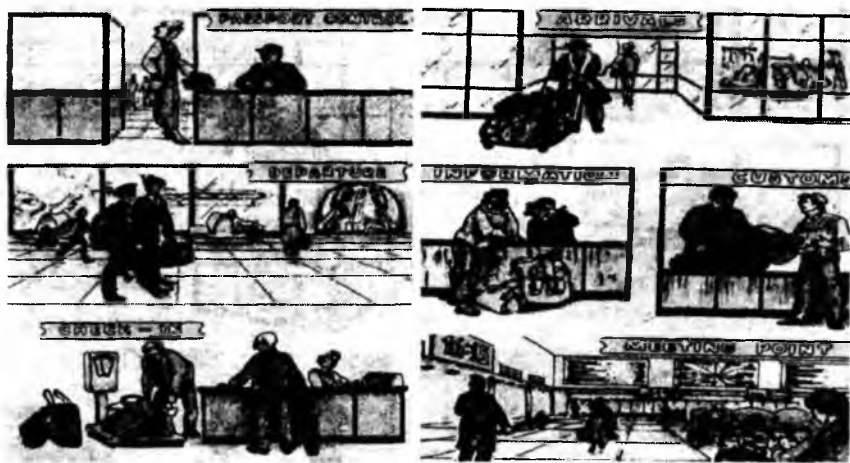
Ex. 4. Fill in the blanks. Most of the words you need can be found opposite.

Yesterday John was supposed to take a(1) from London to Paris. He got up very early, put his luggage in the (2) of his car and tried to start the engine. It wouldn't start. John lifted the (3) but he couldn't see what the matter could be. He immediately called his local (4) to ask them to send a (5) at once. Fortunately, the garage had a man free and he was with John within ten minutes. He quickly saw what the matter was. 'You've(6) of petrol', he said. John felt very foolish. 'Why didn't I (7) everything last night?' he wondered. Despite all this, he got to the airport, checked in quite early and then went straight through to the (8) to

read a newspaper while he waited. Soon he heard an announcement. 'Passengers on flight BA 282 to Paris are informed that all flights to and from Paris are (9) because of a heavy snowfall last night.' 'If only I had decided to go by (10)', John thought. 'It would probably have been quicker in the end and even if I sometimes feel sick on the (11) across the Channel, it can be quite pleasant sitting in a (12) on the deck, watching the seagulls and the other (13). The (14) on a ship seem to produce much better food than those on an aircraft too.' Write two advantages and two disadvantages for each of the four forms of travel opposite.

Ex. 5. Write two advantages and two disadvantages for each of the four forms of travel opposite.

Ex. 6. Look at the pictures. What do you think they mean. Where can you find them?



Source: 'English V' I.N.Vereshcagina / O.V. Afanasyeva Moscow Prosveshchenie 1996 p.53/54

A. Hair, face, skin and complexion



straight hair and
thin-faced



wavy hair and
round-faced



curly hair and
dark-skinned



a crew-cut



bald with
freckles



beard and moustache
with a chubby face



receding hair and a
few wrinkles

He used to have black hair but now it's gone grey, almost white.

What sort of person would you like to go out with? Blonde, fair, dark, ginger-haired or red-haired?

She has such beautiful auburn hair. (red-brown)

Fair and dark can be used for hair, complexion or skin.

B. Height and build



a rather plump or stout
man



a slim woman (positive)



an obese person
(negative, very fat)

Fat may sound impolite. Instead we often say a bit overweight. If someone is broad and solid, we can say they are stocky. A person with good muscles can be well-built or muscular. If someone is terribly thin and refuses to eat, they may be anorexic.

C. General appearance

She's a very smart and elegant woman, always well-dressed; her husband is quite the opposite, very scruffy and untidy-looking.

He's very good-looking, but his friend's rather unattractive.

Do you think beautiful women are always attracted to handsome men? I don't. I think first impressions matter most.

Tip: the suffix -ish is useful for describing people: She's tallish. He has brownish hair. He must be thirtyish.

Ex. 1. Answer these remarks with the opposite description.

E.g: A: I thought you said he was the short, chubby one.

B: No, quite the opposite, *he's the tall, thin-faced one*

1. A: Was that his brother, the dark-skinned, wavy-haired one?

B: No, quite the opposite, his brother's ...

2. A: She's always quite well-dressed, so I've heard.

B: What! Who told you that? Every time I see her, she's ...

3. A: So Charlene's that rather plump fair-haired woman, is she?

B: No, you're looking at the wrong one. Charlene's.. .

4. A: So, tell us about the new boss; good looking?

B: No, I'm afraid not; rather ...

5. A: I don't know why, but I expected the tour-guide to be middle-aged or elderly.

B: No, apparently she's only ...

Ex. 2. Write one sentence to describe each of these people, giving information about their hair and face, their height and build and general appearance.

1 you yourself

3 a neighbor

2 your best friend

4 your ideal of a handsome man / a beautiful woman


Now, in the same way, describe somebody very famous, give some extra clues about them, e.g. *pop star/politician*, and see if someone else can guess who you are describing.

Ex. 3. From these words, find combinations for describing people, as in the example. Not all of the words are on the left-hand page. Some of the combinations are hyphenated. Use a dictionary if necessary. *E.g: good-looking*

looking	stocky	round	haired	good	complexion	Red
middle	over-	well	faced	mixed	build	Weight
race	legged	tanned				

Ex. 4. WANTED! MISSING! MISSING! Complete the gaps in these police posters.


WANTED FOR MURDER



Ian Prowse,
height 6ft.

.....-faced,
.....hair,
.....skin

Wanted for Robbery



Sandra King
height 5ft 4,

.....hair,
.....build,
.....faced

Missing



Louise Fox
age 7, Asian

.....
.....
hair.

Wanted dead or alive

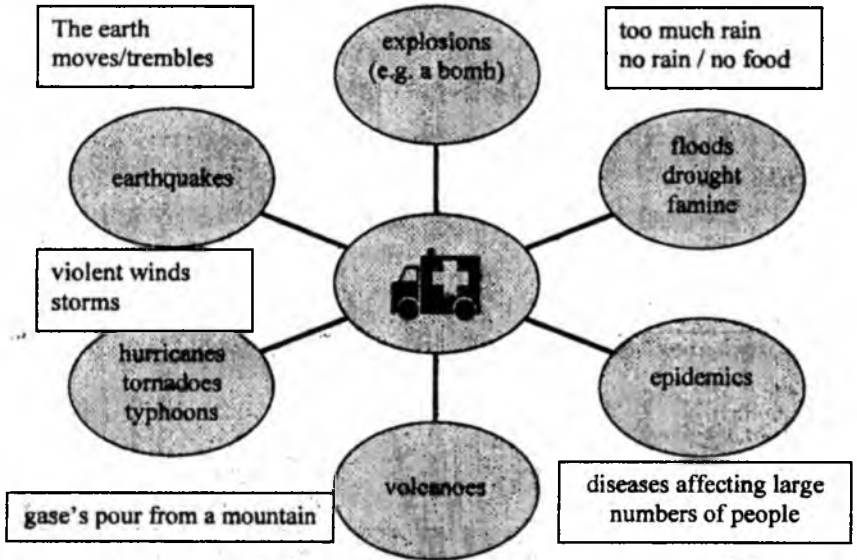


Jake 'Dagger' Flagstone, 6ft

.....with
.....and
.....build.

Ex. 5. Make a collection of descriptions of people from newspapers and magazines. Court/crime reports, celebrity and gossip pages of magazines, and the 'personal' columns where people are seeking partners are good places to start.

A. Disasters / Tragedies



Verbs connected with these words

A volcano has erupted in Indonesia. Hundreds are feared dead.

The flu epidemic spread rapidly throughout the country.

Millions are starving as a result of the famine.

A big earthquake shook the city at noon today.

The area is suffering its worst drought for many years.

Civil war has broken out in the north of the country.

A tornado swept through the islands yesterday.

Remember: injure [people], damage [things]:

200 people were injured and dozens of buildings were damaged in the hurricane.

B. Words for people involved in disasters/tragedies

The explosion resulted in 300 casualties. (dead and injured people)

The real victims of the civil war are the children left without parents. (those who suffer the results of the disaster)

There were only three survivors. All the other passengers died instantly. (people who live through a disaster)

Thousands of refugees have crossed the border looking for food and shelter.

During the battle, the dead and wounded were flown out in helicopters. (wounded: injured in a battle by a weapon)

C. Headlines

Here are some headlines from newspapers all connected with diseases and epidemics.

Explanations are given.

disease can be caused by bite from a dog, fox, etc.; very serious

Rabies out of control in many parts of Asia

tropical disease; skin goes yellow

yellow fever figures drop

New malaria drug tested

usually caught because of mosquito bites

diseases causing sickness, diarrhoea etc.; caused often by infected food and water

Minister says fight against **leprosy** goes on

terrible skin disease; leaves the skin deformed

Cholera and typhoid injections not needed says Tourism Minister

Ex. 1. What type of disaster from the list at A opposite are these sentences about? Why? E.g. : The lava flow destroyed three villages. *volcano; lava is the hot rocks and metal*

1 The earth is cracked and vegetation has withered.

2 The tremor struck at 3.35 p.m. local time.

3 People had boarded up shops and houses during the day before, and stayed indoors.

4 Shelling and mortar fire could be heard all over the town.

5 Witnesses said they saw a fire-ball fall out of the sky.

6 People were-stranded in the upper floors and sometimes on the roofs of their homes, unable to move about.

Ex. 2. Complete the missing items in this word-class table, using a dictionary if necessary. Where there is a dash (-), you do not need to write anything.

verb	noun: thing or idea	noun: person
.....	explosion	-
.....	Survivor
injure
starve
erupt	-

Ex. 3. In these headlines, say whether the situation seems to be getting worse or better, or whether a disaster has happened or has been avoided/prevented.

1 Poison gas cloud spreads

3 POLICE DEFUSE
TERRORIST BOMB

5 Oil slick recedes

2 AIDS time-bomb ticking away

4 All survive jumbo crash-landing

6 Flood warnings not heeded in time

Ex. 4. Which diseases are we talking about? Try to do this from memory.

1 One that can be caused by a mosquito bite.

2 One that leaves the skin badly deformed.

3 One you can get by drinking infected water.

4 One you can get from an animal bite. 5 One that makes the skin go yellow.

Ex. 5. Fill the gaps with a suitable word from B opposite. Try to work from memory.

1 Another **50** people died today, yet more of this terrible famine.

2 The government has agreed to allow 3,000 trying to escape the civil war to enter the country.

3 It was the worst road accident the country has ever seen, with over 120

4 A: Were there any when the ship sank? B: I'm afraid not.

5 The and were simply left lying on the battlefield; it was a disgrace.

To lesson – 16 Politics and public institutions

Look at the definitions below taken from a dictionary of politics. Make sure you understand not only the words listed but the words used in the definitions too.

A. Types of government

republic: a state governed by representatives and, usually, a president

monarchy: a state ruled by a king or queen

democracy: government of, by and for the people

dictatorship: system of government run by a dictator

independence: freedom from outside control; self-governing



 The United Kingdom
 The Republic of Ireland

B. People and bodies involved in politics

Member of Parliament (MP): a representative of the people in Parliament

politician: someone for whom politics is a career

statesman/woman: someone who uses an important political position wisely and well

Prime Minister: the head of government or leading minister in many countries

chamber: hall used by a group of legislators; many countries have two chambers

cabinet: a committee of the most important ministers in the government

President and Vice-president: the head of state in many modern states

Mayor: head of a town or city council

ambassador: top diplomat representing his/her country abroad

embassy: the building where an ambassador and his/her staff are based

ministry: a department of state headed by a minister.

C. Elections

constituency: a political area whose inhabitants are represented by one MP

candidate: someone who stands in an election

policy: the programme of action of a particular party or government

majority: the number of votes by which a person wins an election

referendum: a direct vote by the population on some important public issue

by(e)-election: an election in one constituency in contrast to a General Election

marginal seat: a parliamentary seat held by a very small majority of votes

the opposition: members of parliament who do not belong to the party in power

stand/run for Parliament: to be a candidate in an election

vote: to choose in a formal way, e.g. by marking a ballot paper

elect: to choose someone or something by voting

Ex. 1. Chose the correct word from the choices offered.

1. India gained republic/independence/democracy from the UK in 1948.
2. Our MP's just died and so we'll soon need to have a vote/referendum/by-election.
3. She's running/sitting/walking for Parliament in the next election.
4. His father was voted/stood/elected MP for Cambridge City.
5. What is your country's economic politics/policy/politician?
6. Do you think Bush deserved to be referred to as a politician / statesman / President?

Ex. 2. Look at this text about politics in the UK. Fill in the missing words.

Parliament in the UK consists of two(1): the House of Commons and the House of Lords. In the House of Commons there are 650 (2), each representing one (3). The ruling party in the Commons is the one which gains a (4) of seats. The main figure in that party is called the (5). The Commons is elected for a maximum period of 5 years although the Prime Minister may call a general (6) at any time within that period.

Ex. 3. Make some more words based on those you studied opposite.

<i>abstract noun</i>	<i>person noun</i>	<i>verb</i>	<i>adjective</i>
revolution	revolutionist	revolutionize	revolutionary
representation
election
dictatorship
presidency

Ex. 4. Try this political quiz.

1. Name three monarchies.
2. Which is the oldest parliament in the world?
3. Name the President and the Vice-president of the USA.
4. Who is the Mayor of the place where you live?

5. What politicians represent you in local and national government?
6. What are the main political parties in the country where you now are?
7. What are the main political issues in that country and what are the policies of the different parties on those issues?
8. What do these political abbreviations stand for - MP, PM, UN, EU, NATO, OPEC, CIS, UNICEF?

Ex. 5. Write a paragraph about the political system in your country, using as much of the vocabulary on the opposite page as you can.

To lesson – 17 Success, failure and difficulty

A. Failing

Plans and projects often go wrong or misfire. (do not turn out as intended)

Companies, clubs, and societies often fold through lack of success (close down)

A plan or project may falter, even if it finally succeeds. (go through ups and downs)

All your plans and hard work/efforts may come to nothing.

B. Succeeding

I **managed** to contact him just before he left his office.

I don't think I can **manage** the whole walk. I think I'll turn back. (manage, but not succeed, may have a direct object in this meaning)

We **succeeded** in persuading a lot of people to join our protest. [in + -ing]

We've **achieved/accomplished** a great deal in the last three years. (both are used with quantity phrases such as 'a lot'/'a little')

The company has **achieved** all its goals/aims/targets for this year (achieve is more common than accomplish with nouns expressing goals and ambitions)

Do you think his plan will **come off**? (succeed; informal)

Matrix for some typical collocations with 'succeeding' verbs

	reach	attain	secure	realize	fulfill	achieve
an ambition		✓		✓	✓	✓
a dream				✓		✓
an agreement	✓		✓			
an obligation					✓	
a target	✓	✓				✓
a compromise	✓					✓

C. Difficulty

I have great difficulty in getting up in the morning. I find it difficult to remember the names of everybody in the class. (hard can be used here; it is more informal)

It's hard/difficult to hear what she's saying.

I often have trouble starting the car on cold mornings.

We've had a lot of bother with the neighbors lately.

Can you cope with three more students? They've just arrived.

I've no money, my girl-friend's left me; I need help; I just can't cope any more.

D. Word class

<i>verb</i>	<i>noun</i>	<i>adjective</i>	<i>adverb</i>
succeed	success	successful	successfully
accomplish	accomplishment	accomplished	-
achieve	achievement	achievable	-
attain	attainment	attainable	-
fulfill	fulfillment	fulfilling	-
		hard	hard

Ex. 1. Using the collocation matrix opposite, chose a suitable verb to fill the gap. If the exact word in the sentence is not in the vertical column of the matrix, look for something that is close in meaning.

1. The management have an agreement with the union which will guarantee no strikes for the next three years.

2. Now that I've all my responsibilities to my family, I feel I can retire and go round the world.
3. The church building-fund has failed to its target of £250,000.
4. I never thought I would my ambition, but now I have.
5. Very few people all their hopes and dreams in life, very few indeed, I can tell you.
6. We hope the two sides a compromise and avoid war.
7. I'm afraid that little scheme of mine didn't off.

Ex. 2. Fill in the missing word forms where they exist.

<i>verb</i>	<i>noun</i>	<i>adjective</i>	<i>adverb</i>
realize	.....	.....	.....
.....	difficulty	.....	.....
.....	target	.....	.....
.....	ambition	.....	.....
fail	.....	.....	.....
.....	trouble	.....	.....

Ex. 3. Correct the mistakes in these sentences.

1. I find very difficult to understand English idioms.
2. She succeeded to rise to the top in her profession.
3. Do you ever have any trouble to use this photocopier? I always seem to.
4. I've accomplished to work quite hard this last month.
5. I'm amazed that you can cope all the work they give you.

Ex. 4. What might happen if ... / What would you do if ...

1. a plan misfired? *Abandon it. / Look for an alternative.*
2. you were having a lot of bother with your car?
3. a club had only two members left out of fifty?
4. a student faltered in one exam out of six, but did well in all the rest?
5. you started a small business but it came to nothing?
6. you couldn't cope with your English studies?

Ex. 5. In what sorts of situations would you hear the following remarks? Check any new words/phrases if you are not sure.

1. We'll have to get an au pair. I just can't cope.
2. £5,000 and I've got nothing to show for it!
3. It collapsed, I'm afraid, and he's bankrupt now.
4. Yes, she pulled it off despite the competition.

To lesson – 18 Pleasant and unpleasant feelings

A. Happiness and unhappiness

You feel:	ecstatic when you are madly in love or are spiritually uplifted for some reason.
	content(ed) when you are peaceful and satisfied with what you have.
	cheerful when life is looking quite bright and positive.
	grateful when someone has done you a favor.
	delighted when something has happened that gives you great pleasure, when you hear news of someone's good fortune, for instance.
	miserable when everything seems wrong in your life.
	discontented when your life is not giving you satisfaction.
	fed-up / sick and tired when you have had enough of something disagreeable. You could be fed up with someone's rudeness, for instance, or sick and tired of someone's behavior.
	depressed when you are miserable over a long period of time. Depression is considered an illness in some severe cases.
	frustrated when you are unable to do something that you want to do.
confused / mixed up when you cannot make sense of different conflicting feelings or ideas; mixed up is more colloquial.	

B. Excitement, anger and anxiety

You feel:

excited when you are expecting something special to happen, e.g. before a party or before a meeting with someone special.

inspired when you are stimulated to creative deeds or words. You might feel inspired after listening to some very powerful music, perhaps, or you might be inspired to action by a friend.

enthusiastic when you have very positive feelings about something, e.g. a new project.

thrilled when something extremely exciting and pleasing happens - quite a colloquial word. She was thrilled when the film star kissed her.

cross when you are angry or bad-tempered. It is often, though not exclusively, used about small children; quite a colloquial word.

Furious / livid / seething when you are extremely angry; livid and seething are more informal; in a rage/fury are other ways of saying furious or violently angry.

anxious when you are afraid and uncertain about the future. I am so anxious about the results of my exams that I can't sleep.

nervous when you are afraid or anxious about something that is about to or may be about to happen. I always feel nervous when I have to go to the dentist. Feeling nervous is a little bit like feeling excited but it is a negative feeling whereas excitement is positive.

apprehensive when you are slightly nervous or anxious about something in the future.

worried when anxious thoughts are constantly going through your head.

upset when something unpleasant has happened to disturb you. It often combines feelings of both sadness and anger.

Ex. 1. Complete the following table.

<i>adjective</i>	<i>abstract noun</i>	<i>adjective</i>	<i>abstract noun</i>
furious	.....	frustrated	.....
.....	anxiety	.....	cheerfulness
grateful	.....	enthusiastic	.....
.....	ecstasy	.....	apprehension
inspired	.....	excited	.....

Ex. 2. Chose the best word from those given to complete each of the sentences which follow.

enthusiastic / confused / cross / thrilled / depressed / upset / fed-up / frustrated / discontented

- I didn't know who was telling the truth. I felt totally
- Some mothers are for several months after the birth of a baby.
- I think she is bad-tempered because she is She wanted to be an actress and not a school-teacher.
- Although he seems to have everything anyone could possibly want, he is still
- He went skiing for the first time last month, but now he is so about it that he can talk of little else.
- My baby brother gets very by the evening if he doesn't have an afternoon sleep.
- This rainy weather has gone on for so long. I feel really with it.
- He was terribly when he heard the news of his friend's accident.
- She was when she learnt that she had won the first prize.

Ex. 3. Write sentences about when you have experienced the following feelings.

E.g: anxious → *I felt anxious until we heard the results of my mother's medical tests.*

- 1 anxious 2 apprehensive 3 grateful 4 in a rage 5 miserable 6 inspired 7 enthusiastic

Ex. 4. The words opposite ending in **-ed** (apart from contented and delighted) also have **-ing** forms e.g. interested/interesting and bored/boring. Add the correct ending **-ed** or **-ing**.

E.g.: She was thrilled by her present.

1. I found the film very excit... .
2. The poet was inspir... by the sunset.
3. This weather is terribly depress... .
4. It is very frustrat... when the phones aren't working.
5. She was confus ... by the ambiguous remarks he made to her.

Ex.5. You, of course, know the basic expressions: I am hungry / thirsty / hot / cold / tired / cross'.

Colloquially, we often say the same things using a much stronger expression. What do you think people mean when they say:

- | | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. I'm boiling | 3. I'm seething | 5. I'm starving |
| 2. I'm dying for a drink | 4. I'm freezing | 6. I'm worn out |

To lesson – 19 Money - buying, selling and paying

A. Personal finance

Sometimes in a shop they ask you: 'How do you want to pay?'

You can answer: 'Cash / By cheque / By credit card.'

In a bank you usually have a current account, which is one where you pay in your salary and then withdraw money to pay your everyday bills. The bank sends you a regular bank statement telling you how much money is in your account. You may also have a savings account where you deposit any extra money that you have and only take money out when you want to spend it on something special. You usually try to avoid having an overdraft or

you end up paying a lot of interest. If your account is overdrawn, you can be said to be in the red (as opposed to in the black or in credit).

Sometimes the bank may lend you money -this is called a bank loan. If the bank (or building society) lends you money to buy a house, that money is called a mortgage. When you buy (or, more formally, purchase) something in a shop, you usually pay for it outright but sometimes you buy on credit. Sometimes you may be offered a discount or a reduction on something you buy at a shop. This means that you get, say, £10 off perhaps because you are a student. You are often offered a discount if you buy in bulk. It is not usual to haggle about prices in a British shop, as it is in, say, a Turkish market. If you want to return something which you have bought to a shop, you may be given a refund, i.e. your money will be returned, provided you have a receipt.

The money that you pay for services, e.g. to a school or a lawyer, is usually called a fee or fees; the money paid for a journey is a fare. If you buy something that you feel was very good value, it's a bargain. If you feel that it is definitely not worth what you paid for it, then you can call it a rip-off (very colloquial).

B. Public finance

The government collects money from citizens through taxes. Income tax is the tax collected on wages and salaries. Inheritance tax is collected on what people inherit from others. Customs or excise duties have to be paid on goods imported from other countries. VAT or value added tax is a tax paid on most goods and services when they are bought or purchased. Companies pay corporation tax on their profits. If you pay too much tax, you should be given some money back, a tax rebate.

The government also sometimes pays out money to people in need, e.g. unemployment benefit (also known informally as the dole) disability allowances and student grants (to help pay for studying). Recipients draw a pension / unemployment benefit or are on the dole or on social security.

Every country has its own special currency. Every day the rates of exchange are published and you can discover, for example, how many dollars there are currently to the pound sterling.

A company may sell shares to members of the public who are then said to have invested in that company. They should be paid a regular dividend on their investment, depending on the profit or loss made by the company.

Ex. 1. Answer the following money quiz.

1. What currencies are used in Japan, Australia, India and Russia?
2. What does the expression, 'hard currency', mean?
3. Name two credit cards which are usable world-wide.
4. Give two examples of imports that most countries impose customs duties on.
5. Give three examples of kinds of income that would be classed as unearned.
6. What is the Dow Jones index and what are its equivalents in London and Japan?
7. Give an example of something that is priceless and something that is valueless.
8. Name the coins and banknotes used in your country and one other country.

Ex. 2. Match the words on the left with their definitions on the right.

1. interest	a bank account with minus money in it
2. mortgage	money paid towards the cost of raising a family
3. an overdrawn account	money given by the government for education, welfare
4. savings account	an account that is used mainly for keeping money
5. current account	money paid to people after a certain age
6. pension	an account that cheques are drawn on for day-to-day use
7. disability allowance	money chargeable on a loan
8. child benefit	money paid to people with a handicap
9. grant	a loan to purchase property

Ex. 3. Is the ordinary 'person-in-the-street' pleased to see these newspaper headlines or not?

Mortgage rate goes up

Wages to be frozen

Pension age raised

Interest rates down

VAT to be reduced

NUMBER ON DOLE RISES

Ex. 4. Complete the sentences with words from the opposite page.

1 Money which has to be paid on what you inherit is known as

2 If the bank lends you money, you have a bank

3 If you have some money in your account you are in the

4 I paid too much tax last year so I should get a soon.

5 If it's no good, take it back to the shop and ask for a

Ex. 5. Fill in the table below for your own, or any other, country.

Rate of inflation	.....
Exchange rate (against the US dollar)	.....
Interest rate	.....
Basic level of income tax	.....
Rate of VAT	.....
Monthly state pension	.....

Follow-up: To improve your financial vocabulary, read articles on business in any English magazine or newspaper. Write down any new words or expressions that you come across.

To lesson – 20 Music

A. Brass



Brass instruments derive from shells, horns, and branches used to make music in ancient times. Modern versions such as the trumpet were first constructed from brass – a malleable and relatively cheap metal. Although they are now made from a variety of materials, the name has remained. In modern instruments, notes are produced by two methods: by adjusting the tension of the lips on the cup – or funnel-shaped mouthpiece, by altering the length of the tube through which air passes.

B. Woodwind

Woodwind instruments produce sound when air is blown into them. Originally made of wood, many are now manufactured from metal or plastic. The saxophone is an exception, having always been made of metal, but it appears in this category because it was constructed as a hybrid of the oboe and clarinet.



C. Stringed



Most stringed instruments are characterized by a set of stretched strings attached to the hollow body, which amplifies the strings' vibrations. To produce these vibrations a string can be: plucked, as with a guitar; bowed, as which a cello; or stuck, as with a piano. The thinner and shorter the string, the higher the note it will produce. Larger instruments are capable of creating lower notes: a double bass, for example, with its sizable body and long strings, can generate much deeper sounds than a violin.

D. Percussion

untuned



Percussion instruments, played by being struck, shaken, scraped or clashed together, are the oldest of the instrumental groups. Most percussion instruments, such as side drum, do not have a definite pitch and are used for rhythm and impact, and the distinctive timber of their sound.

tuned



Other percussion instruments, such as tubular bells, are tuned to a definite pitch and can play melody, harmony, and rhythms.

Ex. 1. Here is the list of musical instruments. Separate them into the following categories.

Musical instruments: *balalaika, bassoon, clarinet, claves, castanets, cymbals, cello, double bass, drum, euphonium, guitar, harmonica, harp, horn, lute, maracas, oboe, piano, piccolo, sousaphone, saxophone, sitar, tabla, tambourine, triangle, trombone, vibraphone, violin, xylophone.*

Brass instruments <i>horn</i>	Percussion instruments <i>drum</i>	Stringed instruments <i>balalaika</i>	Woodwind instruments <i>flute</i>
.....
.....
.....

Ex.2. Now, try to find musical instruments in the words square below. Words can run in any direction. Tick (✓) the words as you find them.

S	A	H	B	T	C	D	P	E	F	G	H	A	J	K	HARP ✓
A	B	A	L	A	L	A	I	K	A	O	E	N	M	L	SAXOPHONE
X	P	R	Q	B	R	S	C	T	U	T	N	V	D	X	BALALAIKA
O	Y	P	Z	L	W	A	C	L	A	R	I	N	E	T	TABLA
P	B	C	D	A	E	F	O	G	H	U	R	I	V	R	VIBRAPHONE
H	G	K	L	V	P	M	L	N	O	M	U	P	I	I	OBOE
O	B	O	E	Q	I	R	O	S	T	P	O	U	O	A	TRIANGLE
N	V	W	X	F	A	B	Y	R	Z	E	M	A	L	N	PICCOLO
E	B	E	L	C	N	D	R	I	E	T	A	F	I	G	TRUMPET SITAR
G	I	U	A	C	O	G	D	A	E	H	T	V	N	L	TAMBOURINE
I	T	R	U	M	V	U	L	U	P	T	T	E	A	E	VIOLIN
E	U	P	H	O	N	I	U	M	A	H	I	I	S	Z	CLARINET
D	R	U	M	T	A	T	O	O	B	U	O	N	Z	A	GUITAR
	R	A	T	I	S	A	B	L	U	T	E	N	O	N	VIBRAPHONE
C	L	A	V	E	S	R	A	S	P	E	R	G	E	U	FLUTE PIANO

Ex. 3. Answer the following questions.

1. What Uzbek national music instruments do you know?
2. Where does “SHARQ TARONALARI” music festival take place?
3. Do you think music lessons must be taught at Universities?
4. Who is your favorite Uzbek pop (rock, classic) singer?
5. Do you like to sing or you prefer to dance?
6. Can you imagine your life without music?

Ex. 4. Chose one and write a short essay on this issue.

Note! We always use article “the” after the names of musical instruments.

Compare: He plays the piano very well. He plays football very well.

To lesson – 21 Science and technology

A.

You are probably familiar with the traditional branches of science e.g. chemistry, physics, botany and zoology. But what about these newer fields?

genetic engineering: the study of the artificial manipulation of the make-up of living things

molecular biology: the study of the structure and function of the organic molecules associated with living organisms

cybernetics: the study of the way information is moved and controlled by the brain or by machinery

information technology: the study of technology related to the transfer of information (computers, digital electronics, telecommunications)

bioclimatology: the study of climate as it affects humans

geopolitics: study of the way geographical factors help to explain the basis of the power of nation states

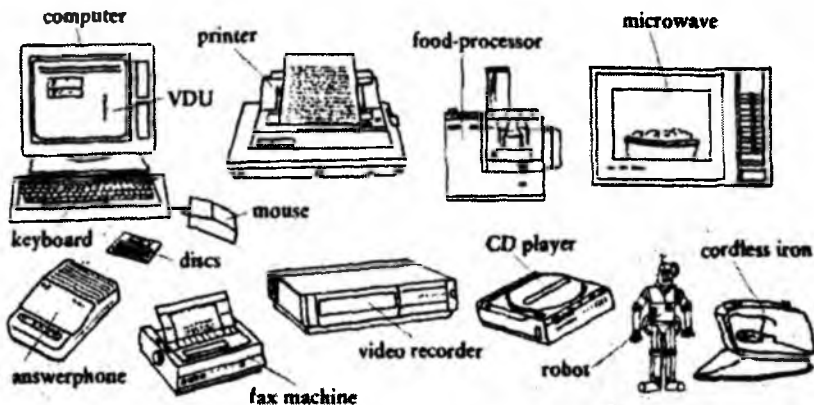
nuclear engineering: the study of the way nuclear power can be made useful

crvogenics: the study of physical systems at temperatures less than 183°C

astrophysics: the application of physical laws and theories to stars and galaxies

B.

Here are some of the modern inventions which we are now becoming quite used to.



C.

The verbs in the sentences below are all useful in scientific contexts.

He experimented with a number of different materials before finding the right one.

The technician pressed a button and lights started flashing.

When she pulled a lever, the wheel began to rotate.

The zoologist dissected the animal.

When they were combined, the two chemicals reacted violently with each other.

After analyzing the problem, the physicist concluded that there was a flaw in his initial hypothesis.

James Watt invented the steam engine and Alexander Fleming, another Scot, discovered penicillin.

After switching on the computer, insert a floppy disc into the disc drive.

You must patent your invention as quickly as possible.

Ex. 1. Complete the following list with the name of the specialists in the particular fields.

<i>science</i>	<i>scientist</i>
chemistry	.....
physics	.....
zoology	.....
genetics	.....
information technology	.....
cybernetics	.....
civil engineering	.....

Ex. 2. Below you have some of the amazing achievements of modern technology. Match the names on the left with the definitions on the right.

1 video recorder	a kind of sophisticated typewriter using a computer
2 photocopier	a machine which records and plays back sound
3 fax machine	a machine which records and plays back sound and pictures
4 tape recorder	a camera which records moving pictures and sound
5 modem	a machine for chopping up, slicing, mashing, blending etc.
6 camcorder	a machine which makes copies of documents
7 robot	a machine which makes copies of documents and sends them down telephone lines to another place
8 word-processor	a machine which acts like a person
9 food-processor	a piece of equipment allowing you to send information from one computer down telephone lines to another computer

Ex. 3. What are the nouns connected with the following verbs?

discover / rotate / patent / dissect / combine / invent / conclude / analyze / experiment

Ex. 4. Write descriptions like those in exercise 2, for the following objects.



1



2



3



4



5

Ex. 5. Give each of the sciences in A opposite a number from 0 to 5 depending on whether it doesn't interest you at all (0) or interests you enormously (5). Similarly mark each of the inventions in B, 0 to 5, depending on how important they are to you in your life.

Follow-up: Increase your knowledge of scientific vocabulary by reading articles of general scientific interest in English language newspapers or magazines.

CONTENTS

Preface	5
Phonetic section: <i>Vowels and consonants</i>	6
Lesson 1	20
Grammar: <i>Noun (singular and plural forms of nouns, possessive case of nouns, the verb TO BE, the Article)</i>	
Text: <i>My Family</i>	
Lesson 2	30
Grammar: <i>Present continues Tense, Prepositions of Place, There is (are) construction</i>	
Text: <i>My Apartment</i>	
Lesson 3	39
Grammar: <i>Present Indefinite (Simple) Tense, Pronouns</i>	
Text: <i>Working Day</i>	
Lesson 4	51
Grammar: <i>Past Indefinite (Simple) Tense, Indefinite Pronouns, Articles with the names of meals</i>	
Text: <i>Meals</i>	
Lesson 5	65
Grammar: <i>Future Indefinite Tense / Adverbial clause of Time and Condition Articles with Geographical Names</i>	
Text: <i>Seasons and Weather</i>	
Lesson 6	78
Grammar: <i>Modal Verbs. Adjectives (Degrees of Comparison)</i>	
Text: <i>Education</i>	
Lesson 7	92
Grammar: <i>Present Perfect, Adverbs (Degrees of Comparison)</i>	
Text: <i>Nature (ecology)</i>	
Lesson 8	105
Grammar: <i>Interrogative sentences.</i>	
Text: <i>Spring Victory (Illnesses and their treatment)</i>	
Lesson 9	122
Grammar: <i>Indirect Speech</i>	
Text: <i>Sport</i>	
Lesson 10	133
Grammar: <i>Sequence of Tenses. The Future in the Past. The Past Perfect Tense.</i>	
Text: <i>Live Entertainment for Every Taste (cinema and theatre)</i>	
Lesson 11	147
Grammar: <i>Passive Voice</i>	
Text: <i>Tashkent</i>	

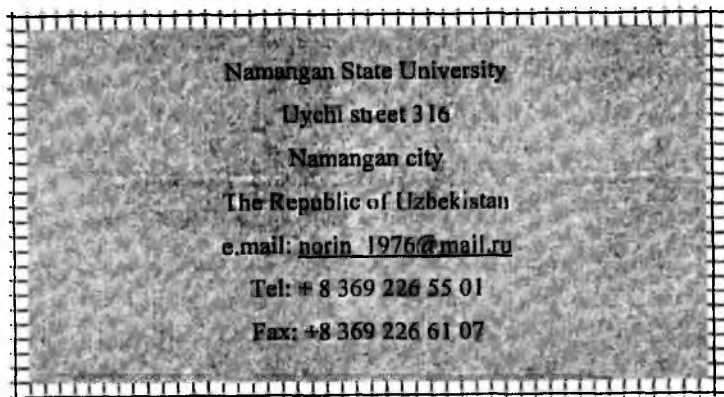
Lesson 12		158
Grammar:	<i>Past and Future Continues (progressive) The Complex Object</i>	
Text:	<i>Shopping</i>	
Lesson 13		171
Grammar:	<i>Present perfect Continues</i>	
Text:	<i>Leaving the Car at Home</i>	
Lesson 14		181
Grammar:	<i>Past perfect Continues Tense (HAD+ BEEN+ VERB+ING)</i>	
Text:	<i>Native Americans</i>	
Lesson 15		190
Grammar:	<i>Some Verbs and Word Combinations Followed by a Gerund HAVE SOMETHING DONE</i>	
Text:	<i>Fire (Natural disasters)</i>	
Lesson 16		198
Grammar:	<i>Relative Clause</i>	
Text:	<i>The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland</i>	
Lesson 17		213
Grammar:	<i>Some Verbs and Word Combinations Followed by an Infinitive</i>	
Text:	<i>Two American Presidents</i>	
Lesson 18		223
Grammar:	<i>Subjunctive Mood</i>	
Text:	<i>Family Life</i>	
Lesson 19		233
Grammar:	<i>Subjunctive Mood</i>	
Text:	<i>Market Economy</i>	
Lesson 20		244
Grammar:	<i>Participle I</i>	
Text:	<i>Orpheus and Eurydice</i>	
Lesson 21		255
Grammar:	<i>Participle II</i>	
Text:	<i>High-Tech Communications</i>	

Additional materials and exercises for understanding idioms and expressions

Section 1	263
Section 2	266
Section 3	269
Section 4	272
Section 5	275
Section 6	278
Section 7	281
Section 8	284
Section 9	287
Section 10	290

SELF-STUDY COURSE

To lesson – 1 / Describing people – character _____	294
To lesson – 2 / At home _____	297
To lesson – 3 / What your body does? _____	300
To lesson – 4 / Food _____	303
To lesson – 5 / Seasons and weather _____	306
To lesson – 6 / Education _____	309
To lesson – 7 / The Environment _____	312
To lesson – 8 / Illnesses and their treatment _____	314
To lesson – 9 / Sport _____	318
To lesson – 10 / The press and media _____	321
To lesson – 11 / Cities and Towns _____	324
To lesson – 12 / Clothes _____	327
To lesson – 13 / Transport _____	330
To lesson – 14 / Describing people - appearance _____	334
To lesson – 15 / Global problems (ecology) _____	337
To lesson – 16 / Politics and public institutions _____	340
To lesson – 17 / Success, failure and difficulty _____	343
To lesson – 18 / Pleasant and unpleasant feelings _____	346
To lesson – 19 / Money - buying, selling and paying _____	349
To lesson – 20 / Music _____	352
To lesson – 21 / Science and technology _____	355



Tajibaev Gayratjon Shovdorovich

**Course of English
for social faculty students
(o`quv- qo`llanma)**

**Bichimi 64x80 1/16. Xajmi 22,75 Adadi 300.
Buyurtma № 79. Bahosi kelishilgan narxda.**

